

# THE WRITER'S JOURNEY

MYTHIC STRUCTURE FOR WRITERS

THIRD EDITION

---

CHRISTOPHER VOGLER





# TABLE OF CONTENTS



INTRODUCTION: Third Edition	ix
PREFACE: Second Edition	xi
INTRODUCTION: Second Edition - Preparing for the Journey	xviii
BOOK ONE: Mapping the Journey	1
A Practical Guide	3
The Archetypes	23
Hero	29
Mentor: Wise Old Man, or Woman	39
Threshold Guardians	49
Herald	55
Shapeshifter	59
Shadow	65
Ally	71
Trickster	77
BOOK TWO: Stages of the Journey	81
Ordinary World	83
Call to Adventure	99
Refusal of the Call	107
Meeting with the Mentor	117
Crossing the First Threshold	129
Tests, Allies, Enemies	135
Approach to the Innermost Cave	143
The Ordeal	155
Reward	175
The Road Back	187
The Resurrection	197
Return with the Elixir	213



EPICLOGUE: Looking back on the journey	201
The Writer's Journey	203
APPENDICES	207
Stories <i>See Also</i>	290
Poets	315
Catharsis	341
The Wisdom of the Body	358
Trust the Path	365
FILMOGRAPHY	371
BIBLIOGRAPHY	373
INDEX	374
ABOUT THE AUTHOR	407

# INTRODUCTION

*Third Edition*

78



he waves are still rolling in from the pebbles in the pond that were the original *Hero's Journey* and its second edition. Since almost a decade has gone by since the second edition was launched, the ideas in that volume have been extensively tested in a number of story-making laboratories around the world. Concepts I had developed as a story consultant for the Disney company and as a teacher of story construction have been through a fresh battery of challenges in the real world that I hope have made them stronger. The new chapters of this book will, I hope, reflect some of the ideas that have continued to evolve around the Hero's Journey concept. There are now chapters on the life force operating in stories, on the mechanism of polarity that rules in storytelling, on the wisdom of the body, archetypes, and other concepts that I have developed in recent years in my lectures and in practical work in Hollywood and in Europe. I have gathered together this new material near the end of the book, in an appendix following "Looking Back on the Journey."

In the nine years since the last edition, I have traveled widely, applied my ideas to writing, publishing, and producing projects of my own, and done a few more "jobs of story" as it were for major Hollywood studios. The first of these jobs, commencing just after the publishing of the second edition, was a six-year stint at 20th Century Fox, where I had been a story analyst at the beginning of my career. This time around I was operating at a slightly higher level, as a development executive for the Fox 2000 studio (The Label), with more responsibility and pressure. I was involved in the research and development aspects of films like *Conan*

## Chapter Eight

Under Fox, films like *Avatar* and *The King*, *Fight Club*, and *The Iron Kid* *Line*. My concepts of storytelling, shaped by the patterns of mythology and the thinking of Joseph Campbell and Carl Jung, were now being tested not only on animated features but on big-budget, live-action movies for adult audiences.

The office atmosphere of Fox 2000 was a fascinating place to study the ways of power. In the past I had been aware of places like it, but as a savvy analyst I had not been inside those meeting rooms where the decisions were taken about the writers, the stories, and the movies made from them. Power flows in those rooms like hot lava, and until I worked at Fox 2000 I had only heard it rumbling. Now I was standing hip-deep in it.

It was the most adult environment I had ever been in, run on unspoken but rigorous principles of personal responsibility. No blaming allowed, no excuses. And the same laser intensity was applied to the stories. Every concept, every moment, every suggestion had to pass the most stringent tests of common sense, logic, and clear business instinct. I had the good fortune to work with some of the best story brains in the business, foremost among them being Fox 2000's founder Linn Ziskin, but also many talented executives, writers, directors, and producers. In the meeting laboratory I learned useful techniques for analyzing stories, ways of looking at structure and describing story moments that I hope will inform the new sections of this revised edition.

Among the things I learned at Fox 2000 was to listen to my body as a judge of a story's effectiveness. I realized that the good stories were affecting the organs of my body in various ways, and the really good ones were stimulating more than one organ. An effective story grabs your gut, tightens your throat, makes your heart race and your lungs pump, brings tears to your eyes or an explosion of laughter to your lips. If I wasn't getting some kind of physiological reaction from a story, I knew it was only affecting me on an intellectual level and therefore it would probably leave audiences cold. You will find my thoughts about this in a new chapter on the wisdom of the body.

When my job at Fox 2000 came to an end, as all good things must do, I wanted to write and produce some projects of my own. I soon found myself writing the screenplay for an animated feature, the result of a lecture trip to Munich. I was approached by producer Eberhard Junkersdorf to write the script for his version of the merry adventures of Till Eulenspiegel, Europe's favorite medieval clown. I knew

of Till's colorful character from stories I had read as a child and was delighted to take up the challenge. I enjoyed working with the ensemble and obtaining Herf Junkerhof's and his international team of artists. Eberhard is so persuasive he even got me to contribute lyrics for two songs on the film's soundtrack, which really was a challenge. The film was released in Germany as *Till Fährstapel* and I am hopeful it will be released in English one day under its English title, *Just Till*. The experience taught me a multitude of lessons that I have tried to incorporate into the present edition.

Next up I got involved as an executive producer of an independent feature, *P.S. Love Can't Wait*, wrote/directed/wrote Steve Guttenberg's adaptation of the play and novel by James Kirkwood. This took me deep into the editing room for a period of months, another of the usual temples of the movie business and for me, a place of intense joy. I found sitting in the dark seeing it images all day long and making the pictures dance. I called it going into the submarine, a blissful world of concentration that called on every cell of my creativity and forced me to articulate my ideas in order to communicate with my creative partners. I could see many ways in which the editing process echoes the writing process, and imagined new possibilities for combining the two. I learned new principles and gave the old ones a good workout.

The process of editing seemed to me to be a lot like making a wooden boat, like one of those sleek dragon-ships the Vikings made. The spine of the story is like the keel, the major plot points are the ribs, and the individual scenes and lines of dialogue are the planks and rigging that complete the vessel, a whole for your story that you hope will sail on the seas of public attention.

Another insight from the editing room was a greater appreciation of the importance of focus. I realized that focused attention is one of the most things in the world, and that an audience is giving a lot when they devote their full attention to your work for two hours. There is only so much focus available in a given work, and it seems the more elements you take out of a composition, the more focus is poured into those that remain. Getting lines, pages, and entire scenes sharpened the focus on the elements that were left, as if a large number of diffuse spotlights had been concentrated into a few bright beams aimed at select important points.

*P.S. Love Can't Wait* enjoyed a brief theatrical run and then was distributed on DVD. After that adventure I concentrated for a time on traveling to give seminars for various international cinema and television training programs. More recently I have

## Christopher Vogler

gone back to the Hollywood studio world with a tour of duty at Paramount Pictures and a number of consulting jobs for other studios. I took my talent in a new form, writing the first installment of *Asanbul*, a story for a "manga," a highly stylized kind of comic book from Japan. That is a highly cinematic form, much like writing a screenplay and with a great deal of emphasis on the visual.

I hope something of what I have learned from collaborating with artists has found its way into this latest edition. It has been an immense pleasure to work with my artist friends Michele Monza and Fritz Springmeyer, whose illustrations provide the chapter headings in this volume.

And while I'm cataloguing the influences of recent years that inform the changes in the present volume, some of my most valuable time was spent walking the beach and thinking about why things are as they are and how they got to be that way. I tried to understand how the sun and stars move across the sky and how the moon got there. I saw that it's all waves, all of the Universe, just echoes and counter-echoes of the original cosmic event, not the Big Bang, that's the wrong second effect. It was more like a gong, that's it, the Great Gong, the original creative vibration that rolled out from a single pinpoint of concentration and unraveled and echoed and rattled to create everything that is, and the Hero's Journey is part of that. I watch the artists march up and down the human, creating my own Stonehenge from the islands and ridge peaks that mark solstice and equinox, seeing me to puzzle out the place of stories and my own place in the story of everything. I hope you find your own place in that design. For those to whom the concept is new, bon voyage, and for those who are familiar with earlier versions, I hope you find some new surprises and connections in this work, and that it serves you on your own creative journeys.

Christopher Vogler

Venice, California

February 26, 2017



# PREFACE

*Second Edition*



*"I'm not trying to copy Nature. I'm trying to find the principle she's using."*

— R. Buckminster Fuller

A book goes out like a wave rolling over the surface of the sea. Ideas radiate from the author's mind and collide with other minds, triggering new waves that return to the author. These generate further thoughts and manuscripts, and so it goes. The concepts described in *The Hero's Journey* have radiated and are now returning back interesting challenges and questions as well as sympathetic vibrations. This is my report on the waves that have washed back over me from publication of the book, and on the new waves I send back in response.

In this book I described the set of concepts known as "The Hero's Journey," drawn from the depth psychology of Carl G. Jung and the mythic studies of Joseph Campbell. I tried to relate these ideas to contemporary storytelling, hoping to create a writer's guide to those valuable gifts from our innermost selves and our most distant past. I came looking for the design principles of storytelling, but on the road I found something more: a set of principles for living. I came to believe that *The Hero's Journey* is nothing less than a handbook for life, a complete instruction manual in the art of being human.

*The Hero's Journey* is not an invention, but an observation. It is a recognition of a beautiful design, a set of principles that governs the conduct of life and the world of storytelling the way physics and chemistry govern the physical world. It's difficult to avoid the sensation that *The Hero's Journey* exists somewhere, somehow, in an eternal reality, a Platonic ideal form, a divine model. From this model infinite and highly varied copies can be produced, each resonating with the essential spirit of the form.

The Hero's Journey is a pattern that seems to extend in many dimensions, describing more than one reality. It accurately describes, among other things, the process of making a journey, the necessary working parts of a story, the joys and despair of being a writer, and the passage of a soul through life.

A book that explains such a pattern naturally partakes of the multi-dimensional quality. *The Hero's Journey* was intended as a practical guidebook for writers, but can also be read as a guide to the life lessons that have been carefully built into the stories of all times. Some people have even used it as a kind of travel guide, predicting the inevitable ups and downs of making a physical journey.

A certain number of people say the book has affected them on a level that may have nothing to do with the business of telling a story or writing a script. In the description of the Hero's Journey they might have picked up some insight about their own lives, some useful concepts or way of looking at things, some language or principle that defines their problems and suggests a way out of it. They recognize their own problems in the needs of the mythic and literary heroes, and are reassured by the stories that give them abundant, time-tested strategies for survival, success, and happiness.

Other people find validation of their own observations in the book. From time to time I meet people who know the Hero's Journey well although they may never have heard it called by that name. When they read about it or hear it described, they experience the pleasurable shock of recognizing as the patterns reconcile with what they've seen in stories and in their own lives. I had the same reaction when I first encountered these concepts in Campbell's book, *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*, and heard him speak about them with passion. Campbell himself felt it when he first heard his mentor, Heinrich Zimmer, speak about mythology. In Zimmer he recognized a shared attitude about myths — that they are not abstract theories or the quaint beliefs of ancient peoples, but practical models for understanding how to live.

## A PRACTICAL GUIDE

The original intent of this book was to make an accessible, down-to-earth writing manual from these high-flying mythic elements. In that practical spirit, I am gratified to hear from so many readers that the book can be a useful writing guide. Professional writers as well as novices and students require that it has been an effective design tool, validating their instincts and providing new concepts and principles to apply to

their stories. Movie and television executives, producers, and directors have told me the book influenced their projects and helped them solve story problems. Novelists, playwrights, actors, and writing teachers have put the ideas to use in their work.

Happily, the book has won acceptance as one of the standard Hollywood guidebooks for the screenwriting craft. *Spy magazine* called it "the new industry bible." Through its various international editions (U.K., German, French, Portuguese, Italian, Icelandic, etc.) it has radiated to greater Hollywood, the world community of storytellers. Filmmakers and students from many countries have reported their interest in the Hero's Journey idea and their appreciation for the book as a practical guide for designing and embellishing stories.

*The Writer's Journey*, meanwhile, has been put to work in many ways, not only by writers in many forms and genres, but by teachers, psychologists, advertising executives, public counselors, video game designers, and scholars of myth and pop culture.

I am convinced the principles of the Hero's Journey have had a deep influence over the shaping of stories in the past and will reach even deeper in the future as more storytellers become consciously aware of them. Joseph Campbell's great accomplishment was to articulate clearly something that had been there all along—the life principles embedded in the structure of stories. He wrote down the unwritten rules of storytelling, and that seems to be stimulating authors to challenge, test, and embellish the Hero's Journey. I see signs that writers are playing with the idea and even introducing "Campbellian" language and terms into their stories.

The conscious awareness of its patterns may be a mixed blessing, for it's easy to generate thoughtless clichés and stereotypes from this matrix. The self-conscious, heavy-handed use of this model can be boring and predictable. But if writers absorb its ideas and re-create them with fresh insights and surprising combinations, they can make amazing new forms and original designs from the ancient, immovable parts.

## QUESTIONS AND CRITICISMS

*"It takes a great error to make a great opinion."*

— An Ecclesi saying

Inevitably, aspects of the book have been questioned or criticized. I welcome this as a sign the ideas are worthy of argument. I'm sure I've learned more from the challenges than from the positive feedback. Writing a book may be, as the historian Paul Johnson says, "the only way to study a subject systematically, purposefully and repeatedly." Harvesting the response, both positive and negative, is part of that study.

Since the book came out in 1993 I have continued to work in the sunny end of the movie business, at Disney, Fox, and Paramount. I've had the chance to try out the Hero's Journey concepts with the big boys. I saw where it works but also where my understanding of it fell short and needed to be adjusted. My beliefs about what makes a good story were tested in the toughest arena on earth — Hollywood story conferences and the world marketplace — and I hope my understanding has grown from the objections, doubts, and questions of my esteemed colleagues, and from the reactions of the audience.

At the same time, I kept up a schedule of lecturing about *The Hero's Journey* that took me far afield from the literal geographic bounds of Hollywood, into the greater-world Hollywood, the international film community. I had the chance to see how the ideas of the Hero's Journey unfold in cultures different from the one I grew up in, as I traveled to Barcelona, Maui, Berlin, Rome, London, Sydney, and so on.

Local tastes and thinking challenged many facets of the Hero's Journey like severely. Each culture has a unique orientation to the Hero's Journey, with something in each local character resisting some terms, defining them differently, or giving them different emphases. My theoretical framework has been shaken from every angle, and I think is the richer for it.

## A FIRM, NOT A FORMULA

First, I must address a significant objection about the whole idea of *The Hero's Journey* — the suspicion of artifice and artifice that it is formulaic, leading to stale

experiment. We come to a great divide in theory and practice about these principles. Some professional writers don't like the idea of analyzing the creative process at all and urge students to ignore all books and teachers and "just do it." Some artists make the choice to avoid systematic thinking, rejecting all principles, ideals, schools of thought, theories, patterns, and designs. For them, art is an entirely intuitive process that can never be mastered by rules of thumb and should not be reduced to formula. And they aren't wrong. At the core of every artist is a sacred place where all the rules are set aside or deliberately forgotten, and nothing matters but the instinctive choices of the heart and soul of the artist.

But even that is a principle, and those who say they reject principles and theories can't avoid subscribing to a few of them. Avoid formula, discard rules and pattern, resist logic and tradition.

Artists who operate on the principle of rejecting all form are themselves dependent on form. The freshness and excitement of their work comes from its contrast to the pervasiveness of formulas and patterns in the culture. However, these artists run the risk of reaching a limited audience because most people can't relate to totally unconventional art. By definition, it doesn't intersect with commonly held patterns of experience. Their work might only be appreciated by other artists, a small part of the community in any time or place. A certain amount of form is necessary to reach a wide audience. People expect it and enjoy it, so long as it's varied by some innovative combination or arrangement and doesn't fall into a completely predictable formula.

At the other extreme are the big Hollywood studios who use conventional patterns to appeal to the broadest cross-section of the public. At the Disney studios, I saw the application of simple story principles, such as making the main character a "fish out of water," that became one of a story's power to appeal to a mass audience. The mind guiding Disney at that time believed that these were proper questions to ask of a story and its characters: Does it have conflict? Does it have a theme? Is it about something that can be expressed as a well-known statement of folk wisdom like "Don't judge a book by its cover" or "Love conquers all"? Does it present the story as a series of crucial moments or acts, allowing audiences to orient and pace themselves in the narrative? Does it take viewers to places they've never been or make them see familiar places in new ways? Do the characters have relevant backstories and plausible motivations to make them relatable to the audience? Do they

pass through realistic stages of emotional reaction and growth (character arcs). And so on.

Students have to use design principles and apply some kind of standards to evaluating and developing stories, if only because they produce so many of them. The average studio or division in Hollywood has bought and is developing one hundred fifty to two hundred stories at a time. They must spend some resources evaluating thousands of potential projects submitted by agents each year. To handle the large number of stories, some of the techniques of mass production, such as standardization, have to be employed. But they should be employed sparingly and with great sensitivity for the needs of the particular story.

## STANDARD LANGUAGE

A more important tool is a standardized language that makes possible the thousands of communications necessary to tell so many stories. No one dictates this language, but it becomes part of everyone's education in the unwritten rules of the business. Newcomers quickly learn the language concepts and assumptions that have been passed down by generations of screenwriters and filmmakers. This provides everyone with a shorthand for the rapid communication of story ideas.

Meanwhile new terms and concepts are always being created to reflect changing conditions. Junior studio executives listen carefully for signs of insight, philosophy, or ordering principle from their bosses. People take their lead from the leader. Any terms of art, any aphorisms or rules of thumb are seized upon and passed down, becoming part of the occupational culture of that studio and the general knowledge of the industry. It's especially true when those bits of received wisdom lead to successful, popular entertainments.

The Hero's Journey language is clearly becoming part of the storytelling common knowledge and its principles have been used consciously to create highly popular films, but there is danger in too self-awareness. Overreliance on traditional language or the basic beatworks can lead to thoughtless, cookie-cutter products. Lazy superficial use of Hero's Journey terms, taking this metaphorical system too literally, or arbitrarily imposing its forms on every story can be stultifying. It should be used as a force, not a formula, a reference point and a source of inspiration, not a dictatorial midwife.

## CULTURAL IMPERIALISM

A danger of the dangers of standardized language and methods is that local differences, the very things that add zest and spice to journeys to faraway places, will get hammered into blandness by the machinery of mass production. Artists around the world are on guard against "cultural imperialism," the aggressive export of Hollywood storytelling techniques and the squeezing out of local stories. American values and the cultural assumptions of Western society threaten to smother the unique flavors of other cultures. Many observers have remarked that American culture is becoming world culture, and what a loss it would be if the only flavorings available were organic, salt, mustard, and ketchup.

This problem is much on the minds of European storytellers as many countries with distinct cultures are drawn into a union. They are striving to create stories that are somewhat universal, that can travel beyond their national borders, for local audiences may not be numerous enough to support the always-growing cost of production. They are up against immensely competitive American companies that aggressively court the world market. Many are studying and applying American techniques, but they also worry that their unique regional traditions will be lost.

Is the Hero's Journey an instrument of cultural imperialism? It could be, if merely accepted (blindly copied or unexaminedly adopted) but it can also be a useful tool for the storyteller in any culture, if adapted thoughtfully to reflect the unique, inimitable qualities of the local geography, climate, and people.

I found that critics in Australia were acutely conscious of cultural imperialism, perhaps because that country's people have had to struggle to create their own society. They have forged something distinct from England, independent of America and Asia, influenced by all of them but uniquely Australian, and humming with the mysterious energy of the land and the Aboriginal people. They pointed out to me hidden cultural assumptions in my understanding of the Hero's Journey. While it is universal and timeless, and its workings can be found in every culture on earth, a Western or American reading of it may carry subtle biases. One instance is the Hollywood preference for happy endings and tidy resolutions, the tendency to show admirable women heroes over-come using *and* by individual effort. My Australian teachers helped me see that such elements might make good stories for the world market but may not reflect the values of all cultures. They made me aware of what assumptions were being carried by Hollywood-style films, and of what was not being expressed.

## Chapter 14

In my travels I learned that Australia, Canada, and many countries in Europe subsidize their local filmmakers, in part to help preserve and celebrate local differences. Each region, department, or state operates as a small-scale movie studio, developing scripts, putting artists to work, and producing feature films and television shows. For America, I like to imagine a version of a decentralized Hollywood in which every state in the Union functions like a movie studio, evaluating the tastes of its citizens and advancing money to produce regional films that represent and enhance the culture of the locality while supporting the local artists.

## HEROPHOBIC CULTURES

[Here and there in my travels I learned that some cultures are not entirely comfortable with the term "hero" to begin with. Australia and Germany are two cultures that seem slightly "antipathetic."

The Australian dissent appears to honor virtue because such concepts have been used to lay generations of young Australian males into fighting Britain's battles. Australians love their heroes, of course, but they seem to be unimpressed and self-effacing, and will remain reluctant for such long-gestating heroes in other cultures. Like most heroes, they must call to adventure but continue demanding and may never be comfortable with the hero mantle. In Australian culture it's unsteady to seek out leadership or the limelight, and anyone who does is a "tall poppy," quickly cut down. The most admirable hero is one who denies his heroic role as long as possible and who, like Mad Max, avoids accepting responsibility for anyone but himself.

German culture seems ambivalent about the term "hero." The hero has a long tradition of veneration in Germany but two World Wars and the legacy of Hitler and the Nazis have tainted the concept. Nazism and German militarism manipulated and distorted the powerful symbols of the hero myth, involving its passions to exclude, dehumanize, and destroy. Like any archetypal system, like any philosophy or creed, the heroic form can be warped and used with great effect for ill intention.

In the post-Hitler period the idea of hero has been given a rest as the culture re-evaluates itself. Dispassionate, cold-blooded anti-heroes are more in keeping with the current German spirit. A tone of unemotional realism is more popular at present, although there will always be a strain of romanticism and love of fantasy. Germans can enjoy imaginative hero tales from other cultures but don't seem comfortable with home-grown romantic heroes for the time being.



## THE HERO AS WARRIOR

More generally, the Hero's Journey has been criticized as an embodiment of a male-dominated warrior culture. Critics say it is a propaganda device intended to encourage young males to enlist in armies, a myth that glorifies death and foolish self-sacrifice. There is some truth in this charge, for many heroes of legend and story are warriors and the patterns of the Hero's Journey have certainly been used for propaganda and recruitment. However, to condemn and dismiss these patterns because they can be put to military use is shortsighted and narrow-minded. The warrior is only one of the faces of the hero, who can also be poet, mother, pilgrim, fool, amusee, hermit, inventor, nutcase, unicorn, artist, fanatic, lover, clown, king, victim, slave, worker, rebel, adventurer, tragic failure, coward, saint, minister, etc. The many positive possibilities of the hero far outweigh its potential for abuse.

## GENDER PROBLEMS

The Hero's Journey is sometimes criticized as a masculine theory, cooked up by men to enforce their dominance, and with little reference to the unique and quite different journey of womanhood. There may be some masculine bias built into the description of the hero cycle since many of its practitioners have been male, and I freely admit it. I'm a man and can't help seeing the world through the filter of my gender. Yet I have tried to acknowledge and righten the ways in which the woman's journey is different from the man's.

I believe that much of the journey is the same for all humans since we share many qualities of birth, growth, and death, but clearly being a woman imposes distinct cycles, rhythms, patterns, and needs. There may be a real difference in the form of men's and women's journeys. Men's journeys may be in some sense more linear, proceeding from one outward goal to the next, while women's journeys may spin or spiral inward and outward. The spiral may be a more accurate analogue for the woman's journey than a straight line or a simple circle. Another possible model might be a series of concentric rings, with the woman making a journey inward towards the center and then expanding outward. The masculine need to grow out and overcome obstacles, to achieve, conquer, and possess, may be replaced in the woman's journey by the drive to preserve the family and the species, make a home, grapple with emotions, come to accord, or subvert beauty.

### Orange Light

Good work has been done by women to articulate these differences, and I recommend books such as Merlin Stone's *When God Was a Woman*, Clarissa Pinkola Estés' *Women Who Run with the Wolves*, Joan Blythema Beale's *Golden in Erythronium*, Marceia Munchie's *The Heroine's Journey*, and *The Woman's Dictionary of Myth and Symbol* as starting points for a more balanced understanding of the male and female aspects of the Hero's Journey. (Note to men: If in doubt on this point, consult the nearest woman.)

### THE COMPUTER CHALLENGE

Shortly after the first edition of this book came out, a few people (threshold guardians) jumped up to say the technology of the Hero's Journey is already obsolete, thanks to the advent of the computer and its possibilities of interactivity and nonlinear narrative. According to this batch of critics, the ancient ideas of the journey are hopelessly mixed in the conventions of beginning, middle, and end, of cause and effect, of one event after another. The new wave, they said, would ditch the old linear model, empowering people to tell their own stories in any sequence they chose, leaping from point to point, weaving stories more like spider webs than loose scraps of events.

It's true that exciting new possibilities are created by computers and the nonlinear thinking they encourage. However, there will always be pleasure in "Tell me a story." People will always enjoy going into a story world and allowing themselves to be led through a tale by a masterful story weaver. It's fun to drive a car, but it can also be fun to be driven, and as passengers we might see more sights than if we were forced to concentrate on choosing what happens next.

Interactivity has always been with us — we all make some nonlinear hyperlinks in our own minds even as we listen to a linear story. In fact, the Hero's Journey tracks really extremely well in the world of computer games and interactive experiences. The thousands of variations on the paradigm, worked out over the centuries, offers endless branches from which infinite webs of story can be built.

### THE CYNICS RESPONSE

Another of my deep cultural assumptions that was challenged as I traveled is the idea that one person can make a difference, that heroes are needed to make change, and

that change is generally a good thing, I encountered artists from Eastern Europe who pointed out that in their cultures, there is deep cynicism about heroic efforts to change the world. The world is as it is, any efforts to change it are a foolish waste of time, and any so-called heroes who try to change it are doomed to fail. This point of view is not necessarily an antithesis of the Hero's Journey — the pattern is flexible enough to embrace the cynical or pragmatic philosophies, and many of its principles are still operative in stories that reflect them. However, I must acknowledge that not every person or culture sees the world as optimistically as I do, and they might be right.

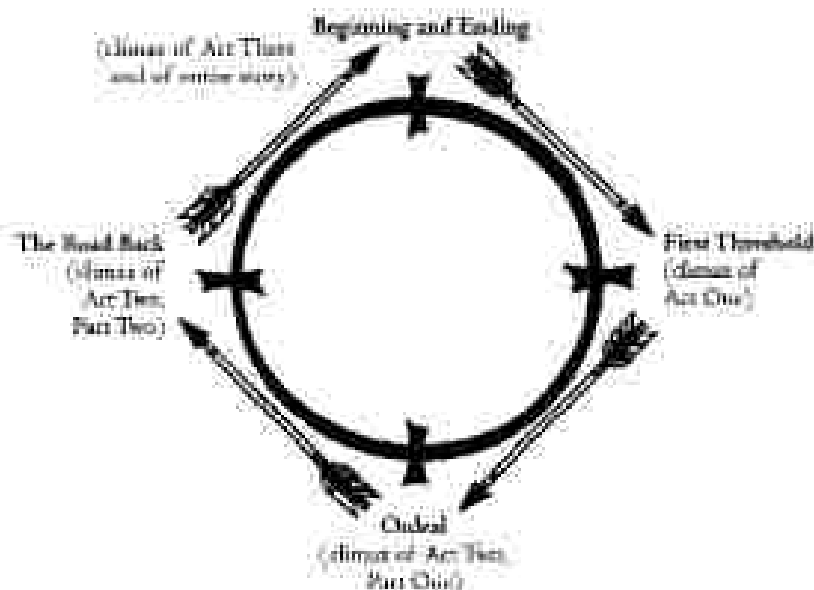
### BUT WHAT ABOUT . . .

It's exciting to see that there is no end to what can be learned from the Hero's Journey analogies. I find surprising and delightful turns of the path every time I pick up a new story, and life itself keeps teaching new angles.

My understanding of the Shadow archetype, for example, continues to evolve. I have been impressed all over again by the power of this pattern, especially as it operates within the individual as a repository for unexpressed feelings and desires. It is a force that accumulates when you fail to honor your gifts, follow the call of your mission, or live up to your principles and ideals. It has great but subtle power, operating on deep levels to communicate with you, perhaps sabotaging your efforts, upsetting your balance until you realize the message these events bring — that you must express your creativity, your true nature, or die. A car accident a few years ago taught me the rebellious power of the Shadow, showed me that I was distracted, out of harmony, heading for even greater disasters if I didn't find a way to express my personal creative side.

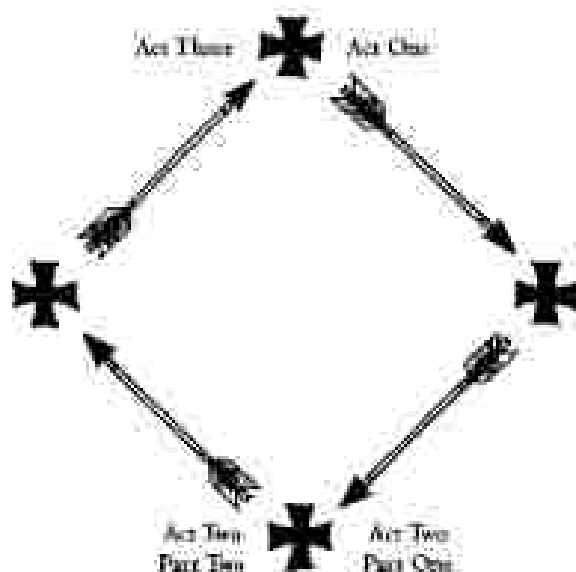
Occasional puzzled looks on the faces of students taught me that I hadn't sufficiently thought through some aspects of the pattern. Some people were confused by the various turning points and arches of the model, particularly by the distinction between the midpoint, which I call the Ordeal, and the climax of the second act, which I call The Blood Bath. Trying to explain this led me to a new realization. Each act is like a movement of a symphony, with its own beginning, middle, and end, and with its own climax (the highest point of tension) coming just before the ending of the act. These act climaxes are the major turning points on the circular diagram.

## Christopher Hyde



Returning to Rome, I came upon a further development of this idea, an alternate way of graphing the Hero's Journey: not as a circle, but as a diamond. I was explaining that each act sends the hero on a certain track with a specific aim or goal, and that the climaxes of each act change the hero's direction, assigning a new goal. The hero's first act goal, for instance, might be to seek treasure, but after meeting a potential lover at the first threshold crossing, the goal might change to pursuing that lover. If the ordeal at the midpoint has the villain capturing the hero and lover, the goal in the next movement would become trying to escape. And if the villain kills the lover at The Road Back, the new goal of the final movement might be to get revenge. The original objective might be achieved as well, or there might be some overall goal (to learn self-reliance or come to terms with past failures, for example) that continues to be served in all movements as the hero pursues changing superficial goals.

To illustrate this concept I show the hero's goals in each movement as straight lines, vectors of intention, rather than curves. Straightening out the curves of the circle created sharp, 90-degree turns at the quarter points and revealed the dramatic changes that may occur in the hero's objectives. Each straight line represents the hero's aim in that act — to escape the constraints of the ordinary world, to survive in a strange land, to win the love and escape the strange land, to return home safely with something to share that renews the world.



I was amazed to realize I had just drawn a baseball diamond (in reverse.) I've often felt that the layout of game-playing fields produces patterns that overlap with the design of the Hero's Journey. Baseball can be read as another metaphor of life, with the base runner as the hero making his way around the stages of the journey.

Perhaps the best way to explore the endless possibilities of the Hero's Journey is to apply it to a number of films or stories. To that end Michael Wise Productions has prepared a book and CD-ROM entitled *Myth in the Movies*. These examine a large number of popular movies through the lens of the Hero's Journey. It's a way to test the idea and see for yourself if it's valid and useful. One can see how it operates in a general way and how it transforms in specific cases. And from the comparison of many examples and from the interesting exceptions, one can find some of the principles, values, and relationships that give the craftsperson command of the form.

At the end of this second edition I have added a few new elements in a section called "Looking Back at the Journey." Here I have used the tools of mythology and the Hero's Journey to analyze some key films, including *Trains*, *The Last King of Scotland*, *Big Fish*, *The Fall*, *Merci*, and the *Star Wars* saga. I hope these will demonstrate some of the ways that the mythic principles continue to be explored in popular entertainment.

Unlike the stories of heroes, which eventually come to an end, the journey to understand and articulate these ideas is truly endless. Although certain human conditions will never change, new situations are always arising, and the Hero's Journey will adapt to reflect them. New writers will roll out, and so it will go, on and on forever.

# INTRODUCTION

*Second Edition*



## PREPARING FOR THE JOURNEY

*"This is the tale I pray the divine Muse to unfold to us,  
Bright in golden, or whatever form you will."*

—*The City of Dreadful Night*



With you as your guide on *A Writer's Journey*, a mission of discovery to explore and map the elusive borderlands between myth and modern storytelling. We will be guided by a simple idea: All stories consist of a few common structural elements found universally in myths, fairy tales, dreams, and movies. They are known collectively as *The Hero's Journey*. Understanding these elements and their use in modern writing is the object of this quest. (And surely, these ancient tools of the storyteller's craft still have tremendous power to heal our people and make the world a better place.)

My own *Writer's Journey* begins with the particular power storytelling has always had over me. I got hooked on the fairy tales and Little Golden Books read out loud by my mother and grandmother. I devoured the cartoons and movies pouring out of TV in the 1950s, the thrilling adventures on the drive-in screens, the lurid comic books and mind-blowing science fiction of the day. When I was laid up with a sprained ankle, my father went to the local library and brought back wonder stories of Norse and Celtic mythology that made me forget the pain.

A trail of stories eventually led me to making for a living as a story analyst for Hollywood studios. Though I evaluated thousands of novels and screenplays, I never got tired of exploring the labyrinth of story with its mysteriously repeated patterns.

bewildering variants, and puzzling questions. Where do stories come from? How do they work? What do they tell us about ourselves? What do they mean? Why do we need them? How can we use them to improve the world?

Above all, how do storytellers manage to make the story mean something? Good stories make you feel you've been through a satisfying, complex experience. You've cried or laughed or both. You finish the story feeling you've learned something about life or about yourself. Perhaps you've picked up a new awareness, a new character or attitude to model your life on. How do storytellers manage to pull that off? What are the secrets of this ancient trade? What are its rules and design principles?

Over the years I began to notice some recurrent elements in adventure stories and myths, certain intriguingly familiar characters, props, locations, and situations. I began to realize again that there was a pattern or a template of some sort guiding the design of stories. I had some pieces of the puzzle but the overall plan eluded me.

Then at the USC film school I was fortunate enough to come paths with the work of the psychologist Joseph Campbell. The connection with Campbell was, like me and many other people, a life-changing experience. A few days of exploring the labyrinth of his book *The Hero with a Thousand Faces* produced an electrifying reorganization of my life and thinking. Here, fully explored, was the pattern I had been sensing. Campbell had broken the secret code of story. His work was like a flare suddenly illuminating a deeply shadowed landscape.

I worked with Campbell's idea of the Hero's Journey to understand the phenomenal repeat business of stories such as *Star Wars* and *Close Encounters*. People were going back to see these films as if seeking some kind of religious experience. It seemed to me these films drew people in this special way because they reflected the universal underlying patterns Campbell found in myths. They had something people needed.

*The Hero with a Thousand Faces* was a lifesaver when I began to work as a story analyst for major movie studios. In my first job I was deeply grateful for Campbell's work, which became a reliable set of tools for diagnosing story problems and prescribing solutions. Without the guidance of Campbell and mythology I would have been lost.

It seemed to me the Hero's Journey was exciting, useful story technology which could help filmmakers and executives eliminate some of the guesswork and expense of developing stories for film. Over the years I ran into quite a few people who had



been affected by encounters with Joe Campbell. We were like a secret society of true believers, commonly putting our faith in "the power of myth."

Shortly after going to work as a story analyst for the Walt Disney Company, I wrote a seven-page memo called "A Practical Guide to *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*" in which I described the idea of the Hero's Journey, with examples from classic and current movies. I gave the memo to friends, colleagues, and several Disney executives to test and refine the ideas through their feedback. Gradually I expanded the "Practical Guide" into a longer essay and began teaching the material through a story analysis class at the UCLA Extension Writers' Program.

At writers' conferences around the country I tested the idea in sessions with screenwriters, romance novelists, children's writers, and all kinds of storytellers. I found many others were exploring the narrowed pathways of myth, story, and psychology.

The Hero's Journey, I discovered, is more than just a description of the hidden patterns of mythology. It is a useful guide to life, especially the writer's life. In the persona adoptions of my own writing, I found the stages of the Hero's Journey showing up just as reliably and usefully as they did in books, myths, and movies. In my personal life, I was thankful to have this map to guide my quest and help me recognize what was around the next bend.

The usefulness of the Hero's Journey as a guide to life was brought home forcefully when I first proposed to speak publicly about it in a large seminar at UCLA. A couple of weeks before the seminar two articles appeared in the *Los Angeles Herald-Examiner*, in which a film critic attacked filmmaker George Lucas and his movie *Witness*. Somehow the critic had got hold of the "Practical Guide" and claimed it had deeply influenced and corrupted Hollywood storytellers. The critic blamed the "Practical Guide" for every flaw from *Star Wars* to *Howard the Duck*, as well as for the hit *Back to the Future*. According to him, big, dinosaur studio executives, eager to find a quick-bucks formula, had seized upon the "Practical Guide" as a crutch and were badly muddling it along the throats of writers selling their creativity with a technology the executives hadn't bothered to understand.

While flattered that someone thought I had such a sweeping influence on the collective mind of Hollywood, I was also devastated. Here, on the threshold of a new phase of working with these ideas, I was shut down before I even started. Or so it seemed.

## Chapter 14

Friends who were more seasoned veterans in this war of ideas pointed out that in being challenged I was really encountering an archetype, one of the familiar characters who people the landscape of the Hero's Journey, namely a Threshold Guardian.

That information instantly gave me my bearings and showed me how to handle the situation. Campbell had described how heroes often encounter these "unfamiliar yet strangely intimate forces, some of which severely threaten" them. The Guardians seem to pop up at the various thresholds of the journey, the narrow and dangerous passages from one stage of life to the next. Campbell showed the many ways in which heroes can deal with Threshold Guardians. Instead of attacking these seemingly hostile power head-on, journeymen learn to sweeten them or join forces with them, shortening their struggle rather than being destroyed by it.

I realized that this Threshold Guardian's apparent attack was potentially a blessing, not a curse. I had thought of challenging the critic to a duel (typical in creative peaces) but now reconsidered. With a slight change in attitude I could turn his hostility to my benefit. I contacted the critic and invited him to talk over our differences of opinion at the seminar. He accepted and joined a panel discussion which turned into a lively and entertaining debate, illuminating corners of the story world that I had never glimpsed before. The seminar was better and my ideas were stronger for being challenged. Instead of fighting my Threshold Guardian, I had absorbed him into my adventure. What had seemed like a lethal blow had turned into something useful and healthy. The mythological approach had proven its worth in life as well as story.

Around this time I realized the "Practical Guide" and Campbell's ideas did have an influence on Hollywood. I began to get requests from studio story departments for copies of the "Practical Guide". I heard that executives at select studios were giving the pamphlet to writers, directors, and producers as guides to universal, commercial story patterns. Apparently Hollywood was finding the Hero's Journey useful.

Meanwhile Joseph Campbell's ideas exploded into a wider sphere of awareness with the Bill Moyers interview show on PBS, *The Power of Myth*. The show was a hit, cutting across lines of age, politics, and religion to speak directly to people's spirits. The book version, a transcript of the interviews, was on the *New York Times* bestseller list for over a year. *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*, Campbell's venerable

welcome of a notebook, suddenly became a *hoc* novelist after forty years of slow but steady backlog sales.

The PBS show brought Campbell's ideas to millions and illuminated the impact of his work on filmmakers such as George Lucas, John Boorman, Steven Spielberg, and George Miller. Suddenly I found a sharp increase in seminars and acceptance of Campbell's ideas in Hollywood. Most executives and writers were versed in these concepts and interested in learning how to apply them to movie-making and screenwriting.

The Hero's Journey model continued to serve me well. It got me through reading and evaluating over ten thousand screenplays for half a dozen studios. It was my idea, a bank of maps for my own writing, success. It guided me to a new role at the Disney company, as a story consultant for the Feature Animation division at the time *The Little Mermaid* and *Beauty and the Beast* were being conceived. Campbell's ideas were of tremendous value as I researched and developed movies based on fairy tales, mythology, science fiction, comic books, and historical adventure.

Joseph Campbell died in 1987. I met him briefly a couple of times at seminars. He was tall, a striking man in his eighties, tall, vigorous, eloquent, funny, full of energy and enthusiasm, and utterly charming. Just before his passing, he told me, "Stick with this stuff. It'll take you a long way."

I recently discovered that for some time the "Practical Guide" has been required reading for Disney development executives. Daily requests for it, as well as countless letters and calls from consultants, screenwriters, producers, writers, and actors, indicate that the Hero's Journey ideas are being used and developed more than ever.

And so I come to the writing of this book, the descendant of the "Practical Guide." The book is designed somewhat on the model of the *101 Qs*, with an introductory overview followed by commentaries that expand on the typical stages of the Hero's Journey. Book One, *Mapping the Journey*, is a quick survey of the territory. Chapter 1 is a revision of the "Practical Guide" and a condensed presentation of the twelve-stage Hero's Journey. You might think of this as the map of a journey we are about to take together through the special world of story. Chapter 2 is an introduction to the archetypes, the *shaman* presence of myth and story. It describes eight common character types or psychological functions found in all stories.

## Chapter Eight

Book Two, *Stages of the Journey*, is a more detailed examination of the twelve elements of the Hero's Journey. Each chapter is followed by suggestions for your further exploration, *Questioning the Journey*. An Epilogue, *Looking Back on the Journey*, deals with the special adventure of the Writer's Journey and some pitfalls to avoid on the road. It includes Hero's Journey analysis of some influential films including *Indiana Jones: Raiders of the Lost Ark*, *The Godfather*, *The Godfather Part II*, and *The Matrix*. In one case, *The Godfather*, I had the opportunity to apply the Hero's Journey ideas as a story consultant during the development process, and see firsthand how useful these principles can be.

Throughout the book, I make reference to movies, both classic and current. You might want to view some of these films to see how the Hero's Journey works in practice. A representative list of films appears in Appendix I.

You might also select a single movie or story of your choice and keep it in mind as you take the Writer's Journey. Get to know the story of your choice by reading or viewing it several times, taking brief notes on what happens in each scene and how it functions in the drama. Borrowing a movie on a VCR is ideal, because you can stop to watch down the contents of each scene while you grasp its meaning and relation to the rest of the story.

I suggest you go through this process with a story or movie and use it to test out the ideas in this book. See if your story reflects the stages and archetypes of the Hero's Journey. (A sample worksheet for the Hero's Journey can be found in Appendix 3.) Observe how the stages are adapted to meet the needs of the story or the particular culture for which the story was written. Challenge these ideas, test them in practice, adapt them to your needs, and make them yours. Use these concepts to challenge and inspire your own stories.

The Hero's Journey has served storytellers and their listeners since the very first stories were told, and it shows no signs of wearing out. Let's begin the Writer's Journey together to explore these ideas. I hope you find them useful as magic keys to the world of story and the bedrock of life.

# A PRACTICAL GUIDE

---

*"There are only two or three human stories, and they go on repeating themselves as freshly as if they had never happened before."*

—Willa Cather, in *O Pioneers!*



In the long run, one of the most influential books of the 20th century may turn out to be Joseph Campbell's *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*.

The ideas expressed in Campbell's books are having a major impact on storytelling. Writers are becoming more aware of the ageless patterns which Campbell identifies, and are enriching their work with them.

Incidentally Hollywood has caught on to the usefulness of Campbell's work. Filmmakers like George Lucas and George Miller acknowledge their debt to Campbell and his influence can be seen in the films of Steven Spielberg, John Swickman, Francis Coppola, and others.

It's little wonder that Hollywood is beginning to embrace the ideas Campbell presents in his books, for the writer, producer, director, or designer has concepts and a welcome tool kit, stocked with sturdy instruments ideal for the craft of storytelling. With these tools you can construct a story to meet almost any situation, a story that will be dramatic, entertaining, and psychologically true. With this equipment you can diagnose the problems of almost any aging plot line, and make the corrections to bring it to its peak of performance.

### Orange Light

These myths have stood the test of time. They are older than the Pyramids, older than Stonehenge, older than the earliest cave paintings.

Joseph Campbell's contribution to the world was to gather the ideas together, recognize them, articulate them, name them, organize them. He exposed for the first time the pattern that lies behind every story ever told.

*The Hero with a Thousand Faces* is his statement of the most persistent theme in oral tradition and recorded literature: the growth of the hero. In his study of world heroic myths, Campbell discovered that they are all basically the same story, told differently in infinite variation.

He found that all storytelling, consciously or not, follows the ancient patterns of myth and that all stories, from the crudest jokes to the highest flights of literature, can be understood in terms of the Hero's Journey, the "monomyth" whose principles he lays out in the book.

The pattern of the Hero's Journey is universal, occurring in every culture in every time. It is as infinitely varied as the human race itself, and yet its basic form remains constant. The Hero's Journey is an incredibly intricate set of elements that springs endlessly from the deepest reaches of the human mind, different in its details for every culture, but fundamentally the same.

Campbell's thinking was parallel to that of the Swiss psychologist Carl G. Jung, who wrote about the archetypes commonly repeating characters or events which occur in the dreams of all people and the myths of all cultures. Jung suggested that these archetypes reflect different aspects of the human mind — that our personalities divide themselves into these characters as they act out the drama of our lives. He noticed a strong correspondence between his patients' dream figures and the common archetypes of mythology. He suggested that both were coming from a deeper source, in the collective unconscious of the human race.

The repeating characters of world myths such as the young hero, the wise old man or woman, the shapeshifter, and the shadowy antagonist are the same as the figures who appear repeatedly in our dreams and fantasies. That's why myths and most stories constructed on the mythological model have the ring of psychological truth.

Such stories are accurate models of the workings of the human mind, true maps of the psyche. They are psychologically valid and emotionally realistic even when they portray fantastic, impossible, or unreal events.

This accounts for the universal *power* of such stories. Stories built on the model of the Hero's Journey have an appeal that can be felt by everyone, because they well up from a universal source in the shared unconscious and reflect universal concerns.

They deal with the childlike universal questions: Who am I? Where did I come from? Where will I go when I die? What is good and what is evil? What must I do about it? What will tomorrow be like? Where did yesterday go? Is there anybody else out there?

The ideas embedded in mythology and described by Campbell in *The Hero with a Thousand Faces* can be applied to understanding almost any human problem. They are a great key to life as well as a major instrument for dealing more effectively with a vast universe.

If you want to understand the ideas behind the Hero's Journey, there's no substitute for actually reading Campbell's work. It's an experience that has a way of changing people.

It's also a good idea to read a lot of myths, but reading Campbell's work amounts to the same thing since Campbell is a master storyteller who delights in illustrating his points with examples from the rich storehouses of mythology.

Campbell gives an outline of the Hero's Journey in Chapter IV "The Keys" of *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*. I've taken the liberty of amending the outline slightly, trying to reflect some of the common themes in stories with illustrations drawn from contemporary films and a few classics. You can compare the two outlines and terminology by examining Table One.

**TABLE ONE**  
COMPARISON OF *THE WRITER'S JOURNEY* AND *THE HERO WITH A THOUSAND FACES*

<i>The Writer's Journey</i>	<i>The Hero with a Thousand Faces</i>
<b>ACT ONE</b>	<b>DEPARTURE, SEPARATION</b>
Ordinary World	World of Common Day
Call to Adventure	Call to Adventure
Refusal of the Call	Refusal of the Call
Meeting with the Mentor	Supernatural Aid
Crossing the First Threshold	Crossing the First Threshold
	Belly of the Whale
<b>ACT TWO</b>	<b>DESCENT, INITIATION, PENETRATION</b>
Tests, Allies, Enemies	Road of Trials
Approach to the Innermost Cave	
Ordeal	Meeting with the Goddess
	Woman as Temptress
	Attainment with the Father
	Apotheosis
Reward	The Ultimate Boon
<b>ACT THREE</b>	<b>RETURNS</b>
The Road Back	Refusal of the Return
	The Magic Flight
	Rescue from Within
	Crossing the Threshold
	Return
Resurrection	Master of the Two Worlds
Return with the Elixir	Freedom to Live



I'm writing the hero myth in my own way, and you should feel free to do the same. Every storyteller bends the mythic pattern to his or her own purpose or the needs of a particular culture.

That's why the hero has a *heroical* name.

A note about the term "hero": As used here, the word, like "doctor" or "poet," may refer to a woman or a man.

## THE HERO'S JOURNEY

At heart, despite its infinite variety, the hero's story is always a journey. A hero leaves her comfortable, ordinary surroundings to venture into a challenging, unfamiliar world. It may be an outward journey to an actual place, a labyrinth, forest or cave, a strange city or country, a new locale that becomes the scene for her conflict with antagonistic, challenging forces.

But there are so many stories that take the hero on an inward journey, one of the mind, the heart, the spirit. In any good story the hero grows and changes, undertaking a journey from one way of Being to the next, from despair to hope, weakness to strength, help to wisdom, loss to fate, and back again. It's these emotional journeys that hook an audience and make a story worth watching.

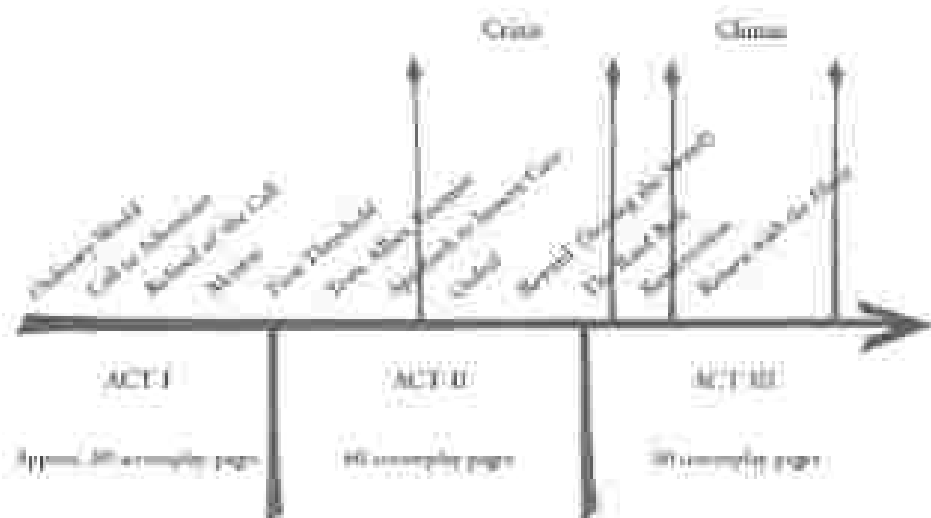
The stages of the Hero's Journey can be traced in all kinds of stories, not just those that feature "heroic" physical action and adventure. The protagonist of every story is the hero of a journey, even if the path leads only into his own mind or into the realm of relationships.

The way stations of the Hero's Journey emerge naturally even when the writer is unaware of them, but some knowledge of this most ancient guide to storytelling is useful in identifying problems and telling better stories. Consider these twelve stages as a map of the Hero's Journey, one of many ways to get from here to there, but one of the most flexible, durable and dependable.

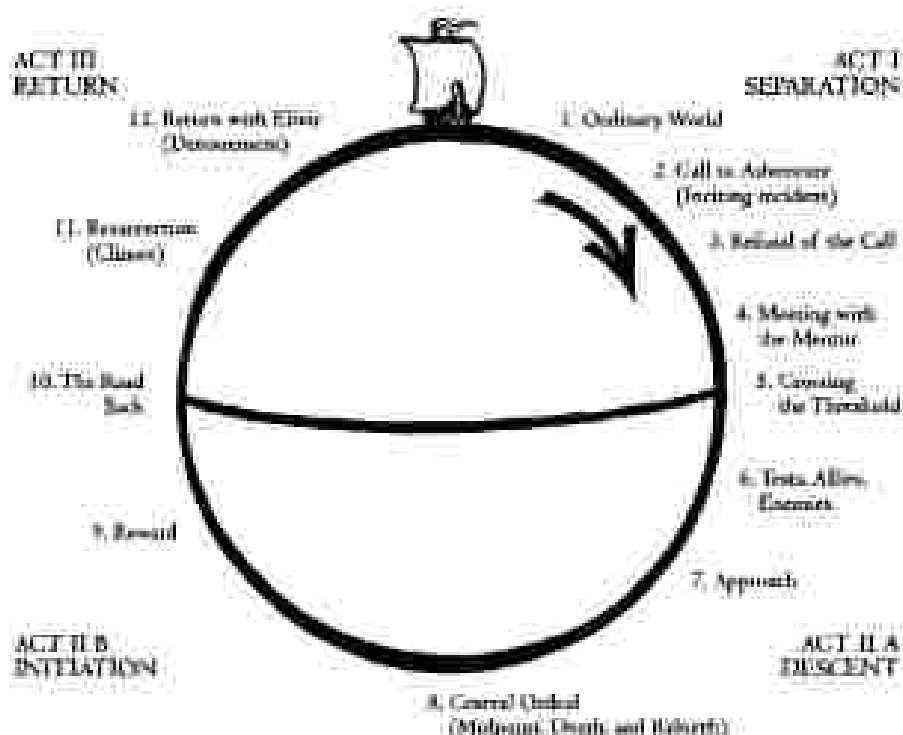
## THE STAGES OF THE HERO'S JOURNEY

1. Ordinary World
2. Call to Adventure
3. Refusal of the Call
4. Meeting with the Mentor
5. Crossing the First Threshold
6. Tests, Allies, Enemies
7. Approach to the Inmost Cave
8. Ordeal
9. Reward (Seizing the Secret)
10. The Road Back
11. Resurrection
12. Return with the Elixir

## THE HERO'S JOURNEY MODEL



# THE HERO'S JOURNEY



## 1. THE ORDINARY WORLD

Most movies take the hero out of the ordinary, mundane world and into a Special World, new and alien. This is the familiar “fish out of water” idea which has spawned countless films and TV shows (“The Fugitive,” “The Beverly HillsCop,” “Mr. Bean,” “Curtain in Washington,” “Catherine Deneuve in King Arthur’s Court,” “The Wizard of Oz,” “Witness,” “A Home,” “Friday,” “Blame,” “Beachy Hills Cop,” etc.).

If you’re going to show a fish out of his customary element, you first have to show him in that Ordinary World to create a vivid contrast with the strange new world he is about to enter.

In *Witness*, you see both the city policeman and the Amish mother and son in their normal worlds before they are thrust into totally alien surroundings: the Amish being overwhelmed by the city and the city cop encountering the 19th-century world of the Amish. You first see Luke Skywalker, hero of *Star Wars*, being tossed to death in a trenching before he sets out to tackle the universe.

Likewise in *The Wizard of Oz*, considerable time is spent to establish Dorothy’s drab normal life in Kansas before she is blown to the wonderworld of Oz. Here the contrast is heightened by showing the Kansas scenes in stark black and white while the Oz scenes are shot in vibrant Technicolor.

*The Officer and a Gentleman* describes a vivid contrast between the Ordinary World of the hero — that of a rough Navy hero with a divorce, whose chasing father — and the Special World of the sea and polished Navy flight school which the hero enters.

## 2. THE CALL TO ADVENTURE

The hero is presented with a problem, challenge, or adventure to undertake. Once presented with a Call to Adventure, she can no longer remain indefinitely in the comfort of the Ordinary World.

Perhaps the land is dying, as in the King Arthur movies of the search for the Grail, the only means that can heal the wounded land. In *Star Wars*, the Call to Adventure is Princess Leia’s desperate holographic message to wise old Obi Wan Kenobi, who asks Luke to join in the quest. Leia has been watched by evil Darth Vader, like the Greek springtime goddess Persephone, who was kidnapped on the underworld by Pluto, lord of the dead. Her mission is vital to restoring the normal balance of the universe.

In many detective stories, the Call to Adventure is the private eye being asked to take on a new case and solve a crime which has upset the order of things. A good detective should right wrongs as well as solve crimes.

In revenge plots, the Call to Adventure is often a wrong which must be set right: an offense against the natural order of things. In *The Count of Monte Cristo*, Edmond Dantes is unjustly imprisoned and is driven to escape by his desire for revenge. The plot of *Beowulf: Hill Top* is set in motion by the murder of the hero's best friend. In *Four Blood Runners* is motivated by his unfair treatment at the hands of an unscrupulous sheriff.

In romantic comedies, the Call to Adventure might be the first encounter with the special but annoying someone the hero or heroine will be planning and squaring with.

The Call to Adventure establishes the stakes of the game, and makes clear the hero's goal: to win the treasure of the quest, to get revenge or right a wrong, to achieve a dream, confront a challenge, or change a life.

What's at stake can often be expressed as a question posed by the call. Will ET or Dunderbop in *The Wizard of Oz* get home against Will Luke and/or Princess Leia and Jettor Durrk Vidor? In *It's a Wonderful Life*, will the hero be driven out of May Hight school by his own selfishness and the meddling of a former Marine drill instructor, or will he earn the right to be called an officer and a gentleman? Bow means girl, but does boy get girl?

### 3. REFUSAL OF THE CALL (THE RELUCTANT HERO)

This one is about fear. Often at this point the hero balks at the threshold of adventure. Refusing the Call or expressing misgivance. After all, she is facing the greatest of all fears: terror of the unknown. The hero has not yet fully committed to the journey and may still be thinking of turning back. Some other influence — a change in circumstances, a further offense against the natural order of things, or the encouragement of a Mentor — is required to get her past this turning point of fear.

In romantic comedies, the hero may express reluctance to get involved (maybe because of the pain of a previous relationship). In a detective story, the private eye may at first turn down the case, only to take it on later against his better judgment.

### Christoph's Eight

At this point in *Sir Wen*, Luke refuses Old Wen's Call to Adventure and returns to his aunt and uncle's farmstead, only to find they have been beset by the Emperor's emissaries. Suddenly Luke is no longer reluctant and is eager to undertake the quest. The evil of the Empire has become personal to him. He is motivated.

#### 4. MENTOR (THE WISE OLD MAN OR WOMAN)

By this time many readers will have introduced a Merlin-like character who is the hero's Mentor. The relationship between hero and Mentor is one of the most common themes in mythology, and one of the richest in its symbolic value. It stands for the bond between parent and child, teacher and student, doctor and patient, god and man.

The Mentor may appear as a wise old wizard (*Sir Wen*), a tough old serpent (*An Obit and a Gambon*), or a grizzled old hunting coach (*Booby*). In the mythology of "The Mary Tyler Moore Show", it was (ex) Grand Inquisitor the crony Robert Show character who knows all about shenanigans.

The function of Mentors is to prepare the hero to face the unknown. They may give advice, guidance or magical equipment. Old Wen in *Sir Wen* gives Luke his father's light-saber, which he will need in his battles with the dark side of the Force. In *The Wizard of Oz*, Glinda the Good Witch gives Dorothy guidance and the ruby slippers that will eventually get her home again.

However, the Mentor can only go so far with the hero. Eventually the hero must face the unknown alone. Sometimes the Mentor is required to give the hero a swift kick in the pants to get the adventure going.

#### 5. CROSSING THE FIRST THRESHOLD

Now the hero finally commits to the adventure and fully enters the Special World of the story for the first time by Crossing the First Threshold. He agrees to face the consequences of dealing with the problem or challenge posed in the Call to Adventure. This is the moment when the story takes off and the adventure really gets going. The balloon goes up, the ship sails, the carriage begins, the plane or the speedster zooms off, the wagon train gets rolling.

Movies are often built in three acts, which can be regarded as representing 1) the hero's decision to act, 2) the action itself, and 3) the consequences of the action.

The First Threshold marks the cutting point between Acts One and Two. The hero, having overcome fear, has decided to confront the problem and take action. She is now committed to the journey and there's no turning back.

This is the moment when Dorothy sets out on the Yellow Brick Road. The hero of *Beverly Hills Cop*, Axel Foley, decides to defy his boss's orders, leaving his Ordinary World of the Detroit streets to investigate his friend's murder in the Special World of Beverly Hills.

## 8. TESTS, ALLIES, AND ENEMIES

Once across the First Threshold, the hero naturally encounters new challenges and Tests, makes Allies and Enemies, and begins to learn the rules of the Special World.

*Scream* and *Se7en* have men to be good places for these transactions. Cynical Wierdos take the hero to a cabaret where his ingenuity and determination are tested, and where friends and allies are introduced. Bars are also useful to the hero for obtaining information, for learning the new rules that apply to the Special World.

In *GrainMena*, Rick's Cafe is the site of intrigue in which alliances and enemies are forged, and in which the hero's moral character is constantly tested. In *Star Men*, the cantina is the setting for the creation of a major alliance with Han Solo and the making of an important enemy with Jabba the Hutt, which pays off two scenes later in terms of the job. Here in the giddy, surreal, violent atmosphere of the cantina swimming with human aliens, Luke also gets a taste of the exciting and dangerous Special World he has just entered.

Scenes like these allow for character development as we watch the hero and his companions meet under stress. In the *Star Men* cantina, Luke gets to see Han Solo's way of handling a tight situation, and learns that Obi Wan is a wotter wizard of great power.

There are similar sequences in *An Officer and a Gentleman* at about the point at which the hero makes allies and enemies and meets his "love interest." Several aspects of the hero's character — aggressiveness and hostility, knowledge of street fighting, attitudes about women — are revealed under pressure in these scenes, and soon enough, one of them takes place in a bar.

## Dragon Eye

Of course not all Tests, Allies and Enemies are contained in tests. In every scene such as *The Wizard of Oz*, there are simply no scenes on the road. At this stage on the Yellow Brick Road, Dorothy acquires her companions the Scarecrow, Tin Woodman and Cowardly Lion, and makes enemies such as an orchard full of grumpy talking trees. She passes a number of Tests such as getting Scarecrow off the road, saving the Tin Woodman, and helping the Cowardly Lion deal with his fear.

In *Star Wars* the Tests continue after the opening scene. Obi Wan teaches Luke about the Force by making him fight (divided). The early loss battles with the Imperial fighters are another Test which Luke necessarily passes.

## 7. APPROACH TO THE INMOST CAVE

The hero comes at last to the edge of a dangerous place, sometimes deep underground, where the object of the quest is hidden. Often it's the headquarters of the hero's greatest enemy, the most dangerous spot in the Special World, the Inmost Cave. When the hero enters this fearful place he will cross the normal world threshold. Heroes often pause at the gate to prepare, plan, and outwit the villain's guards. This is the phase of Approach.

In mythology the Inmost Cave may represent the land of the dead. The hero may have to descend into hell to rescue a loved one (Orpheus), into a cave to fight a dragon and win a treasure (Sigurd in *Norse myth*), or into a labyrinth to confront a monster (Theseus and the Minotaur).

In the *Archaic* stories the Inmost Cave is the Chapel Perilous, the dangerous chamber where the seeker may find the Grail.

In the modern mythology of *Star Wars* the Approach to the Inmost Cave is Luke Skywalker and company being sucked into the Death Star where they will face Darth Vader and rescue Princess Leia. In *The Wizard of Oz* it's Dorothy being kidnapped to the Wicked Witch's (wicked) castle, and her companions slipping or tripping her. The title of *Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom* reveals the Inmost Cave of that film.

Approach covers all the preparations for entering the Inmost Cave and confronting death or supreme danger.

## 8. THE ORDEAL

Here the fortunes of the hero but become in a direct confrontation with his greatest fear. He faces the possibility of death and is brought to the brink as a battle with a



hostile force. The Oedipal is a "black moment" for the audience, as we are held in suspense and tension, not knowing if he will live or die. The hero's fate stands as "in the belly of the beast."

In *Star Wars* it's the harrowing moment in the *lands of the Dead Sea* when Luke, Leia, and company are trapped in the giant trashcanister. Luke is pulled under by the tentacle monster that lives in the sewage and is held down so long that the audience begins to wonder if he's dead. In *ET*, the lovable alien momentarily appears in the car on the operating table. In *The Blood of The Drachy* and her friends are trapped by the Wicked Witch, and it looks like there's no way out. At this point in *Beverly Hills Cop And Friday* is in the clutches of the villain's eye with a gun to his head.

In *an Office and a Gentleman*, Zack Mayo endures an Oedipal when his Marine drill instructor humiliates as all our drive to succeed and humiliates him into quitting the program. It's a psychological life-or-death moment, but if he gives in, his chances of becoming an officer and a gentleman will be dead. He urges the Oedipal to return to quit, and the Oedipal changes him. The drill sergeant, a guy *Wise Old Man*, has forced him to admit his dependency on others, and from this moment on he is now cooperative and his ally.

In romantic comedies the death faced by the hero may simply be the temporary death of the relationship, as in the second movement of the sitcom *And Just Like That*. "You never get, you never get, you never get!" The hero's chances of connecting with the object of affection look bleak.

This is a critical moment in any story, an Oedipal in which the hero must die or appear to die so that she can be born again. It's a major source of the magic of the heroic myth. The experiences of the preceding stages have led us, the audience, to identify with the hero and her fate. What happens to the hero happens to us. We are encouraged to experience the birth-of-death moment with her. Our emotions are temporarily depressed so that they can be raised by the hero's return from death. The result of this revival is a feeling of elation and exhilaration.

The designers of amusement park thrill rides know how to use this principle. Roller coasters make their passengers feel as if they're going to die, and that's a great thrill that comes from breaking up against death and surviving it. You're never more alive than when you're looking death in the face.

This is also the key element in rites of passage or rituals of initiation into fraternities and secret societies. The initiate is forced to face death in some terrible

## Character Style

experience, and then it allowed to experience resurrection as he is reborn as a new member of the group. The hero of every story is an initiate being introduced to the mysteries of life and death.

Every story needs such a life-or-death moment in which the hero or his goals are immortal (or nearly).

## 9. Reward (Setting the Scent)

Having survived death, hears the dragon, or slain the Minotaur, hero and audience have come to celebrate. The hero now takes possession of the treasure she has come seeking, her Reward. It might be a special weapon like a magic sword, or a token like the Grail or moon elixir which can heal the wounded land.

Sometimes the "reward" is knowledge and experience that leads to greater understanding and a reconciliation with hostile forces.

In *The Hobbit*, Luke rescues Princess Lego and captures the plans of the Death Star, keys to defeating Darth Vader.

Timothy escapes from the Wicked Witch's castle with the Witch's broomstick and the ruby slippers, keys to getting back home.

At this point the hero may also settle a conflict with a parent. In *Return of the Jedi*, Luke is reconciled with Darth Vader, who turns out to be his father and not such a bad guy after all.

The hero may also be reconciled with the opposite sex, as in romantic comedies. In many stories the loved one is the treasure the hero has come to win or rescue, and there is often a love scene at this point to celebrate the victory.

From the hero's point of view, members of the opposite sex may appear to be Shapeshifters, an archetype of change. They seem to shift constantly in form or age, reflecting the confusing and constantly changing aspects of the opposite sex. Tales of vampires, werewolves and other shapeshifters are symbolic echoes of this shifting quality about men and women we in each other.

The hero's Ordeal may grant a better understanding of the opposite sex, an ability to see beyond the shifting outer appearance, leading to a reconciliation.

The hero may also become more attractive as a result of having survived the Ordeal. He has earned the title of "hero" by having taken the supreme risk on behalf of the community.

### 10. THE ROAD BACK

The hero's not out of the woods yet. We're crossing into Act Three now as the hero begins to deal with the consequences of confronting the dark forces of the Ordinal. If she has not yet resigned its sacrifice with the patron, the gods, or the hostile forces, they may come riding after her. Some of the best chase scenes spring up at this point, as the hero is pursued on *The Road Back* by the vengeful forces she has disturbed by Seizing the sword, the slane, or the mission.

Thus Luke and Leia are furiously pursued by Darth Vader as they escape the Death Star. *The Road Back* in *E.T.* is the moonlight bicycle flight of Elliott and *E.T.* as they escape from "Keys" (Peter Coyote), who represents repressive governmental authority.

This stage marks the decision to return to the Ordinary World. The hero realizes that the Special World must eventually be left behind and there are still dangers, temptations, and tests ahead.

### 11. REBIRTH

In ancient times, heroes and warriors had to be purified before they returned to their communities, because they had blood on their hands. The hero who has been to the realm of the dead must be reborn and cleansed in one last Ordinal of death and Resurrection before returning to the Ordinary World of the living.

This is often a second life-and-death moment, almost a replay of the death and rebirth of the Ordinal. Death and darkness get in one last, desperate shot before being finally defeated. It's a kind of final exam for the hero, who must be tested once more to see if he has really learned the lessons of the Ordinal.

The hero is transformed by these moments of death-and-rebirth, and as she or he returns to ordinary life reborn as a new being with new insights.

The Star Wars films play with this element constantly. The films of the "original trilogy" feature a final battle scene in which Luke is almost killed, appears to be dead for a moment, and then miraculously survives. Each Ordinal wins him new knowledge and command over the Force. He is transformed into a new being by his experience.

As if Foley in the climactic sequence of *Beverly Hills Cop* must again face death at the hands of the villain, but is rescued by the intervention of the Beverly Hills

police force. He emerges from the experience with a greater respect for competition and is a more complete human being.

As Officer and a Graduate officer's more complex series of final incidents, as the hero faces death in a number of ways, Zack's selfishness dies as he gives up the chance for a personal athletic triumph in favor of helping another cadet over an obstacle. His relationship with his girlfriend seems to be dead, and he must survive the crushing blow of his best friend's suicide. As if that weren't enough, he also endures a final hand-to-hand, life-or-death battle with his drill instructor, but survives it all and is transformed into the gallant "officer and gentleman" of the tale.

#### 4.2. RETURNING TO THE ORDINARY

The hero Returns to the Ordinary World, but the journey is meaningless unless she brings back some Elixir, essence, or lesson from the Special World. The Elixir is a magic potion with the power to heal. It may be a gift it retains like the Grail that magically heals the wounded land, or it simply might be knowledge or experience that could be useful to the community normally.

Eloody returns to Kansas with the knowledge that she is loved, and that "There's no place like home." E.T. returns home with the experience of friendship with humans. Luke Skywalker defeats Darth Vader (for the time being) and restores peace and order to the galaxy.

Zack Mayo wins his commission and leaves the Special World of the training base with a new perspective. In the sparkling new uniform of an officer (with a new attitude to match) he literally sweeps his girlfriend off her feet and carries her away.

Sometimes the Elixir is trauma won on the quest, but it may be love, freedom, wisdom, or the knowledge that the Special World exists and can be survived. Sometimes it's just making home work a good story to tell.

Unless something is brought back from the Other in the Innermost Cave, the hero is doomed to repeat the adventure. Many comedies use this ending, as a lovable character refuses to learn his lesson and continues on the same folly that got him in trouble in the first place.

## To recap the Hero's Journey:

1. Heroes are introduced in the ORDINARY WORLD, where
2. they receive the CALL TO ADVENTURE.
3. They are RELUCTANT at first to REPLY TO THE CALL, but
4. are encouraged by a MENTOR to
5. CROSS THE FIRST THRESHOLD (1) and enter the Special World, where
6. they encounter TESTS, ALLIES, AND ENEMIES.
7. They APPROACH THE INMOST CAVE, crossing a second threshold
8. where they endure the ORDEAL.
9. They take possession of their REWARD and
10. are pursued on THE ROAD BACK to the Ordinary World.
11. They cross the third threshold, experience a RESURRECTION, and are transformed by the experience.
12. They RETURN WITH THE ELIXIR, a boon or treasure to benefit the Ordinary World.



The Hero's Journey is a skeletal framework that should be fleshed out with the details and surprises of the individual story. The structure should not call attention to itself, nor should it be followed too precisely. The order of the stages given here is only one of many possible variations. The stages can be deleted, added to, and drastically shuffled without losing any of their power.

The values of the Hero's Journey are what's important. The images of the basic version — young heroes seeking magic wands from old wizards, maidens risking death to save loved ones, knights riding off to fight evil dragons in deep woods, and so on — are just symbols of universal life experiences. The symbols can be changed infinitely to suit the story at hand and the needs of the script.

The Hero's Journey is easily translated to contemporary dramas, comedies, romances, or action-adventures by substituting modern equivalents for the symbolic

## Chapter 14

figures and props of the local area. The wise old man or woman may be a real shaman or wizard, but may also be any kind of Mentor or teacher, doctor or therapist, “crusty but benign” boss, tough but fair top sergeant, parent, grandparent, or guiding helping figure.

Modern heroes may not be going into caves and labyrinths to fight mythical beasts, but they do enter a Special World and an Inmost Cave by venturing into space, to the bottom of the sea, into the depths of a modern city, or into their own hearts.

The patterns of myth can be used to tell the simplest comic book story or the most sophisticated drama. The Hero's Journey gives and creates a new experience or mood within its framework. Changing the traditional sex and relative ages of the archetypes only makes it more interesting, and allows one more complex webs of understanding to be spun among them. The basic figures can be combined or each can be divided into several characters to show different aspects of the same idea.

The Hero's Journey is infinitely flexible, capable of endless variation without sacrificing any of its magic, and it will nurture us all.

Now that we've looked over the map, let's meet the characters who populate the landscape of story-telling: the Archetypes.

# THE ARCHETYPES

---

*"Remember or not, the god will come."*

— *Written over the floor of Carl Jung's house*



As soon as you enter the world of fairy tales and myths, you become aware of recurring character types and relationships: quivering heroes, heralds who call them to adventure, wise old men and women who give them magical gifts, threshold guardians who seem to block their way, shape-shifting fellow travelers who confuse and deceive them, shadowy villains who try to destroy them, tricksters who upset the status quo and provide comic relief. In describing these common character types, symbols, and relationships, the Swiss psychiatrist Carl G. Jung developed the term *archetypes*, meaning ancient patterns of personality that are the shared heritage of the human race.

Jung suggested there may be a collective unconscious, similar to the personal unconscious. Fairy tales and myths are like the dreams of an entire culture, springing from the collective unconscious. The same character types seem to occur on both the personal and the collective scale. The archetypes are amazingly constant throughout all times and cultures, in the dreams and personalities of individuals as well as in the mythic imagination of the entire world. An understanding of these forces is one of the most powerful elements in the modern mystic's bag of tricks.

## Character type

The concept of archetypes is an indispensable tool for understanding the purpose or function of characters in a story. If you grasp the function of the archetype which a particular character is expressing, it can help you determine if the character is pulling her full weight in the story. The archetypes are part of the universal language of storytelling, and a command of their energy is as essential to the writer as breathing.

Joseph Campbell speaks of the archetypes as biological as expressions of the organs of the body, built into the wiring of every human being. The universality of these patterns makes possible the shared experience of storytelling. Storytellers instinctively choose characters and relationships that resonate to the energy of the archetypes, to create dramatic experiences that are recognizable to everyone. Becoming aware of the archetypes can only expand your command of your craft.

## ARCHETYPES AS FUNCTIONS

When I first began working with these ideas I thought of an archetype as a fixed role which a character would play exclusively throughout a story. Once I identified a character as a mentor, I expected her to remain a mentor and only a mentor. However, as I worked with fairy tale motifs as a story consultant for Disney Animation, I encountered another way of looking at the archetypes — not as rigid character roles but as functions performed temporarily by characters to achieve certain effects in a story. This idea on its origin comes from the work of the Russian fairy tale expert Vladimir Propp, whose book *Morphology of the Folktale* analyzes motifs and recurrent patterns in hundreds of Russian tales.

Looking at the archetypes in this way, as flexible character functions rather than as rigid character types, can liberate your storytelling. It explains how a character in a story can transfer the qualities of more than one archetype. The archetypes can be thought of as masks worn by the characters temporarily as they are needed to advance the story. A character might enter the story performing the function of a herald, then switch masks as function as a rockstar, a mentor, and a shadow.

## FACETS OF THE HERO'S PERSONALITY

Another way to look at the classic archetypes is that they are facets of the hero (or the writer's) personality. The other characters represent possibilities for the hero, for



good or ill. A hero sometimes passes through the story gathering and incorporating the energy and traits of the other characters. She learns from the other characters, fusing them into a complete human being who has picked up something from everyone she has met along the way.

THE ARCHETYPES AS EMINATIONS OF THE HERO



### Character Type

The archetypes can also be regarded as personified symbols of various human qualities. Like the major arcana cards of the Tarot, they stand for the aspects of a complete human personality. Every good story reflects the total human story, the universal human condition of being born into this world, growing, learning, struggling to become an individual, and dying. Stories can be read as metaphors for the general human situation, with characters who embody universal, archetypal qualities, comparable to the group as well as the individual.

### THE MOST COMMON AND USEFUL ARCHETYPES

For the storyteller, certain character archetypes are indispensable tools of the trade. You can't tell stories without them. The archetypes that occur most frequently in stories—and that seem to be the most useful for the writer to understand, use,

**HERO**

**MENTOR (Wise Old Man or Woman)**

**THRESHOLD GUARDIAN**

**HERALD**

**SHAPESHIFTER**

**SHADOW**

**ALLY**

**TRICKSTER**

There are, of course, many more archetypes as many as there are human qualities to distinguish ourselves. Fairy tales are crowded with archetypal figures: the Wolf, the Hunter, the Good Mother, the Wicked Stepmother, the Fairy Godmother, the Witch, the Prince or Princess, the Greedy Innkeeper, and so forth, who perform highly specialized functions. Jung and others have identified many psychological archetypes, such as the *Don Juan* or eternal boy, who can be found in myths at the very youthful Cupid, in stories as characters such as Peter Pan, and in life as men who never want to grow up.

Particular genres of modern stories have their specialized character types, such as the "Whore with the Heart of Gold" or the "Arrogant West Point Lieutenant" in Westerns, the "Good Cop/Bad Cop" pairing in buddy pictures, or the "Tough but Fair Sergeant" in war movies.

However, these are only variants and refinements of the archetypes discussed in the following chapters. The archetypes we will discuss are the most basic patterns, from which all others are shaped to fit the needs of specific stories and genres.

Two questions are helpful for a writer trying to identify the nature of an archetype: 1) What psychological function or part of the personality does it represent? and 2) What is its dramatic function in a story?

Keep these questions in mind as we look at *each* of the basic archetypes, the people or energies we are likely to meet on the Hero's journey.

# HERO

*"We're on a mission from God!"*

— from *The Blue Book* screenplay  
by Dan Aykroyd and John Landis



The word *hero* is Greek, from a root that means "to protect and to save" (originally the motto of the Los Angeles Police Department). A Hero is someone who is willing to sacrifice his own needs on behalf of others. (See a shepherd who will sacrifice to protect and save his flock. At the root the idea of Hero is connected with self-sacrifice. (Note that I use the word Hero to describe a central character or protagonist of either sex.)

## PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION

In psychological terms, the archetype of the Hero represents what Freud called the ego — that part of the personality that separates from the mother, that stands as self distinct from the rest of the human race. Ultimate Hero is one who is able to transcend the bounds and illusions of the ego, but at first, Heroes are all ego — the one, that personal identity which thinks it is separate from the rest of the group. The journey of many Heroes is the story of that separation from the family or tribe equivalent to a child's sense of separation from the mother.

## Character Note

The Hero archetype represents the ego's search for identity and wholeness. In the process of becoming complete, integrated human beings, we are all Heroes facing internal guardians, monsters, and helpers. In the quest to explore our inner worlds we find teachers, guides, demons, gods, misters, sermons, scapegoats, mentors, seducers, betrayers, and allies, as aspects of our personalities and characters in our dreams. All the villains, tricksters, lovers, friends, and foes of the Hero can be found inside ourselves. The psychological task we all face is to integrate these separate parts into our complete, balanced entity. The ego, the Hero thinking she is separate from all these parts of herself, must incorporate them to become the Self.

## DRAMATIC FUNCTIONS

### AUDIENCE IDENTIFICATION

The dramatic purpose of the Hero is to give the audience a window into the story. Each person hearing a tale or watching a play or movie is invited, in the early stages of the story, to identify with the Hero, to merge with him and see the world of the story through his eyes. Storytellers do this by giving their Heroes a combination of qualities, a mix of universal and unique characteristics.

Heroes have qualities that we all can identify with and recognize in ourselves. They are propelled by universal drives that we can all understand: the desire to be loved and understood, to succeed, survive, be free, get revenge, right wrongs, or seek self-expression.

Stories invite us to invest part of our personal identity in the Hero for the duration of the experience. In a sense we become the Hero for a while. We project ourselves into the Hero's psyche and see the world through her eyes. Heroes need some admirable qualities, so that we want to be like them. We want to experience the self-confidence of Katharine Hepburn, the elegance of Fred Astaire, the wit of Cary Grant, the seriousness of Marilyn Monroe.

Heroes should have universal qualities, emotions, and motivations that everyone has experienced at one time or another: revenge, anger, love, competition, uncertainty, punishment, idealism, cynicism, or despair. But Heroes must also be unique human beings, rather than stereotypical creatures or tin gods, without flaws

is unpredictable. Like any effective work of art, they need both universality and originality. Nobody wants to see a movie or read a story about abstract qualities in human form. We want stories about real people. A real character, like a real person, is not just a single trait but a unique combination of many qualities and drives, some of them conflicting. And the more conflicting, the better. A character seen by wearing allegiances to love and duty is inherently interesting to an audience. A character who has a unique combination of contradictory impulses, such as trust and suspicion or hope and despair, seems more realistic and human than one who displays only one character trait.

A well-rounded Hero can be determined, uncertain, charming, longed-for, impatient, and strong in body but weak at heart, all at the same time. It's the particular combination of qualities that gives an audience the sense that the Hero is one of a kind, a real person rather than a type.

## GROWTH

Another story function of the Hero is learning or growth. In evaluating a script, sometimes it's hard to tell who is the main character, or who should be. Often the best answer is the one who learns or grows the most in the course of the story. Heroes overcome obstacles and achieve goals, but they also gain new knowledge and wisdom. The heart of many stories is the learning that goes on between a Hero and a mentor, or a Hero and a lover, or even between a Hero and a villain. We are all each other's teachers.

## ACTION

Another heroic function is acting or doing. The Hero is usually the most active person in the script. His will and desire is what drives most movies forward. A frequent flaw in screenplays is that the Hero is fairly active throughout the story, but at the most critical moment becomes passive and is rescued by the timely arrival of some outside force. At that moment alone, all, a Hero should be fully active, in control of his own fate. The Hero should perform the focus action of the story, the action that requires taking the most risk or responsibility.

## SACRIFICE

People commonly think of Heroes as strong or brave, but these qualities are secondary to sacrifice — the true mark of a Hero. Sacrifice is the Hero's willingness to give up something of value, perhaps even her own life, on behalf of an ideal or a group. Sacrifice means "making holy." In ancient times people made sacrifices, even of human beings, to acknowledge their debt to the spirit world, the gods, or nature, to appease those mighty forces, and to make holy the processes of daily life. Even death became sanctified, a holy act.

## DEALING WITH DEATH

At the heart of every story is a confrontation with death. If the Hero doesn't face actual death, then there is the threat of death or symbolic death in the form of a high-stakes game, lost affair, or adventure in which the Hero may succeed (live) or fail (die).

Heroes show us how to deal with death. They may survive it, proving that death is not so tough. They may die (perhaps only symbolically), and be reborn, proving that death can be transcended. They may die a Hero's death, transcending death by offering up their lives willingly for a cause, an ideal, or a group.

True heroism is shown in stories when Heroes offer themselves on the altar of chance, willing to take the risk that their quest for adventure may lead to danger, loss, or death. Like soldiers who know that by enlisting they have agreed to give their lives if their country asks them to, Heroes accept the possibility of sacrifice.

The most effective Heroes are those who experience sacrifice. They may give up a loved one or friend along the way. They may give up some cherished vice or eccentricity as the price of entering into a new way of life. They may return some of their winnings to show what they have gained in the Special World. They may return to their starting point, the tribe or village, and bring back boom, elixir, food, or knowledge to share with the rest of the group. Great cultural Heroes like Martin Luther King or Gandhi gave their lives in pursuit of their ideals.

## HEROISM IN OTHER ARCHETYPES

Sometimes the Hero archetype is not just manifested in the main character, the protagonist who bravely fights the bad guys and wins. The archetype can be manifested

in other characters when they are heroically. An infantile character can grow to be heroic. The title character of *Gojo Dō* begins as another archetype altogether: a villain or clown, but by striving to be a Hero, and by sacrificing himself in a crucial moment on behalf of his friends, he earns the right to be called a Hero. In *Sao Risen*, Chi-Wen Karoshi clearly manifests the archetype of the mentor through most of the story. However, he acts heroically and temporarily wears the mask of the Hero when he sacrifices himself to allow Luke to escape the Death Star.

It can be very effective to have a villainous or antagonistic character unexpectedly manifest heroic qualities. On the sitcom level, when a character like Garry DeVier's despicable "Taz" dispatcher Louie suddenly reveals he has a soft heart or has done something noble, the episode wins an Emmy. A gallant villain, heroic in some ways and despicable in others, can be very appealing. Ideally, every well-rounded character should manifest a touch of every archetype, because the archetypes are expressions of the parts that make up a complete personality.

## CHARACTER FLAWS

Interesting flaws humanize a character. We can recognize lots of ourselves in a Hero who is challenged to overcome inner doubts, errors in thinking, guilt or trauma from the past, or loss of the future. Weaknesses, imperfections, quirks, and vices immediately make a Hero or any character more real and appealing. It seems the more human characters are, the more the audience likes them and identifies with them.

Flaws also give a character somewhere to go — the so-called "character arc" in which a character develops from condition A to condition Z through a series of steps. Flaws are a starting point of (imperfection or incompleteness) from which a character can grow. They may be deficiencies in a character. Perhaps a Hero has no romantic partner, and is looking for the "missing piece" to complete her life. This is often symbolized in fairy tales by having the Hero experience a loss or a death in the family. Many fairy tales begin with the death of a parent or the kidnapping of a brother or sister. This subtraction from the family unit sets the nervous energy of the story in motion, not to stop until the balance has been restored by the creation of a new family or the reuniting of the old.

In most modern stories it is the Hero's personality that is being recreated or restored to wholeness. The missing piece may be a critical element of personality



such as the ability to lose or trust. Heroes may have to overcome some problems such as lack of parents or disapproval. Audiences love watching Heroes grapple with personality problems and overcome them. Will Edward, the rich but cold-hearted businessman of *Brave Heart*, warm up under the influence of the life-loving Vivian and become her Prince Charming? Will Vivian gain some self-respect and escape her life of prostitution? Will General, the guilt-ridden manager in *Ordinary People*, regain his lost ability to accept love and intimacy?

## VARIETIES OF HERO

Heroes come in many varieties, including willing and unwilling Heroes, goop-mantled and loser Heroes, Anti-Heroes, tragic Heroes, and catalyst Heroes. Like all the other archetypes, the Hero is a flexible concept that can express many kinds of energy. Heroes may combine with other archetypes to produce hybrids like the Trickster Hero: or they may temporarily wear the mask of another archetype, becoming a Shape-shifter, a Mentor to someone else, or even a Shadow.

Although usually portrayed as a positive figure, the Hero may also express dark or negative sides of the ego. The Hero archetype generally represents the human spirit in positive action, but may also show the consequences of weakness and reluctance to act.

## WILLING AND UNWILLING HEROES

It seems Heroes are of two types: 1) willing, active, go-for-it committed to the adventure, without doubt, always bravely going ahead, self-motivated, or 2) unwilling, full of doubts and hesitations, passive, needing to be motivated or pushed into the adventure by outside forces. Both make equally entertaining stories, although a Hero who is passive throughout may make for an unimpressive dramatic experience. It's usually best for an unwilling Hero to change at some point, to become committed to the adventure after some necessary motivation has been supplied.

## ANTI-HEROES

Anti-hero is a slippery term that can cause a lot of confusion. Simply stated, an Anti-hero is not the opposite of a Hero, but a specialized kind of Hero: one who

may be an outlaw or a villain from the point of view of society but with whom the audience is usually in sympathy. We identify with these outsiders because we have all felt like outsiders at one time or another.

*Anti-Heroes* may be of two types: 1) characters who behave much like conventional Heroes but are given a strong touch of cynicism or have a wounded quality, like Bogart's characters in *The Big Sleep* and *Cashmere*, or 2) tragic Heroes, central figures of a story who may not be likable or admirable, whose actions we may even deplore, like Macbeth or Scarface or the Joan Crawford of *Memento Mori*.

The wounded *Anti-hero* may be a heroic knight in tarnished armor, a loner who has rejected society or been rejected by it. These characters may win at the end and may have the audience's full sympathy at all times, but in society's eyes they are outcasts, like Robin Hood, roguish pirates or bandit Heroes, or many of Bogart's characters. They are often handsome men who have withdrawn from society's corruption, perhaps ex-cops or soldiers who became disillusioned and now operate in the shadow of the law as private eyes, smugglers, gamblers, or soldiers of fortune. We love these characters because they are rebels, thumbing their noses at society as we would all like to do. Another archetype of this kind is personified in James Dean in *Rebel Without a Cause* and Ed in *Easy Rider*, or the young Marlon Brando, whose character in *The Wild One* acted out a new and quite different generation's dissatisfaction with the old. Actors like Mickey Rourke, Matt Dillon, and Sean Penn carry on the tradition today.

The second type of *Anti-hero* is more like the classical idea of the tragic Hero. These are flawed Heroes who meet circumstances that must destroy and are brought down and destroyed by them. They may be charming, they may have admirable qualities, but the flaw wins out in the end. Some tragic *Anti-heroes* are not so admirable, but we watch their downfall with fascination because "there, but for the grace of God, go I." Like the ancient Greeks who watched Oedipus fall, we are purged of our emotions and we learn to avoid the same pitfalls as we watch the destruction of Al Pacino's character in *Insygnia*, Sigourney Weaver in *Dian Fossey* in *Coalition* or in *Mis*, or Ethan Hawke's character in *Looking for Mr. Goodbar*.

#### GROUP-ORIENTED HEROES

Another distinction must be made about Heroes with respect to their orientation to society. Like the first storytellers, the earliest humans who went out hunting and

### Group Hero

gathering on the plains of Africa, most Heroes are group-oriented. They are part of a society at the beginning of the story, and their journey takes them to an unknown land far from home. When we first meet them, they are part of a clan, tribe, village, town, or family. Their story is one of separation from that group (Act One); lone adventure in the wilderness away from the group (Act Two); and usually, eventual reintegration with the group (Act Three).

Group-oriented Heroes often face a choice between returning to the Ordinary World of the first act, or remaining in the Special World of the second act. Heroes who choose to remain in the Special World are rare in Western culture but fairly common in classic Asian and Indian tales.

### LONER HEROES

In contrast to the group-oriented Hero is the lone Western Hero such as Shane, Clint Eastwood's Man with No Name, John Wayne's Ethan in *The Searchers*, or *The Lone Ranger*. With this Hero type, the stories begin with the Heroes estranged from society. Their natural habitat is the wilderness; their natural state is solitude. Their journey is one of re-entry into the group (Act One); adventure within the group on the group's normal turf (Act Two); and return to isolation in the wilderness (Act Three). For them the Special World of Act Two is the tribe or village, which they visit briefly but in which they are always uncomfortable. The wonderful shot of John Wayne at the end of *The Searchers* sums up the story of this Hero type: Wayne is framed in a cabin doorway as an outsider forever cut off from the joys and concerns of the family. This kind of Hero need not be limited to Westerns. It can be used effectively in drama or action movies where a lone detective is tempted back into solitude, where a hermit or retired person is called back into society, or where an emotionally isolated person is challenged to re-enter the world of relationships.

As with group-oriented Heroes, the lone Heroes have the final choice of returning to their initial state (solitude), or remaining in the Special World of Act Two. Some Heroes begin as loners and end as group-oriented Heroes who elect to stay with the group.

## CATALYST HEROES

A certain class of Hero is an exception to the rule that the Hero is usually the character who undergoes the most change. These are catalyst Heroes, central figures who may act heroically, but who do not change much themselves because their main function is to bring about transformation in others. Like a true catalyst in chemistry, they bring about a change in a system without being changed themselves.

A good example is Eddie Murphy's character Axel Foley from *Beverly Hills Cop*. His personality is already fully formed and distinctive at the story's beginning. He doesn't have much of a character arc because he has nowhere to go. He doesn't learn or change much in the course of the story, but he does bring about change in his Beverly Hills cop buddies, Tigger and Rosewood. By comparison they have relatively strong character arcs, from being straight and by-the-book to being hip and streetwise, thanks to Axel's influence. In fact, although Axel is the central figure, the villain's main opponent, and the character with the best lines and the most screen time, it could be argued that he is not the true Hero but the blower of the plot, while young Rosewood (Judge Reinhold) is the actual Hero because he learns the most.

Catalyst Heroes are especially useful in containing stories such as episodic TV shows and sequels. Like *The Lone Ranger* or *Superman*, these Heroes undergo few internal changes, but primarily act to help others or guide them in their growth. Of course it's a good idea from time to time to give even these characters some moments of growth and change to help keep them fresh and believable.

## THE ROAD OF HEROES

Heroes are symbols of the soul in transformation, and of the journey each person takes through life. The stages of that progression, the mental stages of life and growth, make up the Hero's Journey. The Hero archetype is a rich field for exploration by writers and spiritual seekers. Carol S. Pearson's book *Awakening the Hero Within* further breaks down the idea of the Hero into useful archetypes (Initiator, Orphan, Martyr, Wanderer, Warrior, Caregiver, Seeker, Lover, Destroyer, Creator, Ruler, Magician, Sage, and Fool) and graphs the emotional progress of each. It's a good guide to a deeper psychological understanding of the Hero in its many facets. The special virtues embodied by some female heroes are described in *The Heroine's Journey: Women's Quest for Wholeness* by Maureen Murdock.

# MENTOR: WISE OLD MAN OR WOMAN

---

*"May the Force be with you!"*

— from *Star Wars* by George Lucas



An archetype found frequently in dreams, myths, and stories is the Mentor, usually a positive figure who aids or trains the hero. Campbell's name for this force is the Wise Old Man or Wise Old Woman. This archetype is expressed in all those characters who teach and protect heroes and give them gifts. Whether it's God walking with Adam in the Garden of Eden, Merlin guiding King Arthur, the Fairy Godmother helping Cinderella, or a veteran sergeant giving advice to a rookie cop, the relationship between hero and Mentor is one of the richest sources of entertainment in literature and film.

The word "Mentor" comes to us from *De Odysseus*. A character named Mentor guides the young hero, Telemachus, on his Hero's Journey. In fact it's the goddess Athena who helps Telemachus, by assuming the form of Mentor. (See Chapter 4 in *book two* for a fuller discussion of Mentor's role.) Mentors often speak in the voice of a god, or are inspired by divine wisdom. Good teachers and Mentors are embodied in the original sense of the word. "Embodied" is from the Greek *en thymoi*, meaning god-inspired, having a god in you, or being in the presence of a god.

**PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION:**

In the anatomy of the human psyche, Mentors represent the Self, the god within us, the aspect of personality that is connected with all things. The highest Self is the wise, cooler, more godlike part of us. Like Jimmy Cricket in the Disney version of *Pinocchio*, the Self acts as a conscience to guide us on the road of life when no Blue Fairy or kindly Gepetto is there to protect us and tell us right from wrong.

Mentor figures, whether encountered in drama, fairy tales, myths, or screenplays, stand for the hero's highest aspirations. They are what the hero may become if she persists on the Road of Heroes. Mentors are often former heroes who have survived life's early trials and are now passing on the gift of their knowledge and wisdom.

The Mentor archetype is closely related to the image of the parent. The Fairy godmothers in stories such as "Cinderella" can be interpreted as the protecting spirit of the girl's dead mother. Merlin is a surrogate parent to the young King Arthur, whose father is dead. Many heroes seek out Mentors because their own parents are inadequate role models.

**DRAMATIC FUNCTIONS****TEACHING**

Just as learning is an important function of the hero, teaching or training is a key function of the Mentor. Training sergeants, drill instructors, professors, trial bosses, parents, grandpas, crusty old hunting coaches, and all those who teach a hero the ropes, are manifesting this archetype. Of course the teaching can go both ways. Anyone who has taught knows that you learn as much from your students as they do from you.

**GIFT-GIVING**

Giving gifts is also an important function of this archetype. In Vladimir Propp's analysis of Russian fairy tales, *Morphology of the Folktale*, he identifies this function as that of a "donor" or provider, one who temporarily aids the hero, usually by giving some gift. It may be a magic weapon, an important key or clue, some magical medicine or food, or a life-saving piece of advice. In fairy tales the donor might be

a witch's cat, grateful for a little girl's kindness, who gives her a towel and a comb. Later when the girl is being chased by the witch, the towel turns into a raging river and the comb turns into a fence to block the witch's pursuit.

Examples of these gifts are abundant in movies, from the small-time mobster Pinnyus giving James Cagney his first gun in *The Public Enemy* to Clint Eastwood giving Luke Skywalker his father's lightsaber. Nowadays, the gift is as likely to be a computer code as the key to a dragon's lair.

## GIFTS IN MYTHOLOGY

Gift-giving, the donor function of the Mentor, has an important role in mythology. Many heroes received gifts from their Mentors, the gods. Pandora, whose name means "all-gifted," was showered with presents, including Zeus' vindictive gift of the box, which she was not supposed to open. Heroes such as Hercules were given some gifts by their Mentors, but among the Greeks the most gifted of heroes was Perseus.

## PERSEUS

The Greek ideal of heroism was exemplified in Perseus, the ultimate slayer. He has the distinction of being one of the best equipped of heroes, so loaded down with gifts from higher powers that it's a wonder he could walk. In time, with the help of Mentors such as Hermes and Athena, he acquired winged sandals, a magic sword, a helmet of invisibility, a magic sash, a magic mirror, the head of Medusa that turned all who look upon it to stone, and a magic satchel to stow the head in. As if this were not enough, the muse version of the Demeter tale, *Cloud of the Future*, gives him the flying horse Pegasus as well.

In most stories, this would be overloading if a bit. But Perseus is meant to be a paragon of heroes, so it's fitting he should be so well provided for by the gods, his Mentors on the quest.

## GIFTS SHOULD BE EARNED

In Propp's discussion of Russian *Fairy* tales, he observes that direct characters give magical presents to heroes, but usually only after the heroes have passed a test of

some kind. This is a good rule of thumb: The gift or help of the donor should be earned, by learning, sacrifice, or commitment. Fairy-tale heroes eventually earn the aid of animals or magical creatures by being kind to them in the beginning, sharing food with them, or protecting them from harm.

## MENTOR AS INVENTOR

Sometimes the Mentor functions as a scientist or inventor, whose gifts are his theories, designs, or inventions. The great inventor of classical myth is Daedalus, who designed the Labyrinth and other wonders for the rulers of Crete. As the master architect of the *Thracian* and the *Minotaur* story, he had a hand in creating the monster Minotaur and designed the Labyrinth as a cage for it. As a Mentor, Daedalus gave Icarus the ball of string that allowed Theseus to get in and out of the Labyrinth alive.

Implicated in his own crime as punishment for helping Theseus, Daedalus also invented the famous wax and feather wings that allowed him and his son Icarus to escape. As a blessing on Icarus, he advised his son not to fly too close to the sun. Icarus, who had grown up in the pitch-dark of the Labyrinth, was irresistibly attracted to the sun, ignored his father's advice, and fell to his death when the wax melted. The best advice is worthless if you don't take it.

## THE HERO'S CONSCIENCE

Some Mentors perform a special function as a conscience for the hero. Characters like Jimmy Cricket in *Punchinello* or Walter Brennan's Grand in *Red River* try to remind an errant hero of an important moral code. However, a hero may rebel against a nagging conscience. Would-be Mentors should remember that in the original *Collodi* story Pinocchio squashed the cricket to shut him up. The angel on a hero's shoulder can never offer arguments as colorful as those of the devil on the opposite side.

## MOTIVATION

Another important function of the Mentor archetype is to motivate the hero, and help her overcome fear. Sometimes the gift alone is sufficient reassurance and motivation. In other cases the Mentor shows the hero something or arranges things to motivate her to take action and commit to the adventure.





*The Mentor may act as a catalyst for the Hero.*

In some cases a hero was unwilling or fearful that he must be pushed onto the adventure. A Mentor may need to give a hero a swift kick in the pants in order to get the adventure rolling.

## PLANTING

A function of the Mentor archetype is often to plant information on a prop that will become important later. The James Bond films have a mandatory scene in which the weapons master "Q," son of Bond's recurring Mentors, describes the workings of some new briefcase gadget to a bored 007. This information is a plant, meant for the audience to note but forget about until the climactic moment when the gadget becomes a lifesaver. Such constructions help tie the beginning and end of the story together, and show that at some point everything we've learned from our Mentors comes in handy.

## SEXUAL INITIATION

In the realm of love, the Mentor's function may be to initiate us into the experience of love or sex. In India they speak of the *shakti* — a sexual initiation, a partner who helps you experience the power of sex as a vehicle of higher consciousness. A *shakti* is a manifestation of God, a Mentor leading the lover to experience the divine.

## Chapter 14

Seducers and thieves of experience teach heroes lessons the hard way. There may be a shadow side to Mentors who lead a hero down a dangerous road of ultimate loss or lossless, manipulative set. There are many ways to learn.

## TYPES OF MENTOR

Like heroes, Mentors may be willing or unwilling. Sometimes they teach by spite of themselves. In other cases they teach by their bad example. The downfall of a weakened, tragically flawed Mentor can show the hero pitfalls to avoid. As with heroes, dark or negative sides may be expressed through this archetype.

## DARK MENTORS

It often states the power of the Mentor archetype can be used to mislead the audience. It thrives the mask of a Mentor, sometimes a decoy used to lure the hero into danger. Or is an anti-heroic gangster figure such as *The Public Enemy* or *Goodfellas*, where every conventional heroic value is inverted. An anti-Mentor appears to guide the anti-hero on the road to crime and destruction.

Another version of this archetype's energy is a special kind of Threshold Guardian (an archetype discussed in the next chapter). An example is found in *Remains of the Day*, where Joan Wilder's witchy, sharp-tongued agent is at all appearances a Mentor, guiding her career and giving her advice about men. But when Joan is about to cross the threshold to adventure, the agent tries to stop her, warning her of the dangers and raising doubt in her mind. Rather than inspiring her like a true Mentor, the agent becomes an obstacle in the heroic path. This is psychologically true to life, for often we must overcome or integrate the energy of our best teachers in order to move to the next stage of development.

## FALLEN MENTORS

Some Mentors are still on a Hero's Journey of their own. They may be experiencing a crisis of faith in their calling. Perhaps they are dealing with the problems of aging and approaching the threshold of death, or have fallen from the heroic road. The hero needs the Mentor to pull himself together one more time, and there's serious doubt that he can do it. Tom Hanks in *A League of Their Own* plays a former sports

hero sidelined by injury and making a poor transition into Mentor-land. He has fallen far from grace, and the audience is rooting for him to straighten up and honor his role of helping the heroes. Such a Mentor may go through all the stages of a hero's journey, on his own path to redemption.

### CONTINUING MENTORS

Mentors are useful for giving assignments and setting stories in motion. For this reason they are often written into the cast of continuing series. Recurring Mentors include Mr. Waverly on "The Man from U.N.C.L.E.," "M" in the Bond pictures, The Chief on "Get Smart," Will Geer and Ellen Cochran as the grandparents in "The Waltons," Alfred in "Batman," James Earl Jones' CIA official in "Austin Powers" and The Sheriff of Red Oaks, etc.

### MULTIPLE MENTORS

A hero may be trained by a series of Mentors who teach specific skills. Hercules is surely among the best trained of heroes, mentored by experts on wrestling, archery, horsemanship, weapon-handling, boxing, wisdom, virtue, song, and music. He even took a driver-training course in characterizing from one Mentor. All of us have learned from a series of Mentors, including parents, older brothers and sisters, friends, lovers, teachers, bosses, co-workers, therapists, and other role models.

Multiple Mentors may be needed to express different functions of the archetype. In the James Bond movies, 007 always returns to his home base to confer with his main Wise Old Man or Woman, the aptly named "M" who gives him assignments, advice, and warnings. But the Mentor function of giving gifts to the hero is delegated to "Q," the weapons and gadget trainer. A certain amount of emotional support as well as advice and critical information is provided by Miss Moneypenny, representing another aspect of the Mentor.

### COMIC MENTORS

A special type of Mentor occurs in romantic comedies. This person is often the friend or fellow office worker of the hero, and is usually of the same sex as the hero. She gives the hero some advice about how to go out there to find the girl of a fool.

low), pretend to have an affair to make your husband jealous, sign interest in the husband's business, impress the husband with gifts, flowers, or flattery, be more aggressive, and so on. The advice often seems to lead the hero into temporary disaster, but it all works out right in the end. These characters are a human of numerous varieties, especially those of the 1950s when movies like *Pillow Talk* and *Love Case Book* gave plenty of work for character actors like Helmut Drees and Tony Randall who could portray this wise-cracking, sarcastic version of a Mentor.

## MENTOR AS SHAMAN

Mentor figures in stories are closely related to the idea of the shaman, the healer, the medicine man or woman, of ritual actions. Just as Mentors guide the hero through the Special World, shamans guide their people through life. They travel to other worlds in dreams and visions and bring back stories to lead their tribes. It's often the function of a Mentor to help the hero seek a guiding vision for a quest to another world.

## FLEXIBILITY OF THE MENTOR ARCHETYPE

Like the other archetypes, the Mentor or *doctos* is not a rigid character type, but rather a function, a job which several different characters might perform in the course of a story. A character primarily manifesting one archetype — the hero, the shapeshifter, the trickster, even the villain — may temporarily slip on the mask of the Mentor in order to teach or give something to the hero.

In Russian fairy tales, the wonderful character of the witch Baba Yaga is a Slavic figure who sometimes wears the Mentor mask. On the surface she's a horrible, cannibalistic witch representing the dark side of the forest, its power to devour. But like the forest, she can be appeased and can shower gifts on the traveler. Sometimes if Prince Ivan is kind and complimentary to her, Baba Yaga gives him the magical means he needs to rescue the Princess Vasilisa.

Although Campbell called these Mentor figures Wise Old Men or Women, they are sometimes neither wise nor old. The young, in their innocence, are often wiser and capable of teaching the old. The most foolish person in a story might be the one we learn the most from. As with the other archetypes, the function of a Mentor is more important than even physical description. What the character does will often determine what archetype is being manifested at the moment.

Many stories have no specific character who can be identified as a Mentor. There's no white-bearded, wisdonly figure who wanders around acting like a Wise Old Man. Nevertheless, almost every story calls on the energy of this archetype at some point.

### INNER MENTORS

In some Westerns or film noir stories the hero is an experiential, hardened character who has no need for a Mentor or guide. He has internalized the archetype and it now lives within him as an inner code of behavior. The Mentor may be the unspoken code of the gangbanger, or the secret notions of honor harbored by Sam Spade or Philip Marlowe. A code of ethics may be a disembodied manifestation of the Mentor archetype guiding the hero's actions. It's not uncommon for a hero to make reference to a Mentor who existed something to him earlier in life, even if there's no actual Mentor character in the story. A hero may remember, "My mother/father/grandfather/dad always used to say—" and then call to mind the bit of wisdom that will become critical in solving the problem of the story. The energy of the Mentor archetype also may be involved in a prop such as a book or other artifact that guides the hero in the quest.

### PLACEMENT OF MENTORS

Although the hero's journey often finds the Mentor appearing in Act One, the placement of a Mentor in a story is a practical consideration. A character may be needed at any point who knows the ropes, has the map to the unknown country, or can give the hero key information at the right time. Mentors may show up early in a story, or wait in the wings until needed at a critical moment in Act Two or Act Three.

Mentors provide heroes with motivation, inspiration, guidance, training, and gifts for the journey. Every hero is guided by something, and a story without some acknowledgement of this energy is incomplete. Whether expressed as an actual character or as an internalized code of behavior, the Mentor archetype is a powerful tool at the writer's command.

# THRESHOLD GUARDIAN

*"If you see, hear an idea that is still more long this journey, go."*

*— The Odyssey of Homer.*



If heroes encounter obstacles on the road to adventure. At each gateway to a new world there are powerful guardians at the threshold, placed to keep the unworthy from entering. They present a daunting face to the hero, but if properly understood, they can be overcome, bypassed, or even turned into allies. Many heroes (and many writers) encounter Threshold Guardians, and understanding their nature can help determine how to handle them.

Threshold Guardians are usually not the main villains or antagonists in stories. Often they will be henchmen of the villain, lesser things or mercenaries hired to guard access to the chief's headquarters. They may also be neutral figures who are simply part of the landscape of the Special World. In rare cases they may be secret helpers placed in the hero's path to test her willingness and skill.

There is often a symbiotic relationship between a villain and a Threshold Guardian. In nature, a powerful animal such as a bear will sometimes tolerate a smaller animal such as a fox nesting at the entrance of its lair. The fox, with its strong smell and sharp teeth, tends to keep other animals from wandering into the cave while the bear is sleeping. The fox also serves as an early warning system for the bear by making a racket if something tries to enter the cave. In similar fashion, villains of

heroes often rely on underlings such as dwarves, henchmen, bodyguards, sentries, gunglers, or mercenaries to protect and warn them when a hero approaches the Threshold of the villain's stronghold.

### PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION: NEUROSES

These Guardians may represent the ordinary obstacles we all face in the world around us: bad weather, bad luck, prejudice, oppression, or hostile people like the waitress who refuses to grant Jack Nicholson's simple request in *Five Easy Pieces*. But on a deeper psychological level they stand for our internal demons: the neuroses, insecurities, fears, dependencies, and self-limitations that hold back our growth and progress. It seems that every time you try to make a major change in your life, these inner demons rise up to their full force, not necessarily to stop you, but to test if you are truly determined to accept the challenge of change.

### DRAMATIC FUNCTION: TESTING

Testing of the hero is the primary dramatic function of the Threshold Guardian. When heroes confront one of these figures, they must solve a puzzle or pass a test. Like the Sphinx who puzzles Oedipus with a riddle before he can continue his journey, Threshold Guardians challenge and test heroes on the path.

How to deal with these apparent obstacles? Heroes have a range of options. They can run around and run, attack the opponent head-on, use craft or deceit to get by, bribe or appease the Guardian, or make an Ally of a presumed enemy. (Heroes are aided by a variety of unistypes known collectively as Allies, which will be discussed in a separate chapter.)

One of the most effective ways of dealing with a Threshold Guardian is to "get into the skin" of the opponent, like a hunter entering into the mind of a stalled animal. The Plains Indians were buffalo hunters to reach within bow-shoot of the buffalo herd. The hero may get past a Threshold Guardian by entering into its spirit or taking on its appearance. A good example is in Act Two of *The Wizard of Oz*, when the Tin Woodman, Cowardly Lion, and Scarecrow come to the Wicked Witch's castle to rescue the kidnapped Dorothy. The structure is the ideal. Dorothy's castle is a strong castle defended by a regiment of fierce-looking soldiers who march up and down singing "Oh-He-Oh." There's no possible way for the three friends to defeat such a large force.

However, our heroes are annihilated by these villains and overcome them, taking their uniforms and weapons. Disguised as soldiers, they join the end of a column and march right into the castle. They have turned an attack to their advantage by literally climbing into the skins of their opponents. Instead of uselessly trying to defeat a superior enemy, they have temporarily become the enemy.

It's important for a hero to recognize and acknowledge these figures as Threshold Guardians. In daily life, you have probably encountered resistance when you try to make a positive change in your life. People around you, even those who love you, are often reluctant to see you change. They are used to your routines and have found ways to benefit from them. The idea of your changing may threaten them. If they resist you, it's important to realize they are simply functioning as Threshold Guardians, testing you to see if you are really ready to change.

## SIGNALS OF NEW POWER

Successful heroes learn to recognize Threshold Guardians not as threatening enemies, but as useful Allies and early indicators that new power or success is coming. Threshold Guardians who appear to be attacking may in fact be doing the hero a huge favor.

Heroes also learn to recognize resistance as a source of strength. As in bodybuilding, the greater the resistance, the greater the strength. Rather than attacking the power of Threshold Guardians head-on, heroes learn to use it so it doesn't harm them. In fact it makes them stronger. The martial arts teach that an opponent's strength can be used against him. Ideally, Threshold Guardians are not to be defeated but incorporated (literally, taken into the body). Heroes learn the Guardians' tricks, absorb them, and go on. Ultimately, fully evolved heroes feel compassion for their apparent enemies and transcend rather than destroy them.

Heroes must learn to read the signals of their Threshold Guardians. In *The Power of Myth*, Joseph Campbell illustrated this idea beautifully with an example from Japan. Pensive-looking daimyo satons sometimes guard the entrances to Japanese temples. The first thing you notice is one hand held up like that of a policeman getting "Stop!" But when you look more closely, you see that the other hand moves



you to enter. The message is: Those who are put off by outward appearances cannot enter the Special World, but those who can see past surface impressions to the inner reality are welcome.



In stories, Threshold Guardians take on a fantastic array of forms. They may be hound guards, sentinels, night watchmen, lookouts, bodyguards, heralds, advisors, document keepers, entrance examiners, or anyone whose function is to temporarily block the way of the hero and test her powers. The energy of the Threshold Guardian may not be embodied in a character, but may be found in a prop, architectural feature, animal, or force of nature that blocks and tests the hero. Learning how to deal with Threshold Guardians is one of the major aims of the Hero's Journey.

# HERALD



*"If you build it, they will come"*

—*The Voice in Field of Dreams*, screenplay  
by Paul Allen Robinson from the novel  
*Shoeless Joe* by W.P. Kinsella.



Even a new force will appear in Act One to bring a challenge to the hero. This is the energy of the Herald archetype: like the heralds of medieval society, Herald characters issue challenges and announce the coming of significant change.

The heralds of knightlyhood were responsible for keeping track of lineages and coats of arms, and had an important role in identifying people and relationships in jousts, tournaments, and on great state occasions such as weddings. They were the protocol officers of their day. As the commencement of war, a herald might be called upon to name the cause of the conflict, in effect, to provide the motivation. In Shakespeare's *Henry V*, the Ambassadors from the Dauphin (crown prince) of France act as Herald when they bring the young English king an insulting gift of tennis balls, which implies King Henry is to be seeking but a frivolous game of tennis. The appearance of these Herald is the spark that sets off a war. Later the character of Messenger, the Dauphin's Herald, bears messages between King Henry and his enemy during the crucial battle of Agincourt.

Typically, at the opening phase of a story heroes have "gone by" somehow. They have fulfilled an imbalanced life through a series of defenses or coping mechanisms. Then all at once some new energy starts the story that makes it impossible

### Crusader Light

Can the hero no longer get by any longer. A new problem, condition, or information shifts the hero's balance, and nothing will ever be the same. A decision must be made, action taken, the conflict faced. A Call to Adventure has been delivered, often by a character who manifests the archetype of the Herald.

Heralds are so necessary in mythology that the Greek god Hermes (Roman Mercury) is devoted to expounding this function. Hermes appears everywhere as the messenger or Herald of the gods, performing some errand or bearing a message from Zeus. At the beginning of *The Odyssey*, Hermes, in Athena's disguise, bears a message from Zeus to the nymph Calypso that she must release Odysseus. The appearance of Hermes as Herald gets the story rolling.

### PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION: CALL FOR CHANGE

Heralds have the important psychological function of announcing the need for change. Something (a person, an idea, or a message) wakes us up, tells us who we are, and sends us a message. This may be a dream figure, a real person, or a new idea we encounter. In *Field of Dreams* it's the mysterious Voice that the hero hears saying, "If you build it, they will come." The Call might come from a book we read, or a movie we see. But something inside us has been struck like a bell, and the resulting vibrations spread out through our lives until change is inevitable.

### DRAMATIC FUNCTION: MOTIVATION

Heralds provide motivation, offer the hero a challenge, and get the story rolling. They alert the hero (and the audience) that change and adventure are coming.

An example of the Herald archetype as a messenger in movies can be found in Alfred Hitchcock's *Notorious*. Cary Grant plays a secret agent trying to entice Ingrid Bergman, the playful daughter of a Nazi spy, to a noble cause. He offers her both a challenge and an opportunity: She can overcome her bad reputation and the family shame by dedicating herself to Cary's noble cause. (The cause turns out to be not so noble here, but that's another story.)

Like most heroes, Bergman's character is fearful of change and reluctant to accept the challenge, but Grant, like a medieval retainer, reminds her of the past and gives her motivation to act. He plays her a recording of an argument she had with her father in which she renounced her spying and declared her loyalty to the United

Stress. Confronted by the evidence of her own patriotism, she accepts the call to adventure. She is motivated.

The Herald may be a person or a force. The coming of a storm or the first traces of the earth, as in *Elmer's* or *Leopold's*, may be the Herald of adventure. The crash of the stock market or the declaration of war have set many a story in motion.

Often the Herald is simply a means of bringing news to the hero of a new energy that will change the balance. It could be a telegram or a phone call. In *High Noon*, the Herald is a telegraph clerk who brings Gary Cooper word that his enemies are out of jail and headed for town to kill him. In *Remember the Name*, the Herald for Jean Wilder is a resource man that arrives in the mail, and a phone call from her sister, who is being held hostage in Colombia.

## TYPES OF HERALD

The Herald may be a positive, negative, or neutral figure. In some stories the Herald is the villain or his emissary, perhaps issuing a direct challenge to the hero, or trying to dup the hero into getting involved. In the theater *Amadeus*, the Herald is the private secretary of the villain who tries to lure the hero, a college professor of modest means into danger with a tempting offer of work. In some cases, a villainous Herald may announce the challenge not to the hero but to the audience. In the film the first appearance of Darth Vader, as he captures Professor Leia, positions to the audience that something is out of balance before the hero. Luke Skywalker has even appeared.

In other stories the Herald is an agent of the forces of good, calling the hero to a positive adventure. The Herald's mask may be worn (temporarily) by a character who mainly embodies some other archetype. A Mentor frequently acts as a Herald who issues a challenge to the hero. The Herald may be a hero's loved one or Ally, or someone neutral to the hero, such as a Trickster or Threshold Guardian.



The Herald archetype may come into play at almost any point in a story, but is most frequently employed in Act One to help bring the hero into the adventure. Whether it is an inner call, an external development, or a character bringing news of change, the energy of the Herald is needed in almost every story.

# SHAPESHIFTER



*"You can expect the unexpected"*

— publicity for the film *Cherub*



People often have trouble grasping the elusive archetype of the Shapeshifter, perhaps because its very nature is to be shifting and unstable. Its appearance and characteristics change as soon as you examine it closely. Nonetheless, the Shapeshifter is a powerful archetype and understanding its ways can be helpful in storytelling and in life.

Heroes frequently encounter figures, often of the opposite sex, whose primary characteristic is that they appear to change constantly from the hero's point of view. Often the hero's love interest or romantic partner will manifest the qualities of a Shapeshifter. We have all experienced relationships in which our partner is fickle, two-faced, or bewilderingly changeable. In *Jane Eyre* the hero is confounded with a Shapeshifting woman who changes from a passionate lover to an insane, murderous kooky.

Shapeshifters change appearance or mood, and are difficult for the hero and the audience to pin down. They may mislead the hero or keep her guessing, and their loyalty or sincerity is often in question. An ally or friend of the same sex as the hero may also act as a Shapeshifter in a badly timed or adventurous. Wizards, witches, and ogres are traditional Shapeshifters in the world of fairy tales.

## PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION

An important psychological purpose of the Shadowlike archetype is to express the energy of the *animus* and *anima*, terms from the psychology of Carl Jung. The *animus* is Jung's name for the male element in the female unconscious, the bundle of positive and negative images of masculinity in a woman's dreams and fantasies. The *anima* is the corresponding female element in the male unconscious. In this theory, people have a complete set of both male and female qualities, which are necessary for mental and internal balance.

Historically, the female characteristics in men and the male characteristics in women have been severely repressed by society. Men learn at an early age to show only the male, instrumental side of themselves. Women are taught by society to play down their masculine qualities. This can lead to emotional and even physical problems. Men are now working to regain some of their suppressed feminine qualities—creativity, intuition, and the ability to feel and express emotion. Women increasingly spend their adult lives trying to reclaim the male energies within them which society has discouraged, such as power and assertiveness.

These repressed qualities live within us and are manifested in dreams and fantasies as the *animus* or *anima*. They may take the form of dream characters such as opposite-sex teachers, family members, characters, gods or mortals who allow us to express this unconscious but powerful force within. An encounter with the *animus* or *anima* in dreams or fantasy is considered an important step in psychological growth.

## PROJECTION

We may also confront the *animus* and *anima* in reality. By nature we look for people who match our internal image of the opposite sex. Often we imagine the resemblance and project onto some unsuspecting person our desire to join with the *anima* or *animus*. We may fall into relationships in which we have not seen the partner clearly. Instead we have seen the *anima* or *animus*, our own internal notion of the ideal partner, projected onto the other person. We often go through relationships trying to force the partner to match our projection. Hitchcock created a powerful expression of this phenomenon in *Stage Fright*. James Stewart forces Kim Novak to change her hair and clothing to match the image of his feminine ideal, Carole, a woman who literally never existed in the first place.

It's natural for each sex to regard the other as ever-changing, mysterious. Many of us don't understand our own sexuality and psychology very well, let alone that of the opposite sex. Often our main experience of the opposite sex is their changeability and their tendency to shift attitudes, appearances, and emotions for no apparent reason.

Women complain that men are vague, vacillating, and unable to commit. Men complain that women are moody, fidgety, fickle, and unpredictable. Anger can turn gentle-moisture-based. Women change dramatically during their monthly cycle, shifting with the phases of the moon. During pregnancy they dramatically shift shape and mood. At some time most of us have been perceived by others as "two-faced" Shapeshifters.

The animus and anima may be positive or negative figures who may be helpful or the hero or destructive to him. In some stories it's the task of the hero to figure out which side, positive or negative, he is dealing with.

The Shapeshifter archetype is also a catalyst for change, a symbol of the prototypical urge to transform. Dealing with a Shapeshifter may cause the hero to change attitudes about the opposite sex or come to terms with the repressed energies that this archetype brings up.

These projections of our hidden opposite sides, these images and ideas about sexuality and relationships, form the archetype of the Shapeshifter.

## DRAMATIC FUNCTION

The Shapeshifter serves the dramatic function of bringing doubt and suspense into a story. When heroes keep asking, "Is he faithful to me? Is she going to betray me? Does he truly love me? Is he an ally or an enemy?" a Shapeshifter is generally present.

Shapeshifters appear with great frequency and variety in the film noir and thriller genres. *The Big Sleep*, *The Maltese Falcon*, and *Chinatown* feature detectives confronting Shapeshifting women whose loyalty and motives are in doubt. In other stories such as Hitchcock's *Suspicion* or *Jacob & Charles*, a good woman must figure out if a Shapeshifting man is worthy of her trust.

A common type of Shapeshifter is called the femme fatale, the woman as temptress or conwoman. The idea is as old as the Bible, with its stories of Eve in the

Garden of Eden, the seducing Jewel, and Delilah cutting off Samson's hair as a token of his strength. The femme fatale finds expression today in stories of cops and detectives betrayed by killer women, such as Sharon Stone's character in *Basic Instinct* or Kathleen Turner's in *Body Heat*. *Black Widow* and *Sugar White* feature an interesting variant in which a female hero confronts a deadly, Shapeshifting femme fatale.

The Shapeshifter, like the other archetypes, can be manifested by male or female characters. There are as many *Hommes Fatales* in myth, literature, and movies as there are femmes. In Greek mythology, Zeus was a great Shapeshifter, changing forms to consort with human maidens who usually ended up suffering for it. *Looking for Mr. Goodbar* is about a woman seeking a perfect lover, but finding instead a Shapeshifting man who brings her death. The film *Le Dancer* depicts a good woman (Lorena Young) who is about to marry a monotone Shapeshifter, a *Joan* Nan played by Owen Wilson.

The truth aspect is not always essential to this archetype. Shapeshifting may only disguise and confuse the hero, rather than try to kill her. Shapeshifting is a natural part of romance. It's common to be blinded by love, unable to see the other person clearly through the many masks they wear. The character played by Michael Douglas in *Armoury de Rome* appears to be a Shapeshifter to Jane Kathleen Turner, who is kept guessing until the last moment about the loyalty of her male counterpart.

Shapeshifting may manifest as changes of appearance. In many films a woman's change of costume or hairstyle indicates that her identity is shifting and her loyalty is in doubt. This archetype may also be expressed through changes in behavior or speech, such as assuming different voices or telling a succession of lies. In the earlier analogue, Shapeshifter Sophia Loren tells unwilling hero Gregory Peck a bewildering series of stories about her background, all of which turn out to be untrue. Many heroes have needed to deal with Shapeshifters, male and female, who assume disguises and tell lies to confuse them.

A famous Shapeshifter from *The Odyssey* is the sea god Proteus, "the Old Man of the Sea." Mermaids, one of the heroes returning from the Trojan War, trap Proteus to force information out of him. Proteus changes into a lion, a snake, a panther, a bear, running water, and a raven in his attempt to escape. But Menelaus and his men hold on tight until Proteus returns to his true form and yields up the answers to their questions. The story teaches that if heroes are patient with Shapeshifters the truth may eventually come out. "Proteus," an adjective meaning "readily taking many forms," comes from the story of Proteus.



## MASK OF THE SHAPESHIFTER

As with the other archetypes, Shapeshifting is a function or a mask that may be worn by any character in a story. A hero may wear the mask in a romantic situation. Richard Gere, in *An Officer and a Gentleman*, puts on airs and tells a handful of lies to impress Debra Winger. He temporarily acts as a Shapeshifter although he is the hero of the piece.

Sometimes a hero must become a Shapeshifter to escape a trap or get past a Threshold Guardian. In *Law & Order: Witness* Goldberg's character, a Las Vegas lounge singer, disguises herself as a Catholic nun to keep from being killed as a witness to a mob murder.

Villains or their allies may wear the Shapeshifter mask to seduce or confuse a hero. The wicked queen in *Snow White* assumes the form of an old crone to trick the hero into eating a poisoned apple.

Shapeshifting is also a natural attribute of other archetypes such as Mentors and Tricksters. Merlin, Mentor of the King Arthur series, frequently changes shape to aid Arthur's quest. The goddess Athena in *The Odyssey* assumes the appearance of many different humans to help Odysseus and his son.

Shapeshifters can also be found in so-called "twinny stories" in which the story centers on two male or two female characters who share the role of hero. Often one is more conventionally heroic and easier for the audience to identify with. The second character, while of the same sex as the main hero, will often be a Shapeshifter, whose loyalty and true nature are always in question. In the comedy *The 400 Blows*, the "straight" hero, Alan Arkin, is nearly driven crazy by the Shapeshifting of his twinny, Peter Falk, a CIA agent.



The Shapeshifter is one of the most flexible archetypes and serves a particular variety of functions in modern stories. It's found most often in male-female relationships, but it may also be useful in other situations to portray characters whose appearance or behavior changes to meet the needs of the story.

# SHADOW



*"The sun's kept a good nature down?"*

— publicity for *God of Freckles*



The archetype known as the Shadow represents the energy of the dark side, the unexpressed, unrealized, or rejected aspects of something. Often it's the home of the suppressed moieties of our inner world. Shadows can be all the things we don't like about ourselves, all the dark secrets we can't admit, even to ourselves. The qualities we have renounced and tried to root out will lurk within, operating in the Shadow world of the unconscious. The Shadow can also shelter positive qualities that are in hiding or that we have rejected for some reason.

The negative face of the Shadow in stories is projected onto characters called villains, antagonists, or enemies. Villains and enemies are usually dedicated to the death, destruction, or defeat of the hero. Antagonists may not be quite so hostile — they may be Allies who are after the same goal but who disagree with the hero's tactics. Antagonists and heroes in conflict are like horses in a team pulling in different directions, while villains and heroes in conflict are like trains on a head-on collision course.

## PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION

The Shadow can represent the power of repressed feelings. Deep trauma or guilt can drive what's called to the darkness of the unconscious, and emotions hidden or

defined can turn into something monstrous that wants to destroy us. If the Threshold Guardian represents neuroses, then the Shadow archetype stands for psychoses that not only hamper us, but threaten to destroy us. The Shadow may simply be that shady part of ourselves that we are always wrestling within, struggles over bad habits and old fears. This energy can be a powerful internal force with a life of its own and its own set of interests and priorities. It can be a destructive force, especially if not acknowledged, confronted, and brought to light.

Thus in dreams, Shadows may appear as recurrents, demons, devils, evil spirits, vampires, or other fearsome enemies. Note that many Shadow figures are also Doppelgängers, such as vampires and werewolves.

### DRAMATIC FUNCTION

The function of the Shadow in drama is to challenge the hero and give her a worthy opponent in the struggle. Shadows create conflict and bring out the best in a hero by putting her in a life-threatening situation. It's often been said that a story is only as good as its villain, because a strong enemy forces a hero to rise to the challenge.

The challenging energy of the Shadow archetype can be expressed in a single character, but it may also be a mask worn at different times by any of the characters. Heroes themselves can manifest a Shadow side. When the protagonist is crippled by doubts or guilt, acts in self-destructive ways, expresses a death wish, gets carried away with his success, abuses his power, or becomes selfish rather than self-sacrificing, the Shadow has overtaken him.

### MASK OF THE SHADOW

The Shadow can combine in powerful ways with other archetypes. Like the other archetypes, the Shadow is a function or mask which can be worn by any character. The primary Mentor of a story may wear the Shadow mask at times. In *An Officer and a Gentleman* the drill sergeant played by Louis Gossett, Jr. wears the masks of both Mentor and Shadow. He is Richard Gere's Mentor and second father, guiding him through the rigorous Navy training. But in terms of the life-and-death issues of the story, Gossett is also a Shadow who is trying to destroy Gere by driving him out of the program. He tests the young man to the limit to find out if he has what it takes, and almost kills him in the process of bringing out the best in him.

Another strong combination of archetypes is found in the fatal Superhero figure discussed earlier. In some stories, the person who starts out as the hero's best friend shifts shape so far that she becomes the Shadow, bent on the hero's destruction. *Prometheus* leads an elite called "death ladies." This might represent a struggle between a person's male and female sides, or atonement with the opposite sex turned into a psychotic state of mind. Owen Weller created a classic story on this theme in *The Lady from Shanghai*, in which Rita Hayworth dupes Weller's character, shifts shape, and tries to destroy him.

A Shadow may also wear the mask of other archetypes. Anthony Hopkins' "Himmler" in the *Good* character from *The Silence of the Lambs* is primarily a Shadow, a projection of the dark side of human nature, but he also functions as a helpful Mentor to Judge Foster's FBI agent, providing her with information that helps her catch another insane killer.

Shadows may become seductive Superheroes to lure the hero into danger. They may function as Tricksters or Heretics, and may even combine heroic qualities. Villains who fight bravely for their cause or experience a change of heart may even be redeemed and become heroes themselves, like the Beast in *Beauty and the Beast*.

## HUMANIZING THE SHADOW

Shadows need not be totally evil or wicked. In fact, it's better if they are humanized by a touch of goodness, or by some admirable quality. The Disney animated cartoons are memorable for their villains, such as Captain Hook in *Peter Pan*, the demon in *Beauty*, the beautiful but wicked queen Evie in *Snow White*, the glamorous fairy Maleficent in *The Sleeping Beauty*, and Cruella D'Evil in *One Hundred and One Dalmatians*. They are even more deliciously sinister because of their dashing, powerful, beautiful, or elegant qualities.

Shadows can also be humanized by making them vulnerable. The novelist Graham Greene masterfully makes his villains real, real people. He often has the hero on the verge of killing a villain, only to discover the poor fellow has a head cold or is reading a letter from his little daughter. Suddenly the villain is not just a fly to be swatted but a real human being with weaknesses and emotions. Killing such a figure becomes a true moral choice rather than a thoughtless reflex.

It's important to remember in designing stories that most Shadow figures do not think of themselves as villains or enemies. From his point of view, a villain is the hero of his own myth, and the audience's hero is his villain. A dangerous type of villain is "the right man," the person so convinced his cause is just that he will stop at nothing to achieve it. Beware the man who believes the end justifies the means. Hitler's sincere belief that he was right, even heroic, allowed him to order the most villainous atrocities to achieve his aims.

A Shadow may be a character or force central to the hero, or it may be a deeply repressed part of the hero. Dr. Hill and Mr. Hyde readily depicts the power of the dark side in a good man's personality.

Several Shadows must be vanquished or destroyed by the hero. Shadows of the internal kind may be disempowered like vampires, simply by bringing them out of the shadows and into the light of consciousness. Some Shadows may even be reclaimed and turned into positive forces. One of the most impressive Shadow figures in movie history, Darth Vader of the *Star Wars* series, is revealed in *Return of the Jedi* to be the hero's father. All his wickedness is finally forgiven, making him a benign, glacial figure, watching over his son. The Terminator also grows from being a killing machine bent on destroying the heroes in *The Terminator* to being a protective Mentor to the heroes in *Terminator 2: Judgment Day*.

Like the other archetypes, Shadows can express positive as well as negative aspects. The Shadow in a person's psyche may be anything that has been suppressed, undervalued, or forgotten. The Shadow studies the healthy, natural feelings we believe we're not supposed to show. But healthy anger or grief, if suppressed in the activity of the Shadow, can turn to harmful energy that strikes out and undermines us in unexpected ways. The Shadow may also be unemployed potential, such as affection, creativity, or psychic ability, that goes unexpressed. "The roads not taken," the possibilities of life that we eliminate by making choices at various stages, may collect in the Shadow, lying there until brought into the light of consciousness.



The psychological concept of the Shadow archetype is a useful metaphor for understanding villains and antagonists in our stories, as well as for grasping the unexpressed, ignored, or deeply hidden aspects of our heroes.

# ALLY



*From just desire and first beginning,  
That is the unalterable end,  
There's nothing worth the wear of wearing  
But laughter and the love of friends!*

— From "Dedictory Ode" by William Belloc



Heroes on their journeys may need someone to travel with them, an Ally who can serve a variety of necessary functions, such as companions, sparring partners, confidants, or comic relief. It's useful to have someone to send on errands, to carry messages, to warn humans. It's convenient to have someone for the hero to talk to, to bring out human feelings or reveal important questions in the plot. Allies do many mundane tasks but also serve the important function of humanizing the heroes, adding extra dimensions to their personalities, or challenging them to be more open and balanced.

From the dawn of storytelling, heroes have been paired with friendly figures who fight at their sides, advise and warn them, and sometimes challenge them. In one of the first great stories ever recorded, the tale of Gilgamesh, the Babylonian hero-king is linked by the gods with a mighty wild man of the forest, Enkidu, who at first mistakes and oppresses him, but soon wins his respect and becomes his trusted Ally. Hercules had a valuable ally in his chariot driver, an Olympic champion who cauterized the necks of the Hydra to keep the heads from growing back after Hercules knocked them off with his club.

## MULTIPLE ALLIES

Heroes on great epic journeys may acquire whole ship-loads of Allies, building up a team of adventures, each with his or her different skill. Odysseus has his shipmates and Jason has his Argonauts. In the British Isles, King Arthur, beginning with his former boobyer Sir Kay, attracts a small army of Allies, the Knights of the Round Table. In France, Charlemagne gathers a similar band of Ally knights from all the nations of his realm who become known as his Paladins. Dorothy picks up a series of Allies on her quest, starting with her animal Ally Toto.

## GREAT ALLIES IN LITERATURE

Some great stories have been woven from the relationship between a hero and an Ally. Don Quixote and his reluctant squire Sancho Panza learn one another well, representing two extremes of society and very different ways of viewing the world. Shakespeare often employs Allies like Lear's Fool or Prince Hal's vicious companion Falstaff to explore his heroes more deeply, providing the heroes with comic foils or challenging them to look more deeply into their own souls. Sherlock Holmes and Dr Watson are another example, where the amazing intellect of Holmes is softened for the reader through the admiring eyes of his Ally, Watson, narrator of the tales.

## INTRODUCTION TO THE SPECIAL WORLD

Dr. Watson illustrates a useful function for Allies of introducing us to an unfamiliar world. Like Watson, they can ask the questions we would be asking. When the hero is right-typed or when it would be awkward and unrealistic for him or her to explain things that are second nature to the hero but very exotic to us, an Ally can do the work of explaining everything as needed. The Ally is sometimes an "audience character," someone who sees the Special World of the story with fresh eyes as we would do if we were there.

Novelist Patrick O'Brian employed this device in his long series of books about the British Navy in the Napoleonic War. His hero, Jack Aubrey, is similar to heroes of other sea-faring books like C. S. Forester's *Horns* or *Horatio*, but O'Brian's books are distinguished by the introduction of a strong, life-long Ally for the dashing sea captain, in the character of Stephen Maturin, a doctor, naturalist, and secret

agent who remains a stranger to the ways of the non-creative dividers of sailing with his friend. Quinn provides much comedy with Stephen's lame attempts to understand the jargon of the sailor but also gives a good reason for the exaggerated Jack to explain details of tactics and sailing that we, the readers, want to know about.

## WESTERN ALLIES: SIDKICKS

In the rich tradition of Hollywood Western movie serials and TV shows, the Ally is called a "sidekick," a term from early nineteenth-century pickpocket's slang for a side pants pocket. In other words, a sidekick is someone you keep as close to you as your side pants. Every TV Western hero had to have his Ally: from the Lone Ranger's "faithful Indian companion" Tonto or Wild Bill Hickock's "comical sidekick" Jingles, played by character actor Andy Devine, who also filled the Ally's role in many Western movies going back to *Jughead The Cow Kid* had his comic side partner Zerk. Zerk had his ideas but very useful, exemplify Bertie's. With a human played a gallery of sidekicks, mostly supporting John Wayne in *Red River*. There he goes beyond the usual sides of Ally as provider of comic relief and assistance for the hero to talk to. He also serves as a conscience, muttering every time John Wayne's character makes a moral error and reminding when Wayne's surrogate son finally stands up to him.

The relationship with the Ally can be quite complex, sometimes becoming dramatic material in its own right. A sort story of story has been written and filmed about self-righteous Western lawman Wyatt Earp and his candy, demonic, wicked, but very dangerous Ally Doc Holliday. In some versions of the tale, like director John Sturges' thrilling *Gunfight at O.K. Corral*, the two men are nearly equally matched and while joining together to fight the external threat of the Clanton gang, they are also two horns of a great dilemma in American culture, between the rigid moral universe of the Puritans, represented by law-abiding Wyatt Earp, and the white rebel side represented by Holliday, a gambler from the old South.

## NON-HUMAN ALLIES

Allies need not be human. In some religions of the world, each person is assigned a spirit guardian, a lifelong sidekick or Ally. This may be an angel, the guardian angel who is supposed to look out for the person and keep them on the right path, or a mischievous spirit of some kind. The Egyptians taught that Khnum, the ram-headed



### Christie Light

builder god, fashioned each person out of clay on his potter's wheel and at the same time made a "ka" or spirit protector in the exact same shape. The ka accompanied each person throughout life and on into the afterlife as long as the person's body was preserved. Its job was to encourage the person to lead a good and useful life.

The Romans also believed that every man had a guardian spirit or *Ally*, his "genius," and that every woman had a "juno." Originally these were ghosts of the family's distinguished ancestors, but later came to be personal guardian deities. Each person made offerings to the genius or juno on his or her birthday, in return for guidance and protection or a little extra human power. Not only individuals but also families, households, the Senate, cities, provinces, and even empires could have such protective supernatural Allies.

The play and comic *Grease* show a man who relies on an imaginary friend, a kind of psychic Ally who helps him cope with reality. Woody Allen's character in *Play It Again, Sam* compares up the spirit of Humphrey Bogart's movie persona to guide him through the subtleties of love. In *A Wonderful Life* depicts a desperate man being helped by an angel Ally.

### ANIMAL ALLIES

Animals as Allies are common in the history of storytelling. Goddesses especially are accompanied by animal Allies, like Athena and her companion owl, or Artemis and the deer who is often seen running at her side. The jester of European folklore, Till Eulenspiegel, was always surrounded with two symbols, an owl and a mirror. His name "Eulenspiegel" means "Owl-Mirror" and suggests that he is wise as an owl and that he holds up a mirror to the hypocrisy of society. The owl became Till's schismatic Ally in the animated film *Till Eulenspiegel*. The heroes of Westerns are often supported by animal Allies like Roy Rogers' doggie named Trigger and dog Bullie.

### ALLIES FROM BEYOND THE GRAVE

Ancient folktales tell of Allies even among the dead. The name for the land "The Central Dead" had its origin in a folktale term for the dead who give aid to living people in gratitude for doing something to set their souls at rest, such as paying a debt or give them decent burial. *The Hanged Ghost* is the title of a strange novel by Sheila Rosalind Allen in which a ghost sorts out traumatic matters in an old house.

## HELPFUL SERVANTS

Another folklike Ally motif is the "helpful servant," a stock character in tales of romance who helps the hero achieve his or her goal by carrying love letters and messages or providing disguises, hideaways, escape routes, and alibis. D'Astagnac's long-suffering valet Planchet is one of the helpful servants in *The Iron Mistress* and Dudley Moore's butler, played by starlet John Gielgud, performs the role in *Arise, Babylon!* Butler Alfred serves many roles and it should be noted that the Ally function can easily overlap with that of the Mentor, as Alfred occasionally steps up to the higher function of guiding the hero in spiritual or emotional matters.

## PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION

The Ally in dreams and fiction might represent the unexpressed or unmet parts of the personality that must be brought into action to do their jobs. In dreams, Allies remind us of these under-ordered parts and bring to mind actual friends or relationships that may be helpful to us in the process of our lives. Allies may represent powerful internal forces that can come to our aid in a spiritual crisis.

## MODERN ALLIES

Allies thrive in the modern world of storytelling. Allies in fiction suggest alternative paths for problem-solving and help to round out the personalities of heroes, allowing expression of fear, humor, or ignorance that might not be appropriate for the hero. James Bond relies on his loyal Ally Miss Moneypenny and occasionally needs the help of his American Ally, CIA man Felix Leiter. Comic book writers, aiming to expand the appeal of their stories to younger readers, will often add young Allies for their superheroes, like Batman's ward Robin. Spider-Man, the young lion hero of *The Iron King*, has his criminal Ally Tigger and Puddin'. One vision of the future is provided by the *Star Wars* universe where machines, animals, alien beings, and spirits of the dead all can serve as Allies. Increasingly, computers, intelligences, and robots will be seen as natural Allies as we move on to new frontiers into space and other-realm worlds.

# TRICKSTER

70

*"The world is mine and he is I!"*

— Cluffy Duck



The Trickster archetype combines the energies of mischief and desire for change. All the characters in stories who are primarily clever or cynical tricksters express this archetype. The specialized form called the Trickster Hero is the leading figure in many myths and is very popular in folktales and fairy tales.

## PSYCHOLOGICAL FUNCTION

Tricksters serve several important psychological functions. They can bring gods down to earth, and bring heroes and audiences down to earth. By provoking healthy laughter they help us realize our common bonds, and they point out folly and hypocrisy. Almost all they bring about healthy change and transformation, often by drawing attention to the imbalance or absurdity of a stagnant psychological situation. They are the natural enemies of the status quo. Trickster energy can express itself through impish accidents or slips of the tongue that alert us to the need for change. When we are taking ourselves too seriously, the Trickster part of our personalities may pop up to bring back needed perspective.

## DRAMATIC FUNCTION: COMIC RELIEF

In drama, Tricksters serve all three psychological functions, plus the dramatic function of comic relief. Unresolved tension, suspense, and conflict can be emotionally exhausting, and in even the heaviest drama an audience's interest is revived by moments of laughter. An old rule of drama points out the need for humor: *Make 'em cry a lot; let 'em laugh a little.*

Tricksters may be servants or Allies working for the hero or Shadow as they may be independent agents with their own skewed agendas.

The Tricksters of mythology provide many examples of the workings of this archetype. One of the most colorful is Loki, the Norse god of mischief and deceit. A true Trickster, he serves the other gods as legal minister and advisor, but also plots their destruction, undermining the status quo. He is fiery in nature, and his daring, clever energy helps heat up the pent-up frozen energy of the gods, moving them to action and change. He also provides much-needed comic relief in the generally dark Norse myths.

Loki is sometimes a comical sidekick character as occurs featuring the gods Odin or Thor as heroes. In other modes he is a hero of sorts, a Trickster Hero who serves by his wits against physically stronger gods or giants. At last he turns into a deadly adversary or Shadow, leading the hosts of the dead in a final war against the gods.

## TRICKSTER HEROES

Trickster Heroes have lived like rabbits in the folktales and fairy tales of the world. Indeed, some of the most popular Tricksters are rabbit heroes: the Blue Rabbit of the American South, the Hare of African tales, the many rabbit heroes from Southeast Asia, Persia, India, etc. These stories pit the defenseless but quick-thinking rabbit against much larger and more dangerous enemies—folklore Shadow figures like wolves, humans, tigers, and bears. Somehow the tiny rabbit always manages to outwit his hungry opponent, who usually suffers painfully from dealing with a Trickster Hare.

The modern version of the rabbit Trickster is of course Bugs Bunny. The Warner Brothers animators made use of folktale plots to pit Bugs against hunters and predators who didn't stand a chance against his quick wits. Other cartoon Tricksters of this type include Warner's Daffy Duck, Speedy Gonzales, the Roadrunner, and Tweety Bird. Walter Lantz's Woody Woodpecker and Chilly Willy (the penguin) and

McM's ubiquitous dog Litoupy, who always outwits the belabored Wolf. Mickey Mouse started as an actual animal Trickster, although he has mutated into a whole range of cunning and cunning specimens.

Native Americans have a particular fondness for Tricksters such as Coyote and Raven. The down-Kachina gods of the Southwest are Tricksters of great power as well as comic ability.

Once in a while it's fun to turn the tables and show that Tricksters themselves can be outwitted. Sometimes a Trickster like the Hare will try to take advantage of a weaker, slower animal like Mr. Tortoise. In folktales and fables such as "The Tortoise and the Hare," the slower creature the fastest by dogged persistence or by cooperating with others of its kind to outwit the faster animal.

Troscartes like to stir up trouble for its own sake. Joseph Campbell relates a Nigerian story in which the Trickster god Eshu walks down a road in a hat that's red on one side and blue on the other. When people comment, "Who was that going by in a red hat?" they get into fights with people on the other side of the road who insist the hat was blue. The god takes credit for the trouble, saying, "Opposing strife is my greatest joy."

Troscartes are often catalyst characters, who affect the lives of others but are unchanged themselves. Eddie Murphy as *Reefer* with Coy displays Trickster energy as he stirs up the smearing system without changing much himself.

The heroes of comedy, from Charlie Chaplin to the Marx Brothers to the cast of "In Living Color," are Tricksters who subvert the status quo and make us laugh at ourselves. Heroes of other genres may often put on the Trickster mask in order to occur a shadow or get around a Threshold Guardian.



The archetypes are an infinitely flexible language of character. They offer a way to understand what function a character is performing at a given moment in a story. Awareness of the archetypes can help to free writers from stereotyping, by giving their characters greater psychological story and depth. The archetypes can be used to make characters who are both unique individuals and universal symbols of the qualities that form a complete human being. They can help make our characters and stories psychologically realistic and true to the ancient wisdom of myth.

Now that we've met the denizens of the story world, let's return to the Road of Names for a closer look at the twelve stages and how the archetypes play their parts in the Hero's journey:

# STAGE ONE: THE ORDINARY WORLD

---

*"A beginning is a very delicate time."*

— from *Dans*, screenplay by David Lynch,  
based on the novel by Frank Herbert



In *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*, Joseph Campbell describes the beginning of the typical hero's journey: "A hero ventures forth from the world of common day into a region of supernatural wonder." In this chapter, we'll explore that "world of common day," the Ordinary World, and see how it frames the hero and sets modern-day stories in motion.

The opening of any story, be it myth, fairy tale, screenplay, novel, short story, or comic book, has some special borders to bear. It must hook the reader or viewer, set the tone of the story, suggest where it's going, and get across a mass of information without slowing the pace. A beginning is, indeed, a delicate time.

## A GUIDE TO THE JOURNEY

As a guide through the labyrinth of story, let's imagine ourselves as a tribe of people who live by hunting and gathering, or our ancestors did a hundred thousand years ago, or as people will do in remote parts of the world today. We'll cloak us with these Seekers at each stage of the hero's journey, and try to put ourselves in their skins.

*Complete Cycle*

*Look around, many tribes of the Plains Tribe. You are on the night air-beds jostling by, surviving on a dwindling supply of hot water? Good. Times are bad and the country all around turns white. The people grow weak before our eyes, but a few of us are filled with restless energy.*

*Like you. You're uncomfortable, feeling you no longer fit in with the slow, exhausted pace. You may not know it, but you've come to be selected as a hero, to join the select company of the Seekers, those who have always gone out to face the unknown. You'll undertake a journey to restore life and health to the entire Plains Tribe, an adventure in which the only sure thing is that you'll be changed. You're weary, but there's a thrill running through you. You're poised to break free from this world, ready to enter the world of adventure.*

**BEFORE THE BEGINNING**

Before a story even begins, a screenplay face-creation chooses. What's the first thing your audience will experience? The title? The first line of dialogue? The first image? Where in the lives of your characters will the story actually begin? Do you need a prologue or introduction, or should you jump right into the middle of the action? The opening minutes are a powerful opportunity to set the tone and create an impression. You can conjure up a mood, an image, or a metaphor that will give the audience a frame of reference to better appreciate your work. The mythological approach to story boils down to using metaphors or comparisons to get across your feelings about life.

The great German stage and film director Max Reinhardt believed that you can create an atmosphere in a theatre well before an audience sits down or the curtain goes up. A carefully selected title can strike a metaphor that intrigues the audience and invites them to the coming experience. Clever promotions can engage them with images and slogans that are metaphors for the world of your story. By controlling music and lighting in the audience enters the space, and continuously directing such details as the attitudes and costumes of the actors, a specific mood can be created. The audience can be put in the ideal frame of mind for the experience they will share, prepared for comedy, romance, horror, drama, or whatever (fill in your wish list) results.

Old storytellers begin their tales with ritualized phrases ("Once upon a time") and personalized gestures to get the attention of the audience. These signals can cue the listeners to the funny, sad, or ironic mood of the story they will hear.



Today many elements go into making those first impressions before the hook or the movie ticket is bought; the title, the book cover art, publicity and advertising, posters and trailers, and so forth. The story is cooked down to a few symbols or metaphors that begin to put the audience in the right mood for the journey.

#### TITLE:

A title is an important clue to the nature of the story and the writer's attitude. A good title can become a multi-layered metaphor for the condition of the hero in his world. The title of *The Godfather*, for example, suggests that Don Corleone is both god and father to his people. The graphic design of the logo for the novel and movie lay out another metaphor, the hand of a puppeteer working the strings of an unseen marionette. Is Don Corleone the puppeteer, or is he the puppet of a higher force? Are we all puppets of God, or do we have free will? The metaphorical title and imagery allow many interpretations and help to make the story a coherent design.

#### OPENING IMAGE

The opening image can be a powerful tool to create mood and suggest where the story will go. It can be a visual metaphor that, in a single shot or scene, conjures up the *Special World of Art Two* and the conflicts and challenges that will be confronted there. It can suggest the theme, directing the audience to the issues and challenges will face. The opening shot of Clint Eastwood's *Hombre* shows a man outside a farmhouse, digging a grave for his wife who has just died. His relationship with his wife and the way she changed him are major themes in the story. The image of a man digging a grave outside his house can be read as an apt metaphor for the plot. The hero leaves home and journeys to the land of death, where he witnesses death, raises death, and almost dies himself. Eastwood the director returns to the same scene at the end of the film, using the image to give a sense of closure as we see the man leave the grave and return to his home.

#### PROLOGUE

Some stories begin with a prologue scene that provides the main body of the story, perhaps before the introduction of the main characters and their world. The fairy tale of "Rapunzel" begins with a scene before the birth of the hero, and *Henry's Beauty*

and the hour begins with a prologue illustrated in stained glass, giving the backstory of the Bear's enchantment. Myths take place within a context of mythical history that goes back to the Creation, and events leading up to the entrance of the main character may have to be portmanteau first. Shakespeare and the Greeks often gave their plays a prologue, spoken by a narrator or a chorus, to set the tone and give the context of the drama. Shakespeare's *Henry 5* begins with an eloquent passage, incited by a Chorus character who invites us to use our "imaginary forces" to create the kings, homes, and armies of his story. "Admit me Chorus to this history," he requests. "What prologue-like, your humble penny pray, / Gently so bear, kindly so judge, / our play."

A prologue can serve several useful functions. It may give an essential piece of backstory, cue the audience to what kind of movie or story this is going to be, or start the story with a bang and let the audience settle into their seats. In *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*, a prologue shows the discovery of a mysterious squadron of World War II airplanes, perfectly preserved in the desert. This precedes the introduction of the hero, Roy Neary, and his world. It serves to intrigue the audience with a hint of riddles, and gives a foretaste of the puzzles and wonders ahead.

In *The Godfather*, Sonny's prologue shows a pro football player going forward and shoving his teammates under the pretense of drugs and gambling. The sequence provides the first appearance of the hero and intrigues or "hooks" the audience. It signals that this is going to be an exciting action story involving life-and-death matters.

This prologue and the one in *Close Encounters* are a little disorienting. They hint that these movies are going to be about extraordinary events that may strain credibility. In secret societies, an old rule of initiation is: Disorientation leads to suggestibility. That's why initiates are often blindfolded and led around in the dark, so they will be more psychologically open to suggestion from the rituals staged by the group. In storytelling, getting the audience a little off-balance and upsetting their normal perceptions can put them into a receptive mood. They begin to suspend their disbelief and enter more readily into a Special World of fantasy.

Some prologues introduce the villain or threat of the story before the hero appears. In *Sun Heat*, the evil Darth Vader is shown kidnapping Princess Leia before the hero, Luke Skywalker, is introduced in his mundane world. Some detective films begin with a murder before the hero is introduced in his office. Such prologues cue the audience that the balance of a society has been disturbed. A chain of events is set in motion, and the forward drive of the story cannot mass until the wrong has been righted and the balance restored.

A prodigue is not necessary or desirable in every case. The needs of the story will always dictate the best approach to structure. You may want to begin, as many writers do, by introducing the hero in his normal environment, the "Ordinary World."

## THE ORDINARY WORLD

Because so many stories are journeys that take heroes and audiences to Special Worlds, most begin by establishing an Ordinary World as a baseline for comparison. The Special World of the story is only special if we can see it in contrast to a mundane world of everyday affairs from which the hero issues forth. The Ordinary World is the context, home base, and background of the hero.

The Ordinary World in one sense is the place you came from last. In life, we pass through a succession of Special Worlds which slowly become ordinary as we get used to them. They evolve from strange, foreign territory to familiar haunts from which to launch a drive into the next Special World.

## CONTRAST

It's a good idea for writers to make the Ordinary World as different as possible from the Special World, so audience and fans will experience a dramatic change when the threshold is finally crossed. In *The Wizard of Oz*, the Ordinary World is depicted in black and white, to make a striking contrast with the Technicolor Special World of Oz. In the thriller *Dead Again*, the Ordinary World of modern day is shot in color to contrast with the nightmarish black-and-white Special World of the 1940s flashbacks. *City Men* contrasts the dark, masculine environment of the city with the more feminine of the West where most of the story takes place.

Compared to the Special World, the Ordinary World may seem boring and calm, but the seeds of excitement and challenge can usually be found there. The hero's problems and conflicts are already present in the Ordinary World, waiting to be activated.

## FORESHADOWING: A MODEL OF THE SPECIAL WORLD

Writers often use the Ordinary World section to create a small model of the Special World, foreshadowing its hazards and moral dilemmas. In *The Wizard of Oz*, Dorothy clashes with catty Miss Gulch and is rescued from danger by three farmhands.

## Georgette Eyle

These early scenes foreshadow Dorothy's battles with the Witch and her rescue by the Tin Woodman, Cowardly Lion, and Scarecrow.

*Lowering the Iron* begins with a clever, unobtrusive technique. The first thing the audience sees is an elaborate fantasy of a noble heroine battling a very villainous and finally siding off to romance with a comically isolated hero. The scene is a model of the Special World that Wilets will encounter in the second act. The fantasy is revealed to be the conclusion of Joan Wilets's romance novel, which she is writing in her apartment New York apartment. The opening fantasy sequence serves a dual purpose. It tells us a great deal about Joan Wilets and her compulsive notions of romance, and also predicts the problems and situations she will face in the Special World of Oz. This is where she encounters real villains and a hero that isn't ideal. *Lowering the Iron* can help write a story into a rhythm or poetic design.

## RAISING THE DRAMATIC QUESTION

Another important function of the Ordinary World is to suggest the dramatic question of the story. Every good story poses a series of questions about the hero. Will she achieve the goal, overcome her flaw, learn the lesson she needs to learn? Some questions relate primarily to the action or plot. Will Dorothy get home from Oz? Will E.T. get home to his planet? Will the hero get the gold, win the game, lose the villain?

Other questions are dramatic and have to do with the hero's emotions and personality. Will Donk Swartz's character in *Glue* learn to express love in *Pretty Women*, will the upright businessman Edward learn from the prostitute Vivian how to relax and enjoy life? The action questions may propel the plot, but the dramatic questions hook the audience and involve them with the emotions of the characters.

## INNER AND OUTER PROBLEMS

Every hero needs both an inner and an outer problem. In developing fairy tales for Disney Feature Animation, we often find that writers can give the heroes a good outer problem. Can the princess manage to make an enchantment on her father who has been turned to stone? Can the hero get to the top of a glass mountain and win a princess' hand in marriage? Can Cinderella find love in the White? But sometimes writers neglect to give the characters a compelling inner problem to solve as well.

Characters without inner challenges seem flat and unconvincing, however heroically they may act. They need an inner problem, a personality flaw or a moral

dilemma to work out. They need to learn something in the course of the story: how to get along with others, how to trust themselves, how to see beyond outward appearances. Audiences love to see characters learning, growing, and dealing with the inner and outer challenges of life.

## MAKING AN ENTRANCE

How the audience first experiences your hero is another important condition you control as a storyteller. What is he doing the first time we see him, when he makes his entrance? What is he wearing, who is around him, and how do they react to him? What is his attitude, emotion, and goal at the moment? Does he enter alone or join a group, or is he already on stage when the story begins? Does he narrate the story, or is it told through the eyes of another character, or is it seen from the objective eye of omniscient narrative?

Every actor likes to “make an entrance,” an important part of building a character’s relationship with the audience. Even if a character is written as already on stage when the lights come up, the actor will often make an entrance out of it by how she first impresses an audience with her appearance and behavior. As writers we can give our heroes an entrance by thinking about how the audience first experiences them. What are they doing, saying, feeling? What is their context when we first see them? Are they at peace or in turmoil? Are they at full emotional power or are they holding back for a burst of repression later?

Most important is: What is the character doing at the moment of entrance? The character’s first action is a wonderful opportunity to speak volumes about his attitude, emotional state, background, strengths, and problems. The first action should be a model of the hero’s characteristic attitude and the future problems or solutions that will result. The first behavior we see should be characteristic. It should define and reveal character, unless (and unless it is unusual) the audience and control the character’s true nature.

Tom Sawyer makes a vivid entrance into our imaginations because Samuel Clemens has painted such a coherent revealing first look at his Missouri boy hero. The first time we see Tom he is performing a characteristic action, turning the menial job of whitewashing the fence into a wonderful mind game. Tom is a con artist, but the con is thoroughly enjoyed by his victims. Tom’s character is revealed through all his actions, but most clearly and definitively in his entrance, which defines his attitude toward life.

## Chapter Eight

Actors stepping onto a stage and writers introducing a character are also trying to connect the audience, or producer, or film, or screen, like some of identification and recognition. One of the magic powers of writing is its ability to lure each member of the audience into projecting a part of themselves into the character on the page, screen, or stage.

As a writer you can build up an atmosphere of anticipation or provide information about an important character by having other characters talk about her before she shows up. But since important and memorable will be her own first action upon entering the story — her entrance.

## INTRODUCING THE HERO TO THE AUDIENCE

Another important function of the Ordinary World is to introduce the hero to the audience. Like a social introduction, the Ordinary World establishes a bond between people and points out some common interest so that a dialogue can begin. In some way we should recognize that the hero is like us. In a very real sense, a story invites us to step into the hero's shoes, to see the world through his eyes. As if by magic we project part of our consciousness into the hero. To make this magic work you must establish a strong bond of sympathy or common interest between the hero and the audience.

This is not to say that heroes must always be good or wholly sympathetic. They don't even have to be likeable, but they must be *misable*, a word used by music executives to describe the quality of compassion and understanding that an audience must have for a hero. Even if the hero is unlikable or despicable, we can still understand her plight and imagine ourselves behaving in much the same way, given the same background, circumstances, and motivation.

## IDENTIFICATION

The opening scenes should create an identification between audience and hero, a sense that they are equals in some ways.

How do you achieve that? Create identification by giving heroes universal goals, drives, desires, or needs. We can all relate to basic drives such as the need for recognition, affection, acceptance, or understanding. The screenwriter Walter Sal, speaking of his script for *Midnight Cowboy*, said that his hero Joe Buck was driven by a universal human need to be touched. Even though Joe Buck engaged in some pretty sleazy behavior, we sympathize with his need because we have all experienced it at

some time. Identification with universal needs establishes a bond between audience and hero.

### THE HERO'S LACK

Fairy tale heroes have a common denominator, a quality that unites them across boundaries of culture, geography, and time. They are lacking something, or something is taken away from them. Often they have just lost a family member. A mother or father has died, or a brother or sister has been kidnapped. Fairy tales are almost searching for completeness and striving for wholeness, and often it's a subtraction from the family unit that sets the story in motion. The need to fill in the missing piece drives the story toward the final perfection of "They lived happily ever after."

Many movies begin by showing an exemplar hero or heroine. Joan Wilder in *Knowing the Score* and Roger Thornhill in *North by Northwest* are incomplete because they need ideal women to balance their lives. Fay Wray's character in *King Kong* is an orphan who knows only "There's supposed to be an uncle somewhere."

These missing elements help to create sympathy for the hero, and draw the audience into desiring his eventual wholeness. Audiences absorb the vacuum created by a missing piece in a character.

Other stories show the hero as essentially complete until a close friend or relative is kidnapped or killed in the first act, setting in motion a story of rescue or revenge. John Ford's *The Searchers* begins with news that a young woman has been kidnapped by Indians, launching a classic saga of search and rescue.

Sometimes the hero's family may be complete, but something is missing from the hero's personality — a quality such as compassion, forgiveness, or the ability to express love. The hero of *Ghost* is unable to say "I love you" at the beginning of the film. Only after he has run the course of the journey from life to death is he able to say those magic words.

It can be very effective to show that a hero is unable to perform some simple task at the beginning of the story. In *Deliverance* Popple the young hero Conrad is unable to eat French toast his mother has prepared for him. It signifies, in symbolic language, his inability to accept being loved and cared for, because of the terrible guilt he bears over the accidental death of his brother. It's only after he undertakes an emotional hero's journey, and relives and processes the death through therapy, that he is able to accept love. At the end of the story Conrad's girlfriend offers to make

## Chapter Eight

him breakfast, and this time he finds he has an appetite. In symbolic language, his appetite for life has returned.

## TRAGIC FLAWS

The Greek theory of tragedy, expressed twenty-four centuries ago by Aristotle, describes a common fault of tragic heroes. They may possess many admirable qualities, but among them is one tragic flaw or hamartia that puts them at odds with their destiny, their fellow men, or the gods. Ultimately it leads to their destruction.

Most commonly this tragic flaw was a kind of pride or arrogance called hubris. Tragic heroes are often superior people with extraordinary powers but they tend to see themselves as equal to or better than the gods. They ignore fair warnings or defy the local moral codes, thinking they are above the laws of gods and men. This fatal arrogance inevitably includes a force called Nemesis, originally a goddess of retribution. Her job was to set things back into balance, usually by bringing about the destruction of the tragic hero.

Every well-rounded hero has a trace of this tragic flaw, some weakness or flaw that makes him thoroughly human and real. Perfect, flawless heroes aren't very interesting, and are hard to relate to. Even Superman has weak spots which humanize him and make him sympathetic: his vulnerability to Kryptonite, his inability to see through lead, and his secret identity which is always in danger of being exposed.

## WOUNDED HEROES

Sometimes a hero may seem to be well-adjusted and in control, but that control masks a deep psychic wound. Most of us have some old pain or hurt that we don't think about all the time, but which is always vulnerable in some level of awareness. These wounds of rejection, betrayal, or disappointment are personal echoes of a universal pain that everyone has suffered from: the pain of the child's physical and emotional separation from its mother. In a larger sense, we all bear the wound of separation from God or the wound of existence — that place from which we are born and to which we will return when we die. Like Adam and Eve cast out of Eden, we are forever separated from our source, isolated and wounded.

To humanize a hero or any character, give her a wound, a visible, physical injury or a deep emotional wound. The hero of *Letal Weapon*, played by Mel Gibson, is sympathetic because he has lost a loved one. The wound makes him edgy, sensitive,



unpredictable, and surprising. You have wounds and scars mark the areas in which he is guarded, defensive, weak, and vulnerable. A hero may also be very strong in some areas as a defense for the wounded parts.

The movie *The Fisher King* is a thorough study of two men and their psychic wounds. The story is inspired by the Arthurian legend of the Holy Grail and the Fisher King, whose physical wound symbolized a wound of the spirit. This legend tells of a king who was wounded in the thigh and was therefore unable to rule his land or find any pleasure in life. Under his weakened kingship, the land was dying, and only the powerful spiritual magic of the Holy Grail could cure it. The quest by the Knights of the Round Table to find the Grail is the great adventure to restore health and wholeness to a system that has been almost fatally wounded. The Jungian psychologist Robert A. Johnson brings insight to the meaning of the Fisher King wound in his book on masculine psychology, *He*.

Another wounded, almost tragic hero is Tom Danson, played by John Wayne in the classic Western *Red River*. Danson makes a terrible moral error early in his career as a cattleman, by choosing to value his mission more than his lives, and following his head rather than his heart. This choice leads to the death of his lover, and for the rest of the movie he bears the psychic scars of that wound. His repressed guilt makes him mean and more harsh, autocratic, and judgmental, and almost brings him and his adopted son to destruction before the wound is healed by letting love back into his life.



*The Hero Refuses a Call of the heart with regret (consequence)*

### Complex Hero

A hero's wounds may not be visible. People put a great deal of energy into protecting and hiding their weak and vulnerable spots. But in a fully developed character they will be apparent in the areas where she is weakly defensive, or a little too confident. The wound may never be openly expressed to the audience — it can be a secret between the writer and the character. But it will help give the hero a sense of personal history and reasons for why all her wise acts, from past humiliations, rejections, disappointments, abandonments, and failures. Many stories are about the journey to heal a wound and to restore a missing piece to a broken psyche.

### ESTABLISHING WHAT'S AT STAKE

For readers and viewers to be involved in the adventure, to care about the hero, they have to know at an early stage exactly what's at stake. In other words, what does the hero stand to gain or lose in the adventure? What will be the consequences for the hero, society, and the world if she fails, succeeds or fails?

Myths and fairy tales are good models for establishing what's at stake. They often set up a threatening condition that makes the stakes of the game very clear. Perhaps the hero must pass a series of tests or his head will be cut off. The Greek hero Perseus, portrayed in the movie *Clash of the Titans*, must undergo many ordeals or his beloved princess Andromeda will be devoured by a sea monster. Other tales put family members in jeopardy like the father who is threatened in *Shogun and the Boat*. The hero Belle has a strong motivation to put herself in a dangerous position at the mercy of the Beast. Her father will languish and die unless she does the Beast's bidding. The stakes are high and clear.

Scripts often fail because the stakes simply aren't high enough. A story in which the hero will only be slightly embarrassed or inconvenienced if he fails is likely to get the "So what?" reaction from readers. Make sure the stakes are high — life and death, big money, or the hero's very soul.

### BACKSTORY AND EXPOSITION

The Ordinary World is the most appropriate place to deal with exposition and backstory. Backstory is all the relevant information about a character's history and background — what got her to the situation at the beginning of the story. Exposition is the art of gracefully revealing the backstory and any other pertinent

information about the plot: the hero's social class, upbringing, habits, experiences, as well as the pressing social conditions and opposing forces that may affect the hero. Exposition is everything the audience needs to know to understand the hero and the story. Backstory and exposition are among the hardest writing skills to master. Clunky exposition tends to stop the story cold. Blatant exposition draws attention to itself, getting the backstory in the form of a monologue or a "Mary the Explainer" character who comes on solely for the purpose of telling the audience what the author wants them to know. It's usually better to put the audience right into the action and let them figure things out as the story unfolds.

The audience will feel most involved if they have to work a little to piece together the backstory from visual clues or exposition blasted out while characters are emotionally upset or on the run. Backstory can be doled out gradually over the course of the story or yielded up grudgingly. Much is revealed by what people don't do or say.

Many dramas are about secrets being slowly and painfully revealed. Layer by layer the defenses protecting a horrific secret are torn away. This makes the audience participants in a detective story, so emotional people.

## THEME

The Ordinary World is the place to state the theme of your story. What is the story really about? If you had to boil down its essence to a single word or phrase, what would it be? What single idea or quality is it about? Love? Trust? Betrayal? Vanity? Popularity? Greed? Madness? Ambition? Friendship? What are you trying to say? Is your theme, "Love conquers all," "You can't cheat an honest man," "We must work together to survive," or "Money is the root of all evil"?

Theme, a word derived from Greek, is close in meaning to the Latin-based premise. Both words mean "something set before," something laid out in advance that helps determine a future course. The theme of a story is an underlying statement or assumption about an aspect of life. Usually it's set out somewhere in Act One, in the Ordinary World. It could be an offhand remark by one of the characters expressing a belief, which is then rigorously tested in the course of the story. The real theme of the piece may not emerge or become itself until you have worked with the story for a while, but sooner or later you must become aware of it. Knowing the theme is essential to making the final choices in dialogue, action, and in deciding that

## CHAPTER 14

turn a story into a coherent design. In a good story, everything is related somehow to the theme, and the Ordinary World is the place to make the first statement of the main idea.

**THE WIZARD OF OZ**

I refer often to *The Wizard of Oz* because it's a classic movie that most people have seen, and because it's a fairly typical hero's journey with clearly delineated stages. It also has a surprising degree of psychological depth, and can be read not only as a fairy story of a little girl trying to get back home, but also as a metaphor of a personality trying to become complete.

*In the story world, the hero Dorothy has a clear inner problem. Her dog Toto has dug up Miss Gulch's flowerbed and Dorothy is in trouble. So it's a clear sympathy for her problem from her aunt and uncle, but they are too busy preparing for a coming storm. Like the heroes of myth and legend before her, Dorothy is thrown out of place, and doesn't know where to fight.*

*Dorothy also has a clear inner problem. She doesn't fit in anywhere, she doesn't feel "at home." Like the countless heroes of fairy tales, she has a big piece missing from her life — her parents are dead. She doesn't just know it, but she's about to get out on a quest for completion not through a marriage and the beginning of a new ideal family, but through meeting a series of magical forces that represent parts of a complete and perfect personality.*

*In her initial close meetings, Dorothy encounters a small model of the Special World adventure. Hered, she tries to balance on the thin walking of a pig pop, and falls in. These friendly farmhands rescue her from danger, predicting the roles the same actors will play in the Special World. The same acts, in the language of mythos, that Dorothy has been walking a tightrope between warring sides of her personality, and sooner or later she will need all the help she can get from every part of her being, as various she inevitably fall into conflict.*



Heroes may have an obvious missing piece, then, as wound. They may merely be restless, uneasy, and out of sync with their environment or culture. They may have been getting by, trying to adjust to unhealthy conditions by using various coping mechanisms or crutches such as emotional or chemical dependencies. They may have

deleted themselves that everything is all right. But, sooner or later, some new force enters the story to make it clear they can no longer mark time. This new energy is the Call to Adventure.

#### QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the Ordinary World of *Big Fish* (around *The Fisher King*)? Look at a film, play, or story of your choice. How does the author introduce the hero? Reveal character? Give exposition? Suggest the theme? Does the author use an image to foreshadow or suggest where the story is going?
2. In your own writing, how well do you know your hero? Do a complete biographical sketch, specifying personal history, physical description, education, family background, job experiences, vices, hobbies and propensities, preferences in food, clothes, hair, cars, etc.
3. Do a timeline, specifying what the character was doing and where he was at every stage of life. Find out what was going on in the world at these times. What ideas, events, and people have been the greatest influences on your character?
4. How is your story's hero incomplete? Get specific about the character's needs, desires, goals, wounds, fantasies, wishes, fears, quirks, regrets, defenses, weaknesses, and nerves. What single characteristic could lead to your hero's destruction or downfall? What single characteristic could save her? Does your character face both an outer and an inner problem? Does she have a universal human need? How does she characteristically go about getting that need met?
5. Make a list of all the points of backstory and exposition that the audience needs to know to get the story started. How can these be revealed indirectly, visually, on the run, or through conflict?
6. Do different cultures need different kinds of stories? Do men and women need different kinds of stories? How are the heroic journeys of men and women different?

# STAGE TWO: THE CALL TO ADVENTURE

*"It's magic and adventure and just it's the thrill of a lifetime! and a long  
one voyage that starts at the oldest traditions!"*

—from *King Kong*, screenplay by  
James Cameron and Herb Ross



The Ordinary World of most heroes is a stable but unstable medium. The seeds of change and growth are planted, and it takes only a little new energy to germinate them. That new energy, symbolized in countless ways in myths and fairy tales, is what Joseph Campbell named the Call to Adventure.

*"Finally, that's the Hero's Tale. You have an call, in the germinating of our ourselves and the  
rise of our biggest children. The land for with around is signal out and barren out slowly  
around must go out beyond the familiar territory. That unknown land is strange and full of  
with just, but greater moment is to something to take more risk, as that life not continue.*

*A figure emerge from the cognitive world, an idea of the Hero's Tale, putting it you. In  
you have been shown as a Seeker and called to begin a new quest. You'll realize your life is  
that the greater life of the Hero's Tale may go on.*

## GET THE STORY ROLLING

Various theories of screenwriting acknowledge the Call to Adventure by other names such as the inciting or amazing incident, the catalyst, or the trigger. All agree that some event is necessary to get a story rolling, over the work of introducing the main character to film.

### Crucible Sign

The Call to Adventure may come in the form of a message or a messenger. It may be a new event like a declaration of war, or the arrival of a telegram reporting that the outlaws have just been released from prison and will be on their way on the next train to go down the sheriff. Serving a writ or warrant and issuing a summons are ways of giving Calls in legal proceedings.

The Call may simply be a stirring within the hero, a messenger from the unconscious, bearing news that it's time for change. These signals sometimes come in the form of dreams, fantasies, or visions. Roy Neary in *Close Encounters of the Third Kind* gets his Call in the form of haunting images of Devil's Tower drifting up from his subconscious. Prophetic or disturbing dreams help us prepare for a new stage of growth by giving us metaphors that reflect the emotional and spiritual changes to come.

The hero may just get fed up with things as they are. An unaccountable omission holds up until that one last straw sends him on the adventure. Joe Buck in *Moby-Dick* has simply had enough of washing dishes in a diner and feels the Call building up inside him to hit the road of adventure. In a deeper sense, his universal human need is driving him, but it takes that one last miserable day in the diner to push him over the edge.

### SYNCHRONICITY

A string of accidents or coincidences may be the message that calls a hero to adventure. This is the mysterious force of synchronicity which C. G. Jung explored in his writings. The coincidental occurrence of words, ideas, or events can take on meaning and draw attention to the need for action and change. Many thrillers such as Hitchcock's *Strangers on a Train* get rolling because an accident throws two people together as if by the hand of fate.

### TEMPTATION

The Call to Adventure may summon a hero with temptation, such as the allure of an exotic travel poster or the sight of a potential lover. It could be the glint of gold, the rumour of treasure, the siren song of ambition. In the Arabian legend of *Parzival* (aka *Parzifal*), the innocent young hero is summoned to adventure by the sight of five magnificent knights in armor, riding off on some quest. *Parzifal* has never seen

such commands, and is stirred to follow them. He is compelled to find out what they are, not realizing it is his destiny to soon become one of them.

## HERALDS OF CHANGE

The Call to Adventure is often delivered by a character in a story who manifests the archetype of the Herald. A character performing the function of Herald may be positive, negative, or neutral, but will always serve to get the story rolling by presenting the hero with an invitation or challenge to face the unknown. In some stories the Herald is also a Mentor for the hero, a wise guide who has the hero's best interests at heart. In others the Herald is an enemy, bringing a gauntlet of challenges to the hero's face or tempting the hero into danger.

Initially heroes often have trouble distinguishing whether a Enemy or an Ally lies behind the Herald's mask. Many a hero has mistaken a well-meaning mentor's Call for that of an enemy, or misinterpreted the overtures of a villain as a friendly invitation to an enjoyable adventure. In the thriller and film noir genres, writers may deliberately obscure the reality of the Call. Shadowy figures may make ambiguous offers, and heroes must use every skill to interpret them correctly.

Often heroes are unaware there is anything wrong with their Ordinary World and don't see any need for change. They may be in a state of denial. They have been just barely getting by, using an arsenal of crutches, addictions, and defense mechanisms. The job of the Herald is to kick away these supports, announcing that the world of the hero is crumbling and must be put back into healthy balance by action, by taking risks, by undertaking the adventure.

## RECONNAISSANCE

The Russian fairy-tale scholar Vladimir Propp identified a common early phase in a story, called reconnaissance. A visitor makes a survey of the hero's territory, perhaps taking around the neighborhood if there are any children living there, or seeking information about the hero. This information-gathering can be a Call to Adventure, stirring the audience and the hero that something is afoot, and the struggle is about to begin.



## DISORIENTATION AND DISCOMFORT

The Call to Adventure can often be unsettling and disorienting to the hero. Herald sometimes sneak up on heroes, appearing to one guise to gain a hero's confidence and then shifting shape to deliver the Call. Alfred Hitchcock provides a potent example in *Monty Python*. Here the hero is pluggish Ingrid Bergman, whose father has been sentenced as a Nazi spy. The Call to Adventure comes from a Herald in the form of Cary Grant, who plays an American agent trying to enlist her aid in infiltrating a Nazi spy ring.

First he charms his way into her life by pretending to be a playboy interested only in booze, fast cars, and sex. But after she accidentally discovers he's a "cooper," he shifts to the mask of Herald to deliver a deeply challenging Call to Adventure.

Bergman wakes up in bed, being woken from their night of partying. Grant, standing in the doorway, orders her to drink a hasty beverage to settle her stomach. It doesn't taste good, but he makes her drink it anyway. It symbolizes the new energy of the adventure, which tastes like poison compared to the additions she's been used to, but which ultimately will be good medicine for her.

In this scene Grant leans in a doorway, illuminated like some dark angel. From Bergman's point of view, this Herald could be an angel or a devil. The devilish possibility is suggested by his name, revealed for the first time as "Devil." As he advances into the room to deliver the Call to Adventure, Hitchcock follows him in a dizzying point-of-view shot that reflects the hung-over state of the hero, Bergman, as she lies in bed. Grant seems to walk on the ceiling. In the symbolic language of film, the shot expresses his change of position from playboy to Herald, and its disorienting effect on the hero. Grant gives the Call, a parting invitation to infiltrate a Nazi spy ring. As it is delivered, Grant is seen right side up and in full light for the first time, representing the Call's sobering effect on Bergman's character.

As they talk, a cross-like, artificial interpiece slides from Bergman's head, showing that her fairy tale existence as a deluded, adulated princess must now come to an end. Simultaneously on the soundtrack can be heard the distant call of a train leaving town, suggesting the beginning of a long journey. In this sequence Hitchcock has used every symbolic element at his command to signal that a major threshold of change is approaching. The Call to Adventure is disorienting and distasteful to the hero, but necessary for her growth.

## LACK OR NEED

A Call to Adventure may come in the form of a loss or subtraction from the hero's life in the Ordinary World. The adventure of the mouse *Jack* for *Fire* is set in motion when a Stone Age tribe's last scrap of fire, preserved in a Stone fire-cage, is extinguished. Members of the tribe begin to die of cold and hunger because of the loss. The hero receives his Call to Adventure when one of the women puts the fire-cage in front of him, signalling without words that the loss must be made up by undertaking the adventure.

The Call could be the kidnapping of a loved one or the loss of anything precious, such as health, sanity, or life.

## NO MORE OPTIONS

In some stories, the Call to Adventure may be the hero simply running out of options. The coping mechanisms no longer work, other people get fed up with the hero, or the hero is placed in increasingly dire straits until the only way left is to jump onto the adventure. In *Ami Da Whoopi*, Goldberg's character witnesses a mob murder and has to go into hiding as a nun. Her options are limited — pretend to be a nun or die. Other heroes don't even get that much choice — they are simply "slaughtered" into adventure, cooked in the head to wait up for use as is, committed to adventure whether they like it or not.

## WARNINGS FOR TRAGIC HEROES

Not all Calls to Adventure are positive surrenders to high adventure. They may also be dire warnings of doom for tragic heroes. In Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*, a character cries out the warning, "Beware the Ides of March." In *Moby-Dick*, the crew is warned by a crew (old man) that their adventures will turn into a disaster.

## MORE THAN ONE CALL: CALL WAITING

Since many stories operate on more than one level, a story can have more than one Call to Adventure. A sprawling epic such as *Red River* has a need for several scenes of this type. John Wayne's character Tom Dunson receives a Call of the heart, when his love urges him to stay with her or take her with him on his quest. Dunson himself

## Example 14a

issues another Call to physical adventure when he invites his comrades to join him on the first great cattle drive after the Civil War.

Amongst the letters comes a complex Call to Adventure to its hero from Wilkie when she receives a phone call from her sister who has been kidnapped by thugs in Columbia. The simple Call of physical adventure is set up by the need to rescue the sister, but another Call is being made on a deeper level in this scene, from opening an envelope which her sister's husband has mailed to her and finds a map to the treasure mine of El Casado, "The Heart," suggesting that Joan is also being called to an adventure of the heart.

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*Dorothy's vague feelings of wrong crystallize when Miss Gulch comes and spitefully takes away Toto. It conflicts as it is between two sides struggling for control of Dorothy's soul. If righteous Winkie wants to bring to birth up the good-natured intuitive side. But the malicious Tin man wants Dorothy follows her instincts, which are warning her a Call to Adventure, and runs away from home. He gets punished with a return by a lack of sympathy from those who, for strategic reasons, who had aided her. She sets out to respond to the Call under a sky turning with the clouds of change.*



The Call to Adventure is a process of selection. An unstable situation arises in a society and someone volunteers or is chosen to take responsibility. Reluctant heroes have to be called repeatedly, as they try to avoid responsibility. More willing heroes answer to inner calls and need no external urging. They have selected themselves for adventure. Their gang-bro heroes are rare, and most heroes must be provoked, captured, whistled, tempted, or shanghaied into adventure. Most heroes put up a good fight and attempt at by their efforts to escape the Call to Adventure. These struggles are the work of the reluctant hero or, as Campbell called it, the Refusal of the Call.

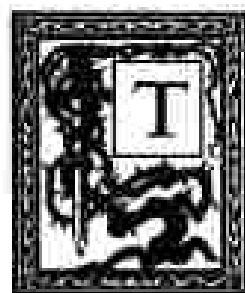
## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the Call to Adventure in *Cinderella*? *High Noon*? *Jack Armstrong*? *How to Succeed in Business Without Really Doing*? Who or what delivers the Call? What archetypes are manifested by the deliverer?
2. What Calls to Adventure have you received, and how did you respond to them? Have you ever had to deliver a Call to Adventure to someone else?
3. Can a story exist without some kind of Call to Adventure? Can you think of stories that don't have a Call?
4. In your own story, would it make a difference if the Call were moved to another point in the script? How long can you delay the Call and is this desirable?
5. What is the ideal place for the Call? Can you do without it?
6. How can you find an interesting way to present the Call or twist it around so it's not a cliché?
7. Your story may require a succession of Calls. Who is being called to what level of adventure?

# STAGE THREE: REFUSAL OF THE CALL

*"You're all out and for the sake of Jesus, are you know it?"*

— *Jesus Answering the Disciples, manuscript*  
by Diane Fleisher



The problem of the hero now becomes how to respond to the Call to Adventure. Put yourself in the hero's shoes and you can see that it's a difficult passage. You're being asked to say yes to a great unknown, to an adventure that will be exciting but also dangerous and even life-threatening. It wouldn't be a real adventure otherwise. You stand at a threshold of fear and an understandable reaction would be to hesitate or even refuse the Call, at least temporarily.

*Enter your gun, fellow-biker. Think about it, possible dangers, and reflect on past mistakes. The spirit of the unknown walks among us, holding our progress at the threshold. Some of us turn down the great, wide highway, some are tugged at by devils who tear for our lives and don't want us to go. You hear people mutter that the journey is foolhardy, derived from the past. You feel just commencing your breathing and making your heart race. Should you try, with the flame torch, and be subjected they make in the ground. Are you out out to be a hero?*

This halt on the road before the journey has really crucial scenes an important dramatic function of signaling the audience that the adventure is risky. It's not a frivolous undertaking but a danger-filled, high-stakes gamble in which the

### Christopher Lloyd

hero might lose fortune or life. The pause to weigh the consequences makes the commitment to the adventure a real choice in which the hero, after this period of hesitation or refusal, is willing to stake his life against the possibility of winning the goal. It also forces the hero to examine the quest carefully and perhaps redefine his objectives.

### AVOIDANCE

It's natural for heroes to first react by trying to dodge the adventure. Even Christ, in the Garden of Gethsemane on the eve of the Crucifixion, prayed, "Let this cup pass from me." He was simply checking to see if there was any way of avoiding the ordeal. Is this cup really necessary?

Even the most heroic of movie heroes will sometimes hesitate, express reluctance, or flatly refuse the Call. Rambo, Rocky, and immortal John Wayne characters turn away from the official adventure at first. A common grounds for Refusal is past experience. Heroes claim to be veterans of past adventures which have taught them the folly of such escapades. You won't catch them getting into the same kind of trouble again. The protest continues until the hero's Refusal is overcome, either by some stronger motivation (such as the death or kidnapping of a friend or relative) which raises the stakes, or by the hero's own love for adventure or sense of honor.

Detectives and lovers may refuse the Call at first, referring to experiences which have made them colder but wiser. There is charm in seeing a hero's reluctance overcome, and the suffer the Refusal, the more an audience enjoys seeing it worn down.

### EXCUSES

Heroes most commonly Refuse the Call by stating a laundry list of work excuses. In a transparent attempt to delay facing their inevitable fate, they say they would undertake the adventure, if not for a pending series of engagements. These are temporary roadblocks, usually overcome by the agency of the quest.

## PERSISTENT REFUSAL LEADS TO TRAGEDY

Persistent Refusal of the Call can be disastrous. In the Bible, Lot's wife is turned to a pillar of salt for denying God's Call to leave her home in Sodom and never look back. Looking backward, dwelling on the past, and denying reality are forms of Refusal.

Continued denial of a high Calling is one of the marks of a tragic hero. At the beginning of *Red Rover*, Tom Dunson refuses a Call to an adventure of the heart and begins a slide into almost certain doom. He continues to refuse Calls to open his heart, and is on the path of a tragic hero. It's only when he finally accepts the Call in Act Three that he is redeemed and spares the tragic hero's fate.

## CONFLICTING CALLS

Usually Tom Dunson faces two Calls to Adventure at once. The Call to the heart's adventure comes from his seedheart. On the one hand, he answers to the Call of his male ego, telling him to strike out alone on a macho path. Heroes may have to choose between conflicting Calls from different levels of adventure. The Refusal of the Call is a time to articulate the hero's difficult choices.

## POSITIVE REFUSALS

Refusal of the Call is usually a negative comment on the hero's progress, a dangerous comment in which the adventure might go astray or never get off the ground at all. However, there are some special cases in which refusing the Call is a wise and positive move on the part of the hero. When the Call is a temptation to evil or a summons to disaster, the hero is wiser to say no. The Three Little Pigs wisely refused to open the door to the Big Bad Wolf's powerful arguments. *Is Dead Before He Even Will* character writes several powerful Calls to drink a magic potion of immortality. Despite an alluring side path by Isabella Hrusellini, he Refuses the Call and saves his own soul.

## ARTIST AS HERO

Another special case in which Refusal of the Call can be positive is that of the artist as hero. We writers, poets, painters, and musicians face difficult, contradictory Calls.

### Change is light.

We must fully immerse ourselves in the world to find the material for our art. But we must also at times withdraw from the world, going alone to actually make the art. Like many heroes of story, we receive conflicting Calls, one from the outer world, one from our own insides, and we must choose or make compromises. To answer a higher Call to express ourselves, we artists may have to choose the Call of what Joseph Campbell terms “the Mandatement of the world.”

When you are getting ready to undertake a great adventure, the Ordinary World knows somehow and sings to you. It sings its sweetest, most insistent song, like the Sirens trying to draw Odysseus and his crew onto the rocks. Creative distractions tempt you off track as you begin to work. Odysseus had to stop up the ears of his men with wax so they wouldn't be lured onto the rocks by the Sirens' bewitching song.

However, Odysseus first had his men tie him to the mast, so he could hear the Sirens but would be unable to steer the ship into danger. Artists sometimes ride through life like Odysseus, lured to the mast, with all senses deeply experiencing the song of life, but also voluntarily bound to the log of their art. They are refusing the powerful Call of the world, in order to follow the wiser Call of artistic expression.

### WILLING HEROES

While many heroes express fear, reluctance, or refusal in this stage, others don't hesitate or voice any fear. They are willing heroes who have accepted or even sought out the Call to Adventure. Propp calls them “volunt” as opposed to “victimard” heroes.<sup>1</sup> However, the fear and doubt expressed by the Refusal of the Call will find expression even in the hearts of willing heroes. Other characters will express the fear, warning the hero and the audience of what may happen on the road ahead.

A willing hero like John Dunbar from *Dances with Wolves* may be past the fear of physical death. He has already sought out death in the first sequence of the movie as he rides unscathed in front of Red rifles and is miraculously spared. He seeks out the adventure of the War willingly, without refusal or reluctance. But the danger and harshness of the journey is made clear to the audience through the fear of other characters who represent Refusal of the Call. One is the much pathetic Army officer who goes Dunbar's way, called “volunt.” He shows a possible fate for Dunbar. The frontier is so strange and challenging that it can drive some people



man. The officer has been unable to accept the reality of this world, has retreated into denial and fantasy, and refuses the frontier's Call by shooting himself.

The other character who bears the energy of Refusal is the wrong-way wagon driver who escorts Duxbur to his desired port. He expresses nothing but fear of the Indians and the prairie, and wants Duxbur to Refuse the Call, abandon his enterprise, and return to civilization. The driver ends up being brutally killed by the Indians, showing the audience another possible fate for Duxbur. Though there is no Refusal by the hero himself, the danger of the adventure is acknowledged and dramatized through another character.

### THRESHOLD GUARDIANS

Heroes who overcome their fear and commit to an adventure may still be tested by powerful figures who raise the banner of fear and doubt, questioning the hero's very worthiness to be in the game. They are Threshold Guardians, blocking the heroes before the adventure has even begun.

In *Johnny and the Snow*, Joan Wilber accepts the Call and is totally committed to the adventure for the sake of her sister in Columbia. However, the nature of that, the way station of Refusal, is still slavishly acknowledged in a scene with her agent, who wears the fearful mask of a Threshold Guardian. A tough, cynical woman, she forcefully underlines the dangers and tries to talk Joan out of going. Like a witch pronouncing a curse, she declares that Joan is not up to the task of being a hero. Joan even agrees with her, but is now motivated by the danger to her sister. She is committed to the adventure. Though Joan herself does not Refuse the Call, the fear, doubt, and danger have still been made clear to the audience.

Joan's agent demonstrates how a character may switch masks to show aspects of more than one archetype. She appears at first to be a Mentor and friend to Joan, at odds in her profession and her dealings with men, but this Mentor turns into a fierce Threshold Guardian, blocking the way into the adventure with stark warnings. She's like an overprotective parent, not allowing the daughter to learn through her own mistakes. Her function at this point is to test the hero's commitment to the adventure.

This character serves another important function. She poses a dramatic question for the audience: Is Joan truly heroic enough to face and survive the

## Chapter Eight

adventures! This doubt is more interesting than knowing that the hero will rise to every occasion. Such questions create emotional suspense for the audience, who watch the hero's progress with uncertainty hanging in the back of their minds. *Refusal of the Call* often serves to raise such doubts.

It's not unusual for a Mentor to change masks and perform the functions of a Threshold Guardian. Some Mentors guide the hero deeper into the unknown, others block the hero's path so an advanced society might not approve of — an illicit, unwise, or dangerous path. Such a Mentor/Threshold Guardian becomes a powerful embodiment of society or culture, warning the hero not to go outside the accepted bounds. In *Beauty and the Beast*, Edouard's Demos police boss stands in his way, orders him off the case, and draws a line which Murphy is not supposed to cross. Of course Murphy does cross the line, immediately.

## THE SECRET DOOR

Heroes inevitably violate limits set by Mentors or Threshold Guardians, due to what we might call the Law of the Secret Door. When Belle in *Beauty and the Beast* is told she has the run of the Beast's household, except for one door which she must never enter, we know that she will be compelled at some point to open that secret door. If Pandora is told she must not open the box, she won't rest until she's had a peek inside. If Psyche is told she must never look upon her lover Cupid, she will surely find a way to lay eyes on him. These stories are symbols of human curiosity; the powerful draw us to know all the hidden things, all the secrets.

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*Dorothy runs away from home and goes as far as the central image of Professor Marvel, a Old Man whose function, in this incarnation, is to hook her at the threshold of a dangerous journey. At the point Dorothy is a willing hero, and it's left for the Professor to express the danger of the road for the audience. With a bit of dramatic magic, he convinces her to answer home. He has convinced her to Refuse the Call, for now.*

*But in effect Professor Marvel is issuing a higher Call to go home, make peace with her established situation, reunite with Aunt Em's love, and deal with her feelings rather than run away from them.*

Although Dorothy never looks for the time being, powerful forces have been set in motion in her life. She feels the irresistible power of the tornado, a symbol of the feelings she has stirred up, has driven her loved ones and allies underground, out of reach. No one can help her. She is alone except for Toto, her companion. Like many a hero, she finds that once started on a journey, she can never go back to the way things were. Ultimately, Refusal is pointless. She has already burned some bridges behind her and must live with the consequences of taking the first step on the Road of Heroes.

Dorothy takes refuge in the empty house, the common defense symbol for an old personality structure. But the swirling forces of change, which she herself has stirred up, come sweeping towards her and no structure can protect against its awesome power.



Refusal may be a simple moment, perhaps just a word or two of hesitation between receiving and accepting a Call. (Often several stages of the journey may be combined in a single scene. Folklorists call this "confusion.") Refusal may be a single step near the beginning of the journey, or it may be encountered at every step of the way, depending on the nature of the hero.

Refusal of the Call can be an opportunity to redirect the focus of the adventure. An adventure taken on a lark or to escape some unpleasant consequence may be nudged into a deeper adventure of the spirit.

A hero huddles at the threshold to experience the fear, to let the audience know the intensity of the challenges ahead. But eventually fear is overcome or set aside, often with the help of wise, protective forces or magical gifts, representing the surge of the next stage. Meeting with the Mentor.

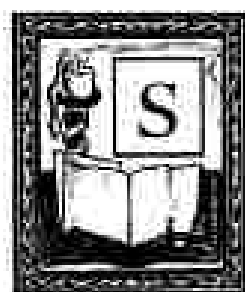
## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. How does the hero *refuse* the Call to Adventure? (For example: *A League of Their Own*) Is Refusal of the Call or reluctance a necessary stage for every story? For every hero?
2. What are the *benefits* of your story afraid of? Which are false fears or pretenses? Which are real fears? How are they expressed?
3. In what ways have they refused Calls to Adventure, and what are the consequences of Refusal?
4. If the protagonists are willing heroes, are there characters or forces that make the dangers clear for the audience?
5. Have you refused Calls to Adventure, and how would your life be different if you had accepted them?
6. Have you accepted Calls to Adventure that you wish you had refused?

## STAGE FOUR: MEETING WITH THE MENTOR

*"He (Odin) assumed the appearance of Mentor  
and arrived in like form as to assist both eye and ear."*

—*The Odyssey of Homer*



Sometimes it's not a bad idea to refuse a Call until you've had time to prepare for the "some unknown" that lies ahead. In mythology and folklore that preparation might be done with the help of the wise, protective figure of the Mentor, whose many activities in the hero's life include protecting, guiding, teaching, testing, training, and providing magical gifts. In his study of Russian folktales, Vladimir Propp calls this character type the "donor" or "provider" because its primary function is to supply the hero with something needed on the journey. Meeting with the Mentor is the stage of the Hero's Journey in which the hero gains the supplies, knowledge, and confidence needed to overcome fear and commence the adventure.

*The heroes, fearful at the brink of adventure, consult with the elders of the Hero Tribe. Not one there who has gone before, learns the secret lore of warning, tales, game trails, and honey patches, and when boldly questioned, and answered to avoid the old one, too feeble to go out again, catches a nap for us in the fire. The shaman of the tribe greets, something that your hand, a magic gift, a potent talisman that will protect us and guide us on the quest. Now we venture out with higher fears and greater confidence, for we take with us the colored wisdom of the Hero Tribe.*

## HEROES AND MENTORS

Movies and stories of all kinds are constantly elaborating the relationship between the two archetypes of hero and Mentor.

The *Kurosai Kid* films, *The Prince of Mis-Judo*, *Hot Sand and Other* are stories devoted entirely to the process of mentors teaching students. Countless films such as *Red Dawn*, *Ordinary People*, *Star Wars*, and *Fred Green* *Lesson* reveal the vital force of Mentors at key moments in the lives of heroes.

## SOURCES OF WISDOM

Even if there is no actual character performing the many functions of the Mentor archetype, heroes almost always make contact with some source of wisdom before committing to the adventure. They may seek out the experience of those who have gone before, or they may look inside themselves for wisdom won at great cost in former adventures. Either way they are smart to consult the map of the adventure, looking for the rocks, plants, and ship's logs if that's necessary. It's only prudent for wayfarers to stop and check the map before setting out on the challenging, often life-threatening, Road of Heroes.

For the storyteller, Meeting with the Mentor is a stage rich in potential for conflict, involvement, humor, and tragedy. It's based in an emotional relationship, usually between a hero and a Mentor or adviser of some kind, and sufficient scenes to enjoy relationships in which the wisdom and experience of one generation is passed on to the next. Everyone has had a relationship with a Mentor or role model.

## MENTORS IN FOLKLORE AND MYTH

Folklore is filled with descriptions of heroes meeting magical protectors who bestow gifts and guide them on the journey. We read of the elves who help the shoemaker; the animals who help and protect little gods in Russian fairy tales; the seven dwarfs who give Snow White shelter; in *Dem-in-Boots*, the talking cat who helps his poor master win a kingdom. All are prosecutions of the powerful archetype of the Mentor: helping and guiding the hero.

Heroes of mythology seek the advice and help of the witches, wizards, witch doctors, spirits, and gods of their worlds. The heroes of Homer's stories are guided

by patron gods and goddesses who give them magical aid. Some heroes are raised and trained by magical beings that are somewhere between gods and man, such as centaurs.

### CHIRON: A PROTOTYPE

Many of the Greek heroes were trained by the centaur Chiron, a prototype for all Wise Old Men and Women. A strange mix of man and horse, Chiron was hunter-father and trainer to a whole array of Greek heroes including Hercules, Achilles, Athena, Pelias, and Aeneas/Jason, the greatest seagoer of antiquity. In the process of Chiron, the Greeks mixed many of their notions about what it means to be a Mentor.

As a rule, centaurs are wild and savage creatures. Chiron was an unusually kind and powerful one, but he still kept some of his wild horse nature. As a half-man/half-animal creature, he is linked to the shamans of many cultures who dance in the skins of animals to get in touch with animal power. Chiron is the energy and intuition of wild nature, guided and harnessed to teaching. Like the shamans, he is a bridge between humans and the higher powers of nature and the universe. Myths in various other cultures that they are connected to nature or to some other world of the spirit.

As a Mentor, Chiron led his heroes-in-training through the thresholds of adulthood by patiently teaching them the skills of archery, poetry, surgery, and so on. He was not always well rewarded for his efforts. His violence-prone pupil Hercules wounded him with a magic arrow which made Chiron beg the gods for the mercy of death. But in the end, after a truly heroic sacrifice in which he raised Prometheus from the underworld by taking his place, Chiron received the highest distinction the Greeks could bestow: Zeus made him a constellation and a sign of the zodiac — Sagittarius, a centaur firing a bow. Clearly the Greeks had a high regard for teachers and Mentors.

### MENTOR HIMSELF

The word Mentor comes from the character of this name in *The Odyssey*. Mentor was the loyal friend of Odysseus, entrusted with raising his son Telemachus while Odysseus made his long way back from the Trojan War. Mentor has given his name

## Chapter Eight

to all guides and trainers, but it's really Athena, the goddess of wisdom, who works behind the scenes to bring the energy of the Mentor archetype into the story.

"The goddess with the flashing eyes" has a big crush on Odysseus, and an interest in getting him home safely. She also looks out for his son Telemachus. She finds the hero's story stuck in the opening scenes (the Ordinary World) of *The Odyssey* when the household is overrun by a arrogant young suitor for his mother's hand. Athena decides to unstick the situation by taking human form. An important function of the Mentor archetype is to get the story rolling.

First she assumes the appearance of a traveling warrior named Mentor, to issue a strong challenge to stand up to the suitors and seek his father (Call to Adventure). Telemachus accepts the challenge but the suitors laugh him off and he is so discouraged he wants to abandon the mission (Refusal of the Call). Once again the story seems stuck, and Athena unsticks it by taking the form of Telemachus' teacher Mentor. In this disguise she draws some courage into him and helps him assemble a ship and crew. Therefore, even though Mentor is the name we give to wise counselors and guides, it is really the goddess Athena who acts here.

Athena is the full, undiluted energy of the archetype. If she appeared in her true form, it would probably blast the skin off the faces of the average hero. The gods usually speak to us through the filter of other people who are temporarily filled with a godlike spirit. A good teacher or Mentor is enthralled about learning. The wonderful thing is that this feeling can be communicated to students or to an audience.

The names Mentor and Minerva, along with the word "mental," stem from the Greek word for mind, *menes*, a marvelously flexible word that can mean transition, focus, or purpose as well as mind, spirit, or consciousness. *Menes* is stories as mainly on the mind of the hero, changing her consciousness or reflecting her will. Even if physical gifts are given, *Menes* also changes the hero's mind to face an ordeal with confidence. *Menes* also means courage.

## ARCHETYPING MENTOR CLICHÉS

The audience is extremely familiar with the Mentor archetype. The behaviors, attitudes, and functions of Wise Old Women and Men are well known from thousands of stories, and it's easy to fall into clichés and stereotypes — kindly grey gnomes and white-headed wizards in tall Merlin hats. To combat this and



keep your writing fresh and surprising, defy the archetypal band-thief on their heads, turn them inside out, purposely do without them altogether to see what happens. The absence of a Mentor creates special and interesting conditions for a hero. But be aware of the archetype's existence, and the audience's familiarity with it.

## MISDIRECTION

Audiences don't mind being misled about a Mentor (or any character) from time to time. Real life is full of suspicions about people who turn out to be nothing like we first thought. The mask of the Mentor can be used to trick a hero into entering a life of crime. This is how Fagin entices little boys as pickpockets in *Oliver Twist*. The mask of Mentor can be used to get a hero involved in a dangerous adventure, unknowingly working for the villains. In *Andromache*, Gregory Peck is tricked into helping a ring of spies by a fake Wise Old Man. You can make the audience think they are seeing a conventional, kindly, helpful Mentor, and then reveal that the character is actually something quite different. Use the audience's expectations and assumptions to surprise them.

## MENTOR/HERO CONFLICTS

The Mentor-hero relationship can take a tragic or deadly turn if the hero is ungrateful or violence-prone. Despite the reputation of Hercules as a pious hero, he has an alarming tendency to do harm to his Mentors. In addition to painfully wounding Chiron, Hercules got so frustrated at minor lessons that he brained the head of his music teacher Lycaon with the first live cow made.

Sometimes a Mentor turns villain or betrays the hero. The movie *The Eye* features an apparently benevolent Mentor (George Kennedy) who surprisingly turns on his student hero (Clint Eastwood) and tries to kill him. The dwarf Regis in *Nordic myth* is at first a Mentor to Sigurd the Dragonlayer and helpfully redeems his broken sword. But in the long run the helper turns out to be a double-crosser. After the dragon is slain, Regis plots to kill Sigurd and keep the treasure for himself.

Rumpelstiltskin is initially a fairy-tale Mentor who helps the heroine by making good on her father's boast that she can spin straw into gold. But the price he demands for his gift is too high — he wants her baby. These stories teach us that our

### Chapter 10

all Mentors are to be trusted, and that it's healthy to question a Mentor's motives. It's one way to distinguish good from bad advice.

Mentors sometimes disappoint the heroes who have admired them during apprenticeship. In *Mr. Smith Goes to Washington*, Jimmy Stewart learns that his Mentor and role model, the noble Senator played by Claude Rains, is as crooked and corruptly as the rest of Congress.

Mentors, like parents, may have a hard time letting go of their charges. An overprotective Mentor can lead to a tragic situation. The character of Sengul from the novel *Telly* is a chilling portrait of a Mentor who becomes so obsessed with his student that he dooms them both.

### MENTOR-DRIVEN STORIES

Once in a while an entire story is built around a Mentor. *Goodbye, Mr. Clay*, the novel and film, is a whole story built on teaching Mr. Clay as the Mentor of hundreds of boys and the hero of the story, with his own series of Mentors.

The novel *Barbarosa* is a wise and funny look at a Mentor relationship sustained throughout the story. Its focus is the training of a country boy (Gary Fluey) by a legendary Western drifter (Willie Nelson). The young man's learning is so complete that when the movie ends, he is ready to take Barbarosa's place as a larger-than-life folk hero.

### MENTOR AS EVOLVED HERO

Mentors can be regarded as heroes who have become experienced enough to teach others. They have been down the Road of Heroes one or more times, and they have acquired knowledge and skill which can be passed on. The progression of Aragorn in the *Tarot* deck shows how a hero evolves to become a Mentor. A hero begins as a Fool and at various stages of the adventure runs through ranks of knight, warrior, messenger, conqueror, lover, thief, ruler, hermit, and so on. At last the hero becomes a Hierophant, a worker of miracles, a Mentor and guide to others, whose injuries come from surviving many rounds of the Hero's Journey.

## CRITICAL INFLUENCE

Most often, teaching, training, and testing are only transient stages of a hero's progress, part of a larger picture. In many movies and stories the Wise Old Woman or Man is a guiding influence on the hero. But for Merrin's brief appearance is critical to get the story past the bookends of doubt and fear. Merrin may appear only two or three times in a story. Glinda the Good Witch appears only three times in *The Wizard of Oz*: 1 ) giving Dorothy the red shoes and a yellow path to follow, 2 ) intervening to blanket the sleep-inducing poppies with pure white snow, and 3 ) granting her wish to return home, with the help of the magic red shoes. In all three cases her function is to get the story unstuck by giving aid, advice, or magical equipment.

Mentors spring up in unusual variety and frequency because they are so useful to storywriters. They reflect the reality that we all have to learn the lessons of life from someone or something. Whether recognized as a person, a tradition, or a code of ethics, the usage of the mentor is a presence in almost every story, to get things rolling with gifts, encouragement, guidance, or wisdom.

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*Dorothy*, the main hero, encounters a series of Mentors of varying shades. She learns something from almost everyone she meets, and all the characters from whom she learns are in a sense Mentors.

*Professor Marvel* is the Mentor who reveals her that she is loved, and sends her on her quest for "home," a term that means far more than a Kansas farmhouse. Dorothy has to learn to get on home on her own feet, and going back to just her problems is a step in that direction.

But the crucial thing her is Oz, where Dorothy encounters Glinda, the good witch, a new Mentor for a new land. Glinda acquaints her with the unfamiliar rules of Oz, gives her the magic gift of the ruby slippers, and points her on the way of the Yellow Brick Road, the Golden Road of Horrors. She gives Dorothy a positive futuristic role model to balance the negativity of the Wicked Witch.

The three magical figures that Dorothy meets along the way, a man of straw, a man of tin, and a talking lion, are allies and Mentors who teach her lessons about bravery, love, and

### Example Eight

*Example:* They are different models of masculine energy that do reveal something in building for men's personality.

*The Wizard himself is a Mentor, giving her a true Call to Adventure, the responsible mission of finding the witch's formula. He challenges Dorothy to face her greatest fear — the basic feminine energy of the Witch.*

*The little dog Tin is a Mentor, too, in a way. Acting mostly as mirror, he is her intuition, peeling her deeper into the subconscious and back out again.*



The concept of the Mentor archetype has many uses for the writer. In addition to offering a force that can propel the story forward and supply the hero with necessary motivation or equipment for the journey, Mentors can provide humor or deep, tragic relationships. Some stories don't need a special character solely dedicated to perform the functions of this archetype. But at some point in almost any story, the Mentor functions of helping the hero are performed by some character or force, temporarily wearing the mask of the Mentor.

When writers get stuck, they may seek the help of Mentors just as heroes do. They may consult writing teachers or seek inspiration from the works of great writers. They may delve deep inside themselves to the real sources of inspiration in the Self, the dwelling place of the Muse. The best Mentor advice may be so simple beneath. Hang in there. You're doing fine. You've got what it takes to handle any situation, somewhere inside you.

Writers should bear in mind that they are Mentors of a kind to their readers, shamans who travel to other worlds and bring back stories to heal their people. Like Mentors, they teach with their stories and give of their experience, passion, observation, and enthusiasm. Writers, like shamans and Mentors, provide metaphors by which people guide their lives — a most valuable gift and a grave responsibility for the writer.

It's often the energy of the Mentor archetype that gets a hero past fear and sends her to the brink of adventure, in the next stage of the Hero's Journey, the First Threshold.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. Who or what is the Mentor in *Lord of the Rings*? *Peter Dinklage*? *The Silence of the Lambs*?
2. Think of three long-running TV series. Are there Mentors in these shows? What functions do these characters serve?
3. Is there a character in your story who is a full-blown Mentor? Do other characters wear the mask of the Mentor at some point?
4. Would it benefit the story to develop a Mentor character if there is none?
5. What Mentor functions can be found or developed in your story? Does your hero need a Mentor?
6. Does your hero have some inner code of ethics or model of behavior? Does your hero have a conscience and how does it manifest itself?
7. *Books of the Last Ark* and *Behaving Just as the Temple of Doom* portray a hero who has no apparent Mentor. He learns things from people along the way, but there is no special character set aside for that task. The third film in the series, *Behaving Just as the Last Crusade*, introduces the character of Indy's father, played by Sean Connery. Is he a Mentor? Are all parents Mentors? Are you? In your mind, what is the attitude of your hero to the Mentor energy?

# STAGE FIVE: CROSSING THE FIRST THRESHOLD

*"Just follow the Yellow Brick Road."*

— from *The Wizard of Oz*, screenplay by  
Noel Langley, Florence Rosebank, and  
Edgar Allan Woolf



ow the hero stands at the very threshold of the world of adventure, the Social World of Act Two. The call has been heard, doubts and fears have been expressed and allayed, and all due preparations have been made. But the real movement, the most critical action of Act One, still remains. Crossing the First Threshold is an act of the will in which the hero commits *wholly* and *irreversibly* to the adventure:

*The ranks of the Goblins are thinner now. Some of us have dropped out, but the final few are ready to cross the threshold and truly begin the adventure. The problems of the Stone Table are clear to everyone, and desperate — wanting want to live, want Ready or not, we step out of the village leaving all things familiar behind. As you pull away you feel the jerk of the invisible threads that bind you to your land even. It's difficult to pull away from everything you know but with a deep breath you go on, taking the plunge into the abyss of the unknown.*

*We enter a strange unknown world, a world between worlds, a zone of crossing that may be unclear and deadly, or in places, magical with life. You enter the presence of other beings, some gentle with sharp thorns or claws, guarding the way to the treasure you seek. But there's no turning back now, we all feel in the adventure but begin for good or ill.*

## APPROACHING THE THRESHOLD

Heroes typically don't just accept the advice and gifts of their Mentors and then charge into the adventure. Often their final commitment is brought about through some external force which changes the course or intensity of the story. This is equivalent to the famous "plot point" or "turning point" of the conventional three-act movie structure. A villain may kill, harm, threaten, or kidnap someone close to the hero, sweeping aside all hesitation. Rough weather may force the sailing of a ship, or the hero may be given a deadline to achieve an assignment. The hero may run out of options, or discover that a difficult choice must be made. Some heroes are "slaughtered" into the adventure or pushed over the brink, with no choice but to commit to the journey. In *Drama & Fate*, Louise's impulsive killing of a man who is assaulting Thelma is the action that pushes the woman to Cross the First Threshold into a new world of being-on-the-run from the law.

An example of the externally imposed event is found in Hitchcock's *North by Northwest*. Advertising man Roger Thornhill, mistaken for a during secret agent, has been trying his best to avoid his Call to Adventure all through the first act. It takes a murder to get him committed to the journey. A man he's questioning at the UN building is killed in front of witnesses in such a way that everyone thinks Roger did it. Now he is truly a "man on the run," escaping both from the police and from the enemy agents who will stop at nothing to kill him. The murder is the external event that pushes the story over the First Threshold into the Special World where the stakes are higher.

Internal events might trigger a Threshold Crossing as well. Heroes come to decision points where their very souls are at stake, where they must decide "Do I go on living my life as I always have, or will I risk everything in the effort to grow and change?" In *Ordinary People* the demurring life of the young hero Conrad gradually pressures him into making a choice, despite his fear, to see a therapist and explore the trauma of his brother's death.

Often a combination of external events and inner choices will boost the story towards the second act. In *Shogun* Fudo Cup Axel Foley sees a childhood friend brutally executed by thugs, and is motivated to find the man who hired them. But it takes a separate moment of decision for him to overcome resistance and fully commit to the adventure. In a brief scene in which his boss warns him off the case,

can see him make the more choice to ignore the warning and enter the Special World at any cost.

## THRESHOLD GUARDIANS

As you approach the threshold your ability to encounter things who try to block your way. They are called Threshold Guardians, a powerful and useful archetype. They may pop up to block the way and test the hero at any point in a story, but they tend to cluster around the doorways, gates, and narrow passages of threshold crossings. And Foley's Denver police captain, who firmly forbids him from getting involved in the investigation of the murder, is one such figure.

Threshold Guardians are part of the training of any hero. In Greek myth, the three-headed monster dog Cerberus guards the entrance to the underworld, and many a hero has had to figure out a way past his jaws. The grim German Chieftain who guides souls across the River Styx is another Threshold Guardian who must be appeased with a gift of a penny.

The task for heroes at this point is often to figure out some way around or through these guardians. Often their threat is just an illusion, and the solution is simply to ignore them (or to push through them with faith). Other Threshold Guardians must be absorbed so their hostile energy must be reflected back onto them. The trick may be to realize that what seems like an obstacle may actually be the means of clearing over the threshold. Threshold Guardians who seem to be enemies may be turned into valuable allies.

Sometimes the guardians of the First Threshold simply need to be acknowledged. They occupy a different niche and it wouldn't be polite to pass through their territory without recognizing their power and their important role of keeping the gate. It's a little like ripping a doorman or paying a ticket taker at a theatre.

## THE CROSSING

Sometimes this step merely signifies we have reached the border of the two worlds. We must take the leap of faith into the unknown so that the adventure will now really begin.

Countless movies illustrate the border between two worlds with the crossing of physical barriers such as doors, gates, arches, bridges, deserts, customs, walls, cliffs,



rooms, or items. In many Western thresholds are clearly marked by their air herald crossings. In the adventure *Ginga Djin*, the heroes must leap off a high cliff to escape a hoard of screaming cult members at the end of Act One. They are headed by this leap into the unknown, a Threshold Crossing signifying their willingness to explore the Special World of Act Two together.

In the older days of film, the transition between Act One and Act Two was often marked by a brief fade-out, a necessary indication of the scenes which indicated passage of time or movement in space. The fade-out was equivalent to the curtain coming down in the theater as the stagehands can change the set and props to create a new locale or show elapse of time.

Nowadays it's common for editors to cut directly from Act One to Act Two. Nevertheless the audience will still experience a noticeable shift in energy at the Threshold Crossing. A song, a music cue or a dramatic visual contrast may help signal the transition. The pace of the story may pick up. Entering a new location or structure may signal the change of worlds. In *A League of Their Own* the Crossing is the moment the women enter a big league baseball stadium, a marked contrast from the country ball fields where they've been playing.

The actual Crossing of the Threshold may be a single moment, or it may be an extended passage of a story. In *Lawrence of Arabia* T. E. Lawrence's ordeal in crossing "the Sand Arid" a treacherous world of desert, an an elaboration of this stage into a substantial sequence.

The Crossing takes a certain kind of courage from the hero. He is like the Fool in the Tarot deck: one foot out over a precipice, about to begin free-fall into the unknown.

That special courage is called making the leap of faith. Like jumping out of an airplane, the act is irreversible. There's no turning back now. The leap is made on faith, the trust that somehow we'll land safely.

## ROUGH LANDING

Heroes don't always land gently. They may crash in the other world, literally or figuratively. The leap of faith may turn into a cross of faith as romantic illusions about the Special World are shattered by first contact with it. A betrayed hero may pick herself up and ask, "Is that all there is?" The passage to the Special World may be exhilarating, frustrating, or disappointing.

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

A tremendous natural force rips up a hole directly over the First Threshold. She is trying to get home but she can't reach her old home in a Special World where she will have what "home" really means. Dorothy's last name, Gale, is a windstorm that links her to the storm. In symbolic language, it's her own mixed-up emotions that have generated the storm. Her old home of home, the house, is whisked up by the storm and carried to a far-off land where a new personality structure can be built.

As she passes through the transition zone, Dorothy sees familiar sights but in unfamiliar circumstances. Gale flies through the air, runs, now a boat through the storm, and Miss Gulch on her behalf turns into the Wicked Witch. Dorothy has nothing she can count on now but Love — her mission.

The house comes down with a crash. Dorothy awakes to find a world startlingly different from Kansas, populated by the Linn Men and Munch of tiny tales. A Munch appears magically when Glinda floats over the river in a rumpuson bubble. She begins to teach Dorothy about the strange ways of the new land, and points out that the crash of Dorothy's house has killed a bad witch. Dorothy's old personality has been disturbed by the opening of her old nature of home.

Glinda gives a mission (gift), the only direction, and new direction for the quest. To get home, Dorothy must first see the Wizard, that is, get in touch with her own higher Self. Glinda gives a specific path, the yellow brick Road, and sends her over another threshold, knowing she will have to make friends, confront fear, and be tested before she can reach her ultimate goal.



The First Threshold is the turning point at which the adolescent begins in earnest, at the end of Act One. According to a corporate metaphor in use at Disney, a story is like an airplane flight, and Act One is the process of loading, fueling, taxing, and running down the runway towards takeoff. The First Threshold is the moment the wheels leave the ground and the plane begins to fly. If you've never flown before, it may take awhile to adjust to being in the air. We'll describe that process of adjustment in the next phase of the Hero's Journey: Tests, Allies, Enemies.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the First Threshold in *Cry Silent Love Mind Doors with Witch*? How does the audience know we're gone from one world to another? How does the energy of the story feel different?
2. Is your hero willing to enter the unknown or not? How does this affect the Threshold Crossing?
3. Are there guardian forces at the Threshold and how do they make the hero's trip of initiation difficult?
4. How does the hero deal with Threshold Guardians? What does the hero learn by Crossing the Threshold?
5. What have been the Thresholds in your own life? How did you experience them? Were you ever aware you were crossing a threshold into a Special World at the time?
6. By Crossing a Threshold, what options is a hero going up? Will these unexplored options come back to haunt the hero later?

# STAGE SIX: TESTS, ALLIES, ENEMIES

*"Do you get them or find good food, why does you get yourself  
a tale — there are terrible things than that!"*

—from *Young Gomer*, screenplay

by John Franco



Now the hero Gilly enters the mysterious, exciting Special World which Joseph Campbell called "a dream landscape of curiously fixed, ambiguous forms, where he must survive a succession of trials." It's a new and sometimes frightening experience for the hero. No matter how many worlds he has been through, he's a freshman all over again in this new world.

*All Nations are so dead — An new world is so different from the home we're always known. Not only are the terrain and the local residents different, the rules of this place are strange as they can be. Different things are valued here and we have a lot to learn about the local customs, values, and language. Strange customs prove out as good. That's just how it is that, it could be proved!*

*Exhausted by the journey across the desolate threshold zone, we're running out of time and energy. Research our people back on the Home Tribe are counting on us. Enough with the going, let's concentrate on the goal. We must go where the food and game and information are to be found. There our skills will be tested, and we'll come one step closer to what we seek.*

## CONTRAST

The audience's first impressions of the Special World should strike a sharp contrast with the Ordinary World. Think of Eddie Murphy's first look at the Special World of *Beauty in the Beast*, which makes such a drastic contrast to his former world of Detroit. Even if the hero remains physically in the same place throughout the story, there is movement and change as new emotional territory is explored. A Special World, even a figurative one, has a different feel, a different rhythm, different priorities and values, and different rules. In *Seven of the Nine* or *Game Who? Coming to Dinner*, while there is no physical threshold, there's definitely a crossing into a Special World with new conditions.

When a submarine dives, a wagon train leaves St. Louis, or the spaceship *Enterprise* leaves the earth, the conditions and rules of survival change. Things are often more dangerous and the price of mistakes is higher.

## TESTING

The most important function of this period of adjustment to the Special World is testing. Characters use this phase to test the hero, putting her through a series of trials and challenges that are meant to prepare her for greater ordeals ahead.

Joseph Campbell illustrates this stage with the tale of Psyche, who is put through a fairy-tale like series of Tests before winning back her lost love, Cupid (Eros). This tale has been wisely interpreted by Sigmund A. Johnson in his book on feminine psychology, *She*. Psyche is given three seemingly impossible tasks by Cupid's jealous mother Venus and passes the Tests with the help of Imago to whom she has been kind along the way. She has made Allies.

The Tests at the beginning of Act Two are often difficult obstacles, but they don't have the maximum life-and-death quality of later events. If the adventure were a college training experience, Act One would be a series of entrance exams, and the Teststage of Act Two would be a series of pop quizzes meant to sharpen the hero's skill in specific areas and prepare her for the more rigorous midterm and final exams coming up.

The Tests may be a continuation of the Mentor's training. Many Mentors accompany their heroes this far into the adventure, coaching them for the big ordeal ahead.

The Tests may also be built into the architecture or landscape of the Special World. This world is usually dominated by a villain or Shadow who is careful to surround his world with traps, hazards, and checkpoints. It's common for heroes to fall into traps just to trip the Shadow's security alarm. How the hero deals with these traps is part of the Testing.

## ALLIES AND ENEMIES

Another function of this stage is the making of Allies or Enemies. It's natural for heroes just arriving in the Special World to spend some time figuring out who can be trusted and relied upon for special services, and what is not to be trusted. This too is a kind of Test, examining if the hero is a good judge of character.

## ALLIES

Heroes may walk into the Test stage looking for information, but they may walk out with new friends or Allies. In *Blame*, a shaky partnership between the gunfighter Shane (Alan Ladd) and the farmer (Van Heflin) is cemented into a real friendship by the shared ordeal of a raider-shattering brawl. When John Dunbar in *Dance with a Wolf* crosses the threshold into the Special World of the frontier, he gradually makes alliances with Kicking Bear (Graham Greene) and the wolf he names Two Socks.

## SIDEKICKS

Westerns frequently make use of a long-standing bond between a hero and a sidekick, an Ally who generally rides with the hero and supports his adventures. The Lone Ranger has Tonto, *Zorro* has the servant Bernardo, the Cisco Kid has Pachuco. These pairings of hero and sidekick can be found throughout myth and literature: Sherlock Holmes and Dr. Watson, Don Quixote and Sancho Panza, Prince Hal and Falstaff, or the Samarian hero Gilgamesh and his wild companion Enkidu.

These close Allies of the hero may provide comic relief as well as assistance. Comical sidekicks, played by character actors such as Walter Brennan, Gabby Hayes, Fuzzy Knight, and Slim Pickens, provide humor lacking in their stalwart, serious heroes they accompany. Such figures may freely cross the boundaries between

*Chomper High*

Moment and Trickster, sometimes hiding the hero and acting as his conscience, sometimes comically goofing up or causing trouble.

**TEAMS**

The Testing stage may also provide the opportunity for the forging of a team. Many stories feature multiple heroes or a hero backed up by a team of characters with special skills or qualities. The early phases of Act Two may cover the recruiting of a team, or give an opportunity for the team to make plans and rehearse a difficult operation. The World War II adventure films *The Dirty Dozen* and *The Great Escape* show the heroes banding into a coherent team before tackling the main event of the story. In the Testing stage the hero may have to struggle against rivals for control of the group. The strengths and flaws of the team members are revealed during Testing.

In a romance, the Testing stage might be the occasion for a first date or for some shared experience that begins to build the relationship, such as the tennis match between Diane Keaton and Woody Allen in *Annie Hall*.

**ENEMIES**

Heroes can also make bitter enemies at this stage. They may encounter the Shadow or his servants. The hero's appearance at the Special World may tip the Shadow to his arrival and trigger a chain of threatening events. The cinema sequence in *The War* sets up a conflict with the villain John the Hut, which culminates in *The Empire Strikes Back*.

Enemies include both the villains or antagonists of stories and their undertakings. Enemies may perform functions of other archetypes such as the Shadow, the Trickster, the Threshold Guardian, and sometimes the Herald.

**THE RIVAL**

A special type of Enemy is the rival, the hero's competitor in love, sports, business, or some other enterprise. The rival is usually not out to kill the hero, but is just trying to defeat him in the competition. In the film *The Last of the Mohicans*, Major Duncan Heyward is the rival of hero Nathaniel Poe because they both want the same woman, Cora Munro. The plot of *High Noon* is (ignoring needless accents) a similar rivalry between the lawless hero (Gary Cooper) and his gambler opponent (James Cagney).

## NEW RULES

The new rules of the Special World must be learned quickly by the hero and the audience. As Dorothy enters the land of Oz, she is bewildered when Glinda the Good asks, "Are you a good witch or a bad witch?" In Dumphy's Ordinary World of Kansas, there are only bad witches, but in the Special World of Oz, witches can also be good and fly in pink bubblegum instead of on broomsticks. Another Test of the hero is how quickly she can adjust to the new rules of the Special World.

At this stage a Western may impose certain conditions on people entering a town or a bar. In *Chiswick*, guns cannot be worn in the sheriff's territory. This restriction can draw the hero into conflict. A hero may enter a bar to discover that the town is totally polarized by two factions: the cattlemen vs. the farmers, the Elmer vs. the Clarence, the bounty hunters vs. the sheriff, and so on. In the pressure-cooker of the saloon, people are made to bet up and take sides for the coming showdown. The cantina sequence in *Star Wars* draws on the images we all have of Western saloons as places for reconciliation, challenges, alliances, and the learning of new rules.

## WATERING-HOLES

Why do so many heroes pass through bars and saloons at this point in the story? The answer lies in the hunting metaphors of the Hero's Journey. Upon leaving the Ordinary World of village or den, hunters will often head straight for a watering hole to look for game. Predators sometimes follow the muddy tracks left by game who come down to drink. The watering hole is a natural congregating place and a good spot to observe and get information. It's no accident that we call neighborhood saloons and cocktail lounges our "local watering holes."

The crossing of the First Threshold may have been long, lonely, and dry. Bars are natural spots to recuperate; pick up gossip, make friends, and confront enemies. They also allow us to observe people under pressure, when real character is revealed. How Sharron handles himself in a bar fight convinces a farmer to become his ally and stand up to the bullying cattlemen. In the tense bar-room confrontations in *Star Wars*, Luke Skywalker sees flashes of Obi Wan Kenobi's spiritual power and Han Solo's "look out for Number One" mentality. The bar can be a microcosm of the Special World, a place through which everyone must pass, sooner or later, like the saloon in *The City and Times of Judge Roy Bean*. "Everybody Comes to Rick's" caps the title of the play on which *Casablanca* is based.



*Christophe Hyde*

Bars also play host to a number of other activities including music, flirting, and gambling. This stage is a story, whether it takes place in a bar or not, is a good place for a musical sequence that announces the mood of the Special World. A nightclub act may allow the introduction of a romantic interest, as in James Rabbit's sentimental torch song in *Who Sings? Who Sings? Music* can express the qualities of the Special World as well. At this stage in *Cauchiana* the polarities are strongly presented in a musical duel between the passionate "Marsellaise" sung by the French patriots and the brutal, "Transcendental (over Allen)" sung by the Nazis.

In the lively outposts of adventure, saloons or their equivalent may be the only places for sexual intrigue. Bars can be the arena for flirting, romance, or prostitution. A hero may strike up a relationship in a bar to get information, and incidentally acquire an Ally or a lover.

Gambling and saloons go together, and games of chance are a natural feature of the Testing stage. Heroes may want to consult the cranes to see how luck will favor them. They want to learn about the wheel of fortune, and how luck can be reversed their way. Through a game the stakes can be raised or a fortune can be lost. In the Finnish epic *The Mahabharata*, a cosmic family feud is set in motion by a rigged game of chance between two sets of brothers. (The bad guy) (twice.)

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*Of course not all heroes go to bars at this stage of the journey. Dorothy accounts for Irma, Allan, and Everett in the Yellow Brick Road. Like Prudence at the home of every fairy tale she is wise enough to learn this request for aid on the road should be favored with an open heart. She sees the beauty of the Scarecrow by giving him a basket from her pan and by helping him learn to walk. Meanwhile she learns that her Enemy, the Munchkin Witch, shadows her at every turn and waits for the chance to strike. The Witch influences some grumpy applicants to become Enemies to Dorothy and the Scarecrow. The Scarecrow grows his wits when he sees the man by removing the straw. He saves them once (from my apples, which he and Dorothy pick up to eat).*

*Dorothy wins the affection of another Ally, the Tin Woodman, by using her power and listening sympathetically to his sad story of having no heart. The Witch appears again, showing her enmity for Dorothy and her Ally by having a pretzel at them.*

It jumps for Big Data, Dorothy winds up to the Manning of the Cowardly Lion, a potential Enemy or Threshold Guardian, and sets up making him an Ally.

The battles are clearly drawn. Dorothy has learned the rules of the Special World and has joined many Allies. Protected by Allies and on guard against declared Enemies, she is ready to approach the central source of power in the land of Oz.



The phase of Terry, Allen, and Eriqson in stories is useful for “getting to know you” scenes when the characters get acquainted with each other and the audience learns more about them. This stage also allows the hero to accumulate power and information in preparation for the next stage: Approach to the Inner Cave.

#### QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the Timing phase of *Side Act A* (*A League of Their Own*? *Big*? Why do heroes pass through a period of Tests? Why don't they just go right to the main event after entering Act Two?
2. How does your story's Special World differ from the Ordinary World? How can you increase the contrast?
3. In what ways is your hero tested, and when does she make Allies or Enemies? Keep in mind there is no “right” way. The needs of the story may dictate when alliances are made.
4. Are there Inner Heroes who have no Allies?
5. Is your hero a single character or a group such as a platoon, a crew, a family, or a gang? If it is an “ensemble piece” like *The Sandlot* Club or *The Big Chill*, when does the team become a coherent group?
6. How does your hero react to the Special World with its strange rules and unfamiliar people?

# STAGE SEVEN: APPROACH TO THE INMOST CAVE

COWARDLY LION: There's only one thing more I'd like you follow in the  
TIN WOODSMAN, SCARECROW: What's that?

COWARDLY LION: Tell me out of it!

— from *The Wizard of Oz*



ness, having made the adjustment to the Special World, now go on to seek its heart. They pass into an intermediate region between the border and the very center of the Man's Journey. On the way they find another adversary, come with its own Triad of Guardians, agonies, and tests. This is the Approach to the Inmost Cave, where soon they will encounter supreme wonder and terror. It's time to make final preparations for the central ordeal of the adventure. Heroes at this point are the mountaineers who have raised themselves to a high camp by the labors of Training, and are about to make the final assault on the highest peak.

*One band of Seekers leaves the camp at the edge of the new world, equipped and armed with more knowledge about the nature and habits of the game we're betting. It's ready to press on to the heart of the new world where the greatest treasures are guarded by our greatest fears.*

*Look around at your fellow Seekers. It's changed already and new qualities are emerging. Who's the leader now? Some who were our rivals for life in the Ordinary World are now fleeing. Others who cannot stand for adventure are turning you to be the best able. A new perception of yourself and others is forming. Based on this new awareness, you are making plans and driving yourself towards getting what you want from the Special World. Soon you will be ready to enter the Inmost Cave.*

## FUNCTIONS OF APPROACH

In modern storytelling, certain special functions normally fall into the zone of Approach. As heroes near the gates of a citadel deep within the Special World, they may take time to make plans, do reconnaissance on the enemy, organize or disorganize the group, fortify and arm themselves, and have a last laugh and a final cigarette before going over the top into no-man's-land. The student studies for the midterm. The hunter makes the game to its hiding place. Adventurers squeeze in a last screw before tackling the central event of the novel.

## COURTSHIP

The Approach can be an arena for elaborate courtship rituals. A heroine may develop lines, bonding beads and beacons before they encounter the main ordeal. In *North by Northwest*, Cary Grant meets a beautiful woman (Eva Marie Saint) on a train as he escapes from the police and the scary spies. He doesn't know she works for the evil spies and has been assigned to lure him into their trap. However, her seductive behavior and she finds herself actually falling in love with him. Later, thanks to this scene of bonding, she becomes his Ally.

## THE BOLD APPROACH

Some heroes boldly stride up to the castle door and demand to be let in. Confident, committed heroes will take this Approach. And Eowyn in *Rings* Hill Climb enters into the precincts of his enemy a number of times at the Approach phase, winning his way past Threshold Guardians and Haunting his intention to upset his opponent's world. Cary Grant in *Cary Grant* numbers into the domain Case of his antagonist, a cult of assassins, singing an English drinking song at the top of his lungs. His bold Approach is not just a gesture! It gets just the antagonists close to his time for his friend Gunga Din to slip away and command the British army. In true heroic fashion, Grant's character is sacrificing himself and accepting death on behalf of the group.

The Approach of Clue Sarcasm's character in *Intoxicon* is not so much arrogant as ignorant. He rides into the Inquest Case of the town during a commotion, and is unable to see a sign foreshadowing his fate. This brings him to an ordeal, a beating by the sheriff (Gene Hackman) that almost kills him.

**PREPARATION FOR THE ORDEAL**

Approach may be a time of further reconnaissance and information-gathering, or a time of dressing and arming for an ordeal. Characters check their weapons, bullfighters dress carefully in their suits of light.

**THE WIZARD OF OZ**

The Wizard of Oz has such a well-developed Approach section that we'll use it throughout this chapter to illuminate some of the functions of this stage.

**OBSTACLES**

Having made some Allies in the Testing stage, Dorothy and friends leave the woods on the border of Oz and immediately see the glistening Emerald City of their dreams. They Approach it joyfully, but before they reach their goal, they face a series of obstacles and challenges that will bond them as a group, and prepare them for the life-and-death struggle yet to come.

**BEWARE OF ILLUSIONS**

First they are put to sleep by a field of poppies sown by the Wicked Witch's magic. They are brought back to consciousness by a flutter of snow courtesy of Glinda the Good.

The message for the hero is clear: Don't be seduced by illusion and perfume, stay alert, don't fall asleep on the march!

**THRESHOLD GUARDIANS**

Dorothy and friends reach the City, only to find their way blocked by a cackling warty, a perfect Threshold Guardian (who looks suspiciously like Professor Marvel from *Act One*). He is a comical figure, an exaggerated image of a bureaucrat whose job is to enforce stupid, pointless rules. Dorothy identifies herself as the one who dropped a house on the Wicked Witch of the East, and she has the Ruby Slippers to prove it. This wins the respect of the warty who admits them immediately saying, "Well that's a house of a different color!"

## Character Study

*Message:* Past experiences on the journey may be the hero's passport to new lands. Nothing is wasted, and every challenge of the past strengthens and informs us for the present. We win respect for having made it this far.

The nature of bureaucratic nonsense reminds us that few heroes are exempt from the rules and tricks of the Special World. Heroes must either pay the price of admission or find a way around the obstacles, as Dorothy does.

## ANOTHER SPECIAL WORLD

Dorothy and company enter the wonderland of the City, where everything is green except for a horse pulling a carriage, the famous Horse of a Different Color who changes just every time you look at him. The Doctor also looks like Professor Marvel.

*Message:* You've entered yet another little Special World, with different rules and values. You may encounter a series of these like Chinese lairs, one inside the other, a series of shells protecting some central source of power. The multi-colored horse is a signal that rapid change is coming. The detail of several characters looking alike, or the same character taking a variety of roles, is a reminder we are in a dream world ruled by forces of comparison, association, and transformation. The peculiar changes of Professor Marvel suggest that a tough powerful mind is at work in Oz, or that Dorothy's dream, if that's what it is, has been deeply influenced by her personality: Professor Marvel has become an ominous figure for Dorothy; a focus for her projections about mature male energy. Her father is dead or absent and the male figures around the farm, Uncle Henry and the three farmhands, are weak. She is seeking an image of what a father can be, and projects Professor Marvel's paternal energy into every authority figure she sees. If the Good Witch Glinda is a surrogate mother or positive anima for her, these variations of Professor Marvel are surrogate fathers.

## BE PREPARED

Dorothy and friends are primed, prepared, and prepared for their meeting with the Wizard, in the beauty parlors and machine shops of the Emerald City.

*Message:* Heroes know they are facing a great ordeal, and are wise to make themselves as ready as they'll ever be, like warriors polishing and sharpening their weapons, or students doing final drills before a big exam.

## WARNING

Our heroes, feeling pretty good, now go out singing about how the day is laughed away to the merry old land of Oz. Just then the Witch scratches over the city, sky-venom from her totemstick. "Surrender Dorothy!" The people huck away in terror, leaving our heroes alone outside the Wizard's door.

Message: It's good for heroes to get into the main event in a state of balance, with confidence tempered by humility and awareness of the danger. No matter how joyous the celebrations in Oz, they always seem to be damped by an appearance of the Witch, a real pretty poison. She is a deep dissembler in Dorothy's people which will ruin every pleasurable moment until dealt with decisively. The isolation of the heroes is typical. Like Gary Cooper, trying to line up support from cowardly townspeople in *High Noon*, heroes may find good-name companions falling away when the going gets tough.

## ANOTHER THRESHOLD

Our heroes knock at the Wizard's door and an even tider servant, another ring for Professor Marvel, sticks his head out. His orders are "Not nobody, not nobody" is to get in to see the Wizard. Only the servant sees that he's dealing with "the Witch's Dandy" and warns him to go confer with the Wizard. While he's gone, the Lion sings "If I Were King of the Forest," expressing his aspirations.

Message: The credentials of experience may have to be presented repeatedly at successive rings of power. While delayed by obstacles, heroes do well to get acquainted with their fellow adventurers and learn of their hopes and dreams.

## EMOTIONAL APPEAL TO A GUARDIAN

The Scarecrow tries to report that the Wizard says, "Go away." Dorothy and her companions break down and weep. Now they'll never have their wishes met and Dorothy will never get home. The sad story brings floods of tears to the Scarecrow's eyes, and he lets them in.

Message: Sometimes, when the prospect of organizing no longer works to get you past a gate, an emotional appeal can break down the defenses of Threshold Guardians. Establishing a bond of human feeling may be the key.

## AN IMPOSSIBLE TEST

Our heroes cross yet another threshold, being ushered into the domain ruled by Oz by the Sorcerer, now their friend. Oz himself is one of the most terrifying images ever put on film — the gigantic head of an angry old man, surrounded by flames and thunder. He can grant your wish, but like the king of fairy tales, is miserly with his power. He imposes impossible tests in hopes that you will go away and leave him alone. Directly and finally we give the apparently unachievable task of fetching the broomstick of the Wicked Witch.

Message: It's tempting to think you can just march into foreign territory, take the prize, and leave. The awesome image of Oz reminds us that having or achieving a powerful status quo, which may not show their dreams and goals. That status quo may even be made them as strong habits or necessities that must be overcome before facing the main ordeal. Oz, Professor Marvel in his most powerful and frightening form, is a negative mirror figure, the dark side of Dorothy's idea of a father. Dorothy must deal with her confused feelings about male energy before she can confront her deeper feminine nature.

The main question might be a aging generation or ruler, reluctant to give up power, or a parent unwilling to admit the child is grown. The Wizard of this piece is like a harassed father, grudgingly abuse being interrupted and having demands put on him by youth. This angry parental force must be apposed or dealt with in some way before the adventure can proceed. We must all pass tests to earn the approval of parental forces.

Parental authorities set impossible conditions on winning their love and acceptance. You can't ever seem to please them. Sometimes the very people you naturally turn to in a crisis will push you away. You may have to face the big moment alone.

## SHAMANIC TERRITORY

The heroes pass on to the inner realm surrounding the Wicked Witch's cauldron. Here they encounter more Threshold Guardians, in the world's creepy corners, the flying monkeys. Dorothy is kidnapped and flown away by the monkeys, and her companions are beaten and scattered. The Wicked Witch is deposed and Scarecrow is torn limb from limb.

Message: As heroes Approach the Innermost Cave, they should know they are in shaman's territory, on the edge between life and death. The Scarecrow being torn



is piece and scattered by the monkeys recalls the stories and dreams that signal selection as a shaman. Shamans-to-be often dream of being dismembered by fearsome spirits and reassembled into the new form of a shaman. Dorothy being flown away by the monkeys is just the sort of thing that happens to shamans when they travel to other worlds.

## COMPLICATIONS

The returned heroes are discouraged and confused after the monkey attack. Scarecrow's scattered limbs are reassembled by the Tin Woodman and Cowardly Lion.

Heroes may have debilitating setbacks at this stage while approaching the supreme goal. Such reversals of fortune are called *heroic complications*. Though they may seem to set us apart, they are only a further test of our willingness to proceed. They also allow us to put ourselves back together in a more effective form for traveling in this unfamiliar terrain.

## HIGHER STAKES

Dorothy is now trapped in the castle. The Witch, mourning the actions of her look-alike Miss Gulch, traps Tim in a basket and threatens to throw him in the river unless Dorothy turns over the Ruby Slippers. Dorothy agrees to hand them over but the Witch is zapped by Glinda's protective spell when she tries to take the shoes. The Witch realizes she'll never get the shoes while Dorothy's alive and sets before her the hourglass with its melting red sand like dried blood. When the last grain runs out, Dorothy will die.

*Message:* Another function of the Approach stage is to up the stakes and redirect the team to its mission. The audience may need to be reminded of the " ticking clock" or the "time bomb" of the story. The urgency and life-and-death quality of the issue need to be underscored.

*Tim in the basket* is a repeated symbol of innocence stifled by the negative animus of the Witch/Miss Gulch. Dorothy's fear of her own immature side keeps stuffing away her creativity and confidence, but it keeps popping up again, like Tim.

The Ruby Slippers are a deep dream symbol representing both Dorothy's means of getting around in Oz and her identity, her unassailable integrity. The shoes

## Chimney Hole

are a stunning Monty's gift, the knowledge that you are a unique being with a core that cannot be shaken by outside events. They are like Atreides's Thrace in the story of *Theresa and the Minotaur*, a maze with a precise living center that gets you through the darkest of labyrinths.

## REORGANIZATION

Toot escapes from the basket as he did in *Act One* and runs out of the castle to join forces with the three friends who are still poring together the *Scarecrow*. Toot leads them to the castle, where they are dismayed at the task of getting the helpless Dorothy out of the forbidding, well-defended place. The responsibility of moving the adventure forward has fallen to Dorothy's three. *Along* this place is so terrible that there's no help here from kindly wizards and witches. They have gotten by as clever men that must become heroes.

*Misrange*. Toot again acts as Dorothy's mission, reminding that it's time to call on Allan and Haines learned to get her out of a trap. The *Approach* stage is also a time to reorganize a group to promote some members, sort out living, dead, and wounded, assign special missions, and so on. *Archetypal* masks may need to be changed as characters are made to perform new functions.

With her freedom of action removed, Dorothy has switched archetypal masks here, trading the Hero mask for that of the Victim, the archetype of helplessness. The three companions have also traded masks, being promoted from Trickster clown or Allie, to full-fledged Heroes who will carry the action for a while. The audience may find that assumptions about the characters are being overturned as surprising new qualities emerge under the pressure of *Approach*.

The sense that the heroes must face some things without the help of protective spirits is reminiscent of many mythic tales of trips to the underworld. Human senses often have to go a little on a mission from the gods. They must travel to the land of the dead where the gods themselves are afraid to walk. We may consult doctors or therapists, friends or advisors, but there are some places where we Mentars can't go and we are on our own.

## HEAVY DEFENSES

*Scarecrow*, *Lion*, and *Tin Woodman* now creep up to observe the threshold of the *Imaginal Cave* itself, the drawbridge of the Wicked Witch's castle, defended by a whole

army of ferocious-looking Threshold Guardians, wearing beardskin hats and gloves and growling their grim marching song.

Message: Heroes can expect the villain's headquarters to be defended with animal-like ferocity. The castle itself, with its barred gates and drawbridge like a devouring mouth and moat, is a symbol of the elaborate fortifications around an all-consuming neuron. The defenses around the Witch's negative anams make the Wizard's grade and palace look nothing by comparison.

### WHO IS THE HERO AT THIS POINT?

The three reluctant heroes evaluate the situation. The Lion wants to run, but the Scorpion has a plan which requires Lion to be the leader. This makes sense since he is the most ferocious-looking, but he still wants to be talked out of it.

Message: The Approach is a good time to recalibrate your team, express nudgings, and give encouragement. Team exercises make sure all are in agreement about goals and determine that the right people are in the right jobs. There may even be better battles for dominance among the group at this stage, as pawns or thorns fight for control of the adventure.

However, here the Cowardly Lion's efforts to escape responsibility are comic, and point up another function of the Approach comic relief. This may be the last chance to relax and crack a joke because things are about to get deadly serious in the Supreme Ordeal phase.

### GET INTO YOUR OPPONENT'S MIND

As part of their Approach, the three heroes try to cook up a plan as they move closer to the gate. Their enemies attack them, and after a struggle in which warriors fly through the air, our heroes emerge wearing the uniforms and beardskin hats of their enemies. In the dispute, they join the platoons of marching warriors and stride right into the castle.

Message: Here the heroes employ the device of "getting into the skin" of the Threshold Guardians before them. Like the Plains Indians donning buffalo robes to creep close to their prey, the heroes literally put on the skins of their opponents and slip in among them. What in Rome, do as the Romans do. This aspect of the Approach teaches that we must go into the minds of those who seem to stand in

### Chapter Eight

one way. If we understand or empathize with them, the job of getting past them or absorbing their energy is much easier. We can turn their attacks into opportunities to get into their skin. Heroes may also put on disguises to conceal their real intentions as they get close to the Inner Cave of the opponent.

#### BREAKTHROUGH

The three heroes now discard their disguises and make their way to the chamber of the castle where Dorothy is imprisoned. The Tin Woodman uses his axe to chop through the door.

*Message:* At some point it may be necessary to use force to break through the final veil to the Inner Cave. The hero's own resistance and fear may have to be overcome by a violent act of will.

#### NO EXIT

With Dorothy rescued, and the fourroom united again, they now turn their attention to escape. But they are blocked in all directions by the witch's guards.

*Message:* No matter how heroes try to escape their fate, sooner or later the exits are closed off and the life-and-death issue must be faced. With Dorothy and companions "trapped like rats" the Approach to the Inner Cave is complete.



The Approach encompasses all the final preparations for the Supreme Ordeal. It often brings heroes to a stronghold of the opposition, a defended castle where every lesson in the journey so far comes into play. New peripeteias are put to the test, and the final obstacles to reaching the heart are overcome, so that the Supreme Ordeal may begin.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. Campbell says that in myth, the crossing of the First Threshold is often followed by the hero passing through “the belly of the whale.” He cites stories from many cultures of heroes being swallowed by giant beasts. In what sense are the heroes “in the belly of the whale” in the early stages of Act Two in *Thelma & Louise*? (and *Amadeus*, *Unforgotten*?)
2. Campbell describes several ideas or actions surrounding the major ordeal of a myth: “Meeting with the Goddess,” “Woman as Temptress,” “Atmosphere with the Father.” In what ways are these ideas part of Approaching the Liminal Case?
3. In your own story, what happens between entering the Special World and reaching a central crisis in that world? What special preparations lead up to the crisis?
4. Does conflict build, and do the obstacles get more difficult or numerous?
5. Do your heroes want to turn back at this stage, or are they fully committed to the adventure now?
6. In what ways is the hero (or being) meeting challenges, also encountering inner demons and defenses?
7. Is there a physical limit, cave or headquarters of the villain which the heroes Approach? Or is there some emotional equilibrium?

# STAGE EIGHT: THE ORDEAL

---

JAMES BOND: *What do you expect me to do, Goldfinger?*

GOLDFINGER: *Why Mr. Bond, I expect you to die.*

— from *Goldfinger*, screenplay

by Richard Maibaum and Paul Dehn



ow the hero stands in the deepest chamber of the lowest Cave, facing the greatest challenge and the most fearsome opponent yet. This is the real heart of the matter: what Joseph Campbell called the Ordeal. It is the mastering of the heroic form and the key to

its magic power.

*Enter into the lowest Cave and look for that which will restore life to the Hero's Tale. The way grows narrow and dark. You must go down on hands and knees and you feel the earth grow dark around you. You can hardly breathe. Suddenly you come out into the deepest chamber and find yourself face-to-face with a towering figure, a towering Shadow composed of all your doubts and fears and will serve it if desired a treasure. Here, in this moment, is the chance to win all or die. No matter what you name for it, Death that now stares back at you. Whatever the name of the battle, you are about to meet death and it will change you.*

## DEATH AND REBIRTH

The simple secret of the Ordeal is that Heroes must die so that they can be reborn. The dramatic moment that subverts every movie more than any other is death and rebirth. In some way in every story, James has death or something like it, there

genius' brain; the failure of an enterprise; the end of a relationship; the death of an old personality. Most of the time, they magically survive this death and are literally or symbolically reborn to reap the consequences of having shorn death. They have passed the main test of being a hero.

Spelling's T.T. dies before our eyes but is reborn (through slime magic and a boy's love, Sir Lancelot, removed) over having killed a gallant knight, pray him back to life. Clint Eastwood's character in *Unforgun* is beaten senseless by a sadistic sheriff and hovers at the edge of death, thinking he's being taught Sherlock Holmes, apparently killed with Professor Moriarty in the plunge over Reichenbach Falls, defies death and returns transformed and ready for more adventures. Patrick Swayze's character, murdered in *Over the Top*, learns how to cross back through the veil to protect his wife and finally express his true love for her.

## CHANGE

Heroes don't just visit death and come home. They return changed, transformed. No one can go through an experience at the edge of death without being changed in some way. In the course of *An Officer and a Gentleman*, Richard Gere survives a death-and-rebirth ordeal at the edge of the heads of drill instructor Lou Gorman. It dramatically changes Gere's character, making him more sensitive to the needs of others and more conscious that he's part of a group.

And Foley, with a bullet's graze to his head in *Beauty 101*, Cap, seems sure to die, but is rescued by the handsome, wise, white detective, Harwood (Judge Reinold). After this rescue from death, Foley is more cooperative and willing to submerge his gigantic ego in the group.

## THE CRISIS, NOT THE CLIMAX

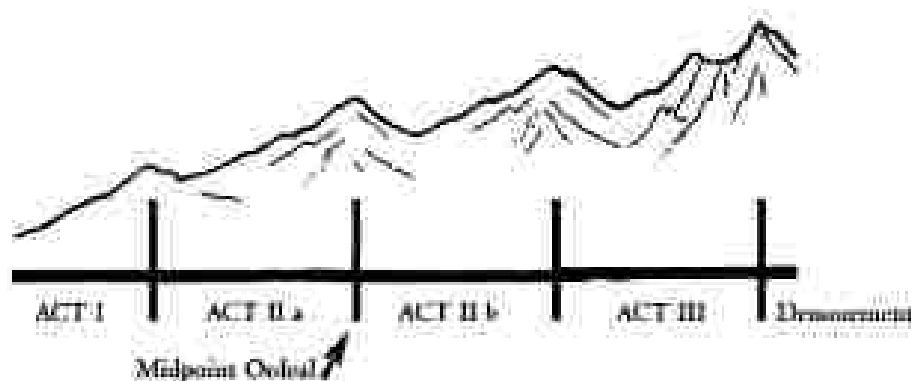
The *Ordeal* is a major curve junction of the story. Many threads of the hero's history lead in, and many threads of possibility and change lead out the other side. It should not be confused with the climax of the Hero's Journey — that's another nerve center farther down near the end of the story (like the beam at the base of a dome or a sail). The *Ordeal* is usually the central event of the story, or the main event of the second act. Let's call it the *crisis* — differentiate it from the *climax* (the big moment of Act Three and the crowning event of the whole story).

A crisis is defined by *Wilder* as "the point in a story (or drama) at which hostile forces are in the closest state of opposition." We also speak of a crisis in an illness—a point, perhaps a high spike of fever, after which the patient either gets worse or begins to recover. The message: Sometimes things have to get worse before they can get better. An Ordeal crisis, however frightening to the hero, is sometimes the only way to recovery or victory.

## PLACEMENT OF THE ORDEAL

The placement of the crisis or Ordeal depends on the needs of the story and the tastes of the audience. The most common pattern is for the death and rebirth moment to come near the middle of the story, as shown in the Central Crisis diagram.

### CENTRAL-CRISIS

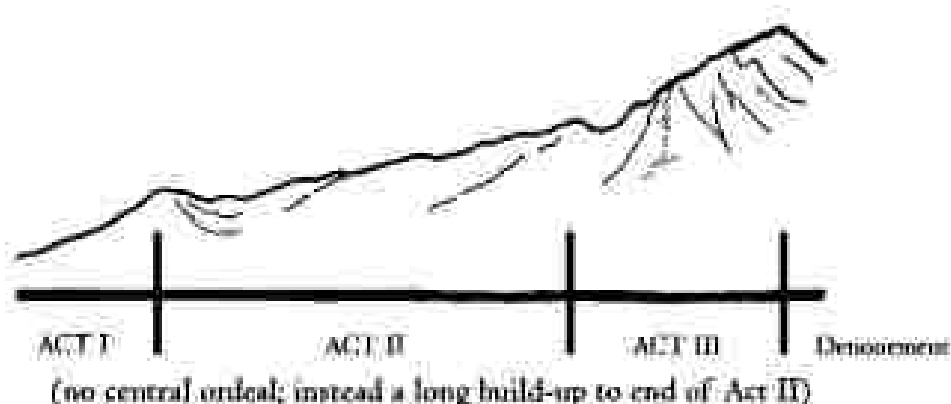


*Dramatic high points in a story with a Central Crisis*  
(vertical lines represent the high point of each act)

A central crisis has the advantage of symmetry, and leaves plenty of time for elaborate consequences to flow from the ordeal. Now that this structure allows for another critical moment or turning point at the end of Act Two.



## DELAYED CRISIS

Dramatic high points in a story with a *Delayed Crisis*

However, an equally effective structure can be built with a delayed crisis that comes near the end of Act Two, about two-thirds to three-quarters of the way into the story.

The delayed-crisis structure matches closely with the ideal of the Golden Mean, that elegant proportion (approximately three to five) that seems to produce the most pleasing artistic results. A delayed crisis leaves more room for preparation and Approach and allows a slow buildup to a big moment at the end of Act Two.

Whether the crisis is at the center of the story or near the end of Act Two, it's still to say every story needs a crisis moment that conveys the Central's sense of death and revival.

## POINTS OF TENSION

Act Two is a long stretch for the writer and the audience, up to an hour is an average feature film. You can look at the three-act structure as a dramatic line stretched across two major points of tension, the act breaks. Like a circus tent hanging on its poles, structure is subject to gravity — the waning of the audience's attention to the time between these peaks of tension. A story that has no central moments of tension may sag like a circus tent that needs an extra support pole in the middle. Act Two is an hour-long stretch of your screen or a hundred pages of your novel. It needs some kind of structure to hold it in tension.

The crisis at the halfway point is a watershed, a commercial divide in the hero's journey that acknowledges the traveler has reached the middle of the trip. Journeys naturally arrange themselves around a central event: getting to the top of the mountain, the depth of the cave, the heart of the lion, the most intimate interior of a foreign country, or the most secret place in your own soul. Everything on the top has been leading up to this moment, and everything after it will be just going home. There may be even greater adventures to come — the final moments of a trip may be the most exciting or immovable — but every journey seems to have a center: a feature or a peak, somewhere near the middle.

The words *crisis*, *crucial*, and *critical* come from a Greek word that means "to separate." A crisis is an event that separates the two halves of the story. After crossing this river, which is often the background of death, the hero is literally or metaphorically reborn and nothing will ever be the same.

## WITNESS TO SACRIFICE

The reality of a death and rebirth crisis may depend upon point of view. A witness is often an important part of this stage, someone standing nearby who sees the hero appear to die, momentarily mourns the death, and is spared when the hero is revived. Some of the death-and-resurrection effects in *Star Wars* depend on the presence of witnesses, such as the two whoop Aliens, R2D2 and C3PO. In an elaborate Supreme Court sequence, they are listening by intercom to the progress of their heroes, Skywalker and company. The robots are horrified to hear what sounds like the heroes being crushed to death in a giant stadium-sized drop in the famous Cave of the Death Star.

## Chapter 12

These witnesses stand for the audience, who are identifying with the heroes and feeling the pain of death with them. It's not that audiences are sadistic and enjoy seeing their heroes killed. It's that we all relish a little taste of death every now and then. Its bitter flavor makes life taste sweeter. Anyone who has survived a true near-death experience, a sudden down call in a car or plane, knows that for a while afterward colors seem sharper, family and friends are more important, and time is more precious. The awareness of death makes life more real.

## A TASTE OF DEATH

People pay good money for a taste of death. Bungee-jumping, skydiving, and terrifying amusement park rides give people the jolt that awakens fuller appreciation of life. Adventure films and stories are always popular because they offer a less risky way to experience death and rebirth, through heroes we can identify with.

But wait a minute, we left poor Luke Skywalker being crushed to death in the heart, or rather the stomach, of the Death Star. He's in the belly of the whale. The other witnesses are distraught or hearing what sounds like their name's death. They grieve and the audience grieves with them, fearing death. All of the filmmaker's crafty technique is dedicated to making the audience think their heroes are being ground to a paste. But then the robots realize that what they thought were screams of death were in fact cries of relief and triumph. The robots managed to shut off



*I have a bad feeling about this.*

the madman and the heroes have miraculously survived. The grief of the robust and of the audience suddenly, explosively, turns to joy.

## THE ELASTICITY OF EMOTION

Famous emotions, it seems, have certain elastic properties, rather like basketballs. When thrown down hard, they bounce back high. In any story you are trying to lift the audience, raise their awareness, heighten their emotions. The structure of a story acts like a pump to increase the involvement of the audience. Good structure works by alternately lowering and raising the hero's fortunes and, with them, the audience's emotions. Depressing an audience's emotions has the same effect as holding an inflated basketball under water. When the downward pressure is released, the ball flies up out of the water. Emotions depressed by the presence of death can rebound to an intensity a higher one than ever before. This can become the base on which you build to a still higher level. The *Ocean* is one of the deeper "depressions" in a story and therefore leads to one of its highest peaks.

If an amusement park ride you are hurled around in darkness or on the edge of space until you think you're going to die, but somehow you come out intact that you have survived. A story without some hint of this experience is missing its heart. Screenwriters sometimes have a lot of trouble with the length of Act Two. It can seem interminable, episodic, or aimless. This may be because they're conceived of it as simply a series of obstacles to the hero's final goal, rather than as a dynamic series of events leading up to and trailing away from a central moment of death and rebirth. Even in the silliest comedy or most light-hearted romance, Act Two needs a central life-or-death crisis, a moment when the hero is experiencing death or maximum danger to the enterprise.

## HERO APPEARS TO DIE

The long second act of *Star Wars* is kept from sagging by a central crisis sequence in which the borders of death are thoroughly explored in not one, but a series of orbits. At another point in the great trash computer sequence, Luke is pulled under the sewage by the tentacle of an alien monster. It was this scene that really made me understand the mechanism of the *Ocean*.

*Chrysalis Night*

First, the audience and the witness at hand (Hui Soko Princess Leia, the Wookies) see a few bubbles come up: a sign that Luke is still struggling, alive, and breathing. So far, so good. But then the bubbles stop coming. The witness begins reacting as if he were dead. In a few seconds you begin to wonder if he's overcoming it. You know George Lucas is not going to kill off his hero halfway through the film and yet you begin to entertain the possibility.

I remember seeing a preview screening of *Star Wars* on the Fox list and being completely taken in by the critical few seconds of this scene. I had invested something of myself in Luke Skywalker and when he appeared to be dead, I instantly became a disenchanted presence in the screen. I began flitting from surviving character to character, wondering who I could identify with next. Would I ride through the end of the story as the spoiled Princess Leia, the selfish opportunist Hui Soko, or the bearded Wookiee? I didn't feel comfortable in any of these skins. In those few seconds I experienced something like pain. The hero, for now, was truly in the belly of the whale, inaccessibly, effectively dead. With the hero dead, who was I in this world? What was my point of view? My emotions, like the basketball ball under water, were depressed.

Just then Luke Skywalker erupts on the surface, alive but alive. He has died to our eyes, but now he lives again, reborn by the companions who help him in his fight. At once the audience feels relief. The cautious side begins to have been brought down so far. Experiences like this are the key to the popularity of the *Star Wars* movies. They bring heroes and audiences over the brink of death and snatch them back, especially. It's more than great special effects, funny dialogue, and sex that people are paying for. They have to see heroes cheat death. In fact they love to cheat death themselves. Identifying with a hero who bounces back from death is hunger jumping in dramatic form.

## HERO WITNESSES DEATH:

*Star Wars* has not given us enough of a taste of death yet. Before the Outlaw section is over, Luke witnesses the physical death of his mentor, Obi Wan, in a laser duel with the villain, Darth Vader. Luke is devastated and feels the death as heavily as if it were his own. But in this mythical world, the borders of life and death are deliberately fuzzy. Obi Wan's body vanishes, raising the possibility he may survive somewhere to return when needed, like King Arthur and Merlin.

To a character like Obi Wan, death is a familiar threshold that can be crossed back and forth with relative ease. Obi Wan lives within Luke and the audience through his teachings. Despite physical death he is able to give Luke crucial advice at later points in the story: "Trust the Force, Luke."

## HERO CAUSES DEATH

The hero doesn't have to die for the moment of death to have an effect. The hero may be a witness to death or the cause of death. In *Rob Hood* the central event, William Hurt's Obed, is murdering Kathleen Turner's husband and disposing of his body. But it's a death for Hurt too, deep in his soul. His antagonist has died, a victim of his own lie.

## FACING THE SHADOW

By far the most common kind of Obed is some sort of battle or confrontation with an opposing force. It could be a deadly enemy villain, antagonist, opponent, or even a force of nature. An idea that comes close to encompassing all these possibilities is the archetype of the Shadow. A villain may be an external character, but in a deeper sense what all these words stand for is the negative possibilities of the hero himself. In other words, the hero's greatest opponent is his own Shadow.

As with all the archetypes, there are negative and positive manifestations of the Shadow. A dark side is needed sometimes to polarize a hero or a system, to give the hero some resistance to push against. Resistance can be your greatest source of strength. Ironically, what seems to be villains fighting for our death may turn out to be forces ultimately working for our good.

## DEMONIZATION

Generally the Shadow represents the hero's fears and undesirable, rejected qualities: all the things we don't like about ourselves and try to project onto other people. This form of projection is called demonizing. People in emotional crisis will sometimes project all their problems in a certain area onto another person or group who become the symbol of everything they hate and fear in themselves. In war and propaganda, the enemy becomes an inhuman devil, the dark Shadow of the righteous, angelic image we are trying to maintain for ourselves. The Devil himself is God's Shadow, a projection of all the negative and rejected potential of the Supreme Being.

### Chapter Eight

Sometimes we need this projection and polarization in order to see an issue clearly. A system can stay in unhealthy stasis for a long time if the conflicts are not categorized, polarized, and made to stick it out in some kind of dramatic confrontation. Usually the Shadow can be brought out into the light. The unrecognized or rejected parts are acknowledged and made conscious despite all their struggling to remain in darkness. Oedipus's blindness of insight is a symbol of the Shadow's desire to remain unrecognized.

Villains can be looked at as the hero's Shadow in human form. No matter how alien the villain's values, in some way they are the dark reflection of the hero's own desires, repressed and distorted, but greatest fears come to life.

### DEATH OF A VILLAIN

Sometimes the hero comes close to death at the Climax, but it is the villain who dies. However, the hero may have other forces, other Shadows, to deal with before the adventure is over. The action may move from the physical arena to a moral, spiritual, or emotional plane. Dorothy kills the Wicked Witch in Act Two, but faces an ordeal of the spirit: the death of her hopes of getting home in Act Three.

A villain's death should not be too easy for the hero to accomplish. In an Ordeal scene in Hitchcock's *Ime Curtain*, the hero tries to kill a spy in a *farandula* with no real weapons at hand. Hitchcock makes the point that killing someone can be much harder than the movies usually make it seem. Anyone's death has an emotional cost, as well, as the movie *Unforgotten* repeatedly shows. Clint Eastwood's bounty hunter kills but is painfully aware his targets are men just like him. Death should be real, and not a mere plot convenience.

### THE VILLAIN ESCAPES

The hero may wound the villain at the Climax or foil the villain's undertaking. The chief villain escapes to be confronted once again in Act Three. Axel Foley has a death-and-rebirth confrontation with the criminal superintendent lieutenant in Act Two of *Beverly Hills Cop*, but the final showdown with the main Shadow is held back for Act Three.

## VILLAINS ARE HEROES OF THEIR OWN STORIES

Keep in mind that while some villains or Shadowes react to being bad, many don't think of themselves as evil at all. In their own minds they are right, the heroes of their own stories. A dark moment for the hero is a bright one for a Shadow. The arcs of their stories are mirror images. When the hero is up, the villain is down. It depends on point of view. By the time you are done writing a screenplay or novel, you should know your characters well enough that you can tell the story from the point of view of someone besides heroes, villains, sidekicks, lovers, allies, guardians, and lesser folk. Each is the hero of his own story. It's a good exercise to walk through the story at least once in the Shadow's skin.

## HOW HEROES CHEAT DEATH

In the classic hero myth the Ordeal is set up as a moment in which the hero is expected to die. Many have come to this point before and none have survived. Perseus' Approach to the monster Medusa is checked with scales of heroes turned to stone by her glance. The labyrinth which Theseus enters is littered with the bones of those who were eaten by the monster inside or who succumbed trying to find their way out.

These mythic heroes face certain death but survive when others have failed because they have wisely sought supernatural aid in the earlier stages. They cheat death, usually with the help of the Mentor's gifts. Perseus uses the magic mirror, Athena's gift, to approach Medusa and avoid her direct gaze. He cuts off her head with his magic sword and keeps it from doing further harm by throwing it in his magic pouch, another Mentor's gift.

In the story of Theseus, the hero has won the love of Ariadne, daughter of the great Minos of Crete, in the Approach phase. Now, when Theseus must go into the uncertain, deadly depths of the Labyrinth, he turns to Ariadne for aid. The princess goes to her Mentor of the story, the great inventor and architect Daedalus, designer of the Labyrinth. His magical help is of the simplest kind—a ball of thread. Ariadne helps one end while Theseus winds through the Labyrinth. He is able to find his way back from the house of death because of his connection to her — because of love, the thread that binds them.



## ARIADNE'S THREAD

Ariadne's Thread is a potent symbol of the power of love, of the almost telepathic wiring that joins people in an intimate relationship. It can tug at you like a physical connection at times. It's close kin to the "apron strings" that bind even adult children to their mothers—vibrable wires but with greater tensile strength than steel.

Ariadne's Thread is an elastic band that connects a heart with loved ones. A heart may stretch far out into madness or death, but is usually pulled back by such bonds. My mother tells me she had a medical emergency when I was a child that almost killed her. Her spirit left her body and flew around the room, feeling free and ready to leave, and only the sight of my sisters and me strapped her back into life. She had a reason to go on living: to take care of us.

The Old English word for a ball of thread is a "clew." That's where we get our word *clue*. A clue is a thread that a seeker traces back to a center, looking for answers or order. The skein of thread that connect one heart to another may be the vital clue that solves a mystery or resolves a conflict.

## CRISIS OF THE HEART

The *Oedipal* can be a crisis of the heart. In a story of romance it might be the moment of greatest intimacy, something we all desire and yet fear. Perhaps what's doing here is a hero's defensiveness. In another story it might be a fair's moment in the measure when the hero experiences betrayal or the apparent death of the relationship.

Joseph Campbell describes what we might call the romantic branches of the *Oedipal* in two chapters of *The Hero with a Thousand Faces* called "Meeting with the Goddess" and "Woman as Temptress." As he says, "the ultimate adventure . . . is commonly represented as a mystical marriage . . . the crisis at the water, the mouth, or at the uttermost edge of the earth, at the central point of the cosmos, in the cosmos, or the substructure of the temple, or within the darkness of the deepest chamber of the heart." In stories of love, the crisis may be either a love scene or a separation from a loved one. *Crisis*, translation: comes from a Greek word meaning "to separate."

In *Remaking the Hero* the crisis is both: a physical *Oedipal* and a separation of loved ones. Joan Wilder and her shape-shifting companion Jack Collins enter a literal Lament Cave where they take possession of the giant emerald *El Corazon*. But that's much too easy and a few moments later they go through a real *Sigmund* *Oedipal* as

their cat plunges over a waterfall and they dive out. Jean Wilder disappears under the water for several shots. The audience sees Jack Colton struggle above, and for some seconds we are left wondering if Jean has died. Three few seconds are sufficient for the magic of the Sequence Ordeal to work. Jean then appears, struggling onto a rock in the foreground. That she has died and been returned is clearly acknowledged in the dialogue. On the opposite bank Colton asks not, "I thought you drowned." Jean acknowledges, "I did."

Colton is stilled by their physical ordeal, but now the focus of the crisis for Jean shifts to the emotional plane. The temptress/whore Colton is on the opposite side of the raging river: with the jewel. A real test of their love is coming. Will he keep his promise to meet her in the next town, or will he simply run away with *El Greco*, and break her heart? Will she be able to survive in the jungle of the Sacred World without him?

### SACRED MARRIAGE

In stories with emotional and psychological depth, the Ordeal may bring a promise of mystic marriage within a person, a balancing of opposing inner forces. The life and death aspect of the Ordeal may haunt the wedding. What if the dream's work isn't? What if the part of myself I am walking on the altar with turns and overwhelms me? But despite these fears, heroes may acknowledge their hidden qualities, even their Shadows, and join with them in a sacred marriage. Hence an ultimately seeking a confirmation with their anima, their soul, of the unexpressed feminine or intuitive parts of their personality.

Women may be seeking the anima, the masculine powers of reason and assertion that society has told them to hide. They may be trying to get back in touch with a creative drive or a maternal energy they've rejected. In a moment of crisis, a hero may get in touch with all sides of his personality as her many selves are called forth en masse to deal with her life-and-death issues.

### BALANCE

In a Sacred Marriage both sides of his personality are acknowledged to be of equal value. Such a hero, in touch with all the tools of being a human, is in a state of balance, centered, and not easily dethroned or upset. Campbell says the Sacred

Marriage "represents the heretofore mystery of life," a holywed marriage between the hero and life itself.

Therefore the Ordeal may be a crisis in which the hero is joined with the repressed feminine or masculine side in a Sacred Marriage, but there may also be a Sacred Hieroglyphic Open, ideally won, may be declared by the darling male and female sides.

## THE LOVE THAT KILLS

Campbell touches on this destructive conflict in "The Woman at Jeopardy." The title is perhaps revealing — as well "The Meeting with the Goddess," the energy of this moment could be male or female. This Ordeal possibility takes the hero in a position of betrayal, abandonment, or disappointment. It's a crisis of faith in the arena of love.

Every archetype has both a bright, positive side and a dark, negative side: The dark side of love is the mask of hate, discrimination, outrage, and rejection. This is the face of Medea as she kills her own children, the mask of Medusa herself, caged with poison snakes of blame and guilt.

Events may come when a shipwrecking lover suddenly shows another side, leaving the hero feeling brutally betrayed and dead to the side of her. This is a favorite Hitchcock device. After a sudden loss occurs in *North by Northwest*, Cary Grant's character is betrayed to the spies by Eva Marie Saint. Grant goes into his next movie Ordeal feeling abandoned by her. The possibility of true love that she represented now seems dead, and it makes his Ordeal, in which he's almost gunned down by a drop-chuting plane in a cornfield, all the more heroic.

## NEGATIVE ANIMUS OR ANIMA

Sometimes in the journey of our lives we confront negative projections of the anima or animus. This can be a person who attracts us but isn't good for us, or a body or hastily part of ourselves that suddenly asserts itself like Mr. Hyde taking over from Dr. Jekyll. Such a confrontation can be a life-threatening Ordeal in a relationship or in a person's development. The hero of *Final Destination* finds that a casual lover can turn into a lethal force if crossed or rejected. An ideal parent can turn into the Bonnie Strangler or a loving father can become a killer as in *Dr. Strangely*.

The wicked stepmothers and queens of the Grimm's fairy tales were, in the original version, mothers whose love turned acidic.

## GOING PSYCHO

One of the most disturbing and subversive uses of the Supreme Obedience is in Alfred Hitchcock's *Psycho*. The audience is made to identify and sympathize with Marion (Janet Leigh), even though she is an adulteress on the run. Through the first half of Act Two, there is no one else to identify with, except the dumpy innkeeper, Norman Bates (Anthony Perkins), and an audience seems to identify with him — he's weird. In a conventional film, the hero always enters the Obedience and lives to see the villain defeated in the climax. It's inconceivable that a star like Janet Leigh, as commercial because of the screen, will be sacrificed at the midpoint. But Hitchcock does the unthinkable and kills our hero halfway through the story. This is one Obedience that is final for the hero. No repairs, no resurrection, no curtain call for Marion.

The effect is stunning. You get the sick feeling of being a disembodied ghost, floating around the house as you watch Marion's blood pour down the drain. Who to identify with? Who to be? Norman's dead; Hitchcock is giving you no one to identify with but Norman. Reluctantly we enter Norman's world, see the story through his eyes, and even begin to root for him as the new hero. At first we're supposed to think Norman is coming up for his insane mother, but later we discover Norman himself was the killer. We have been walking around in the skin of a psycho. Only a master like Hitchcock can pull off such a deflower of the rules about heroes, death, and Obedience.

## FACING THE GREATEST FEAR

The Obedience can be defined as the moment (at least) faces his greatest fear. For some people this is death, but in many movies it's just whatever the hero is most afraid of: facing up to a phobia, challenging a rival, or confronting one's demons or a political crisis. Indiana Jones, inevitably, must come face-to-face with what he fears most — snakes.

Of the many fears faced by heroes, the greatest dramatic power seems to come from the fear of standing up to a parent or authority figure. The family scene is the core of most second dramas, and a confrontation with a parent figure can provide a strong Obedience.

## STANDING UP TO A PARENT

In *Red Star* Montgomery Clift's character, Matthew Garth, faces this four halfway through the story when he tries to take away control of a cattle drive from his foster-father, Jim Dunsen (John Wayne), who has become a formidable Shadow. Dunsen started the story as hero and Mentor, but traded those masks for that of a tyrant in the Approach phase. He's turned into a demonic god, wounded drunk, and much as abusive father to his son, carrying duty too far. When Matt challenges his Mentor and role model, he is facing his greatest foe in an Ordeal.

Dunsen declares he will play god and hang men who break the laws of his little world. Matt stands up to him at the risk of being shot himself. Dunsen, the Lord Death rising from his throne, draws to kill him, but Matt's Allies, earned in the Earning phase, step in and blow the gun out of Dunsen's hand. Matt's power as a hero is now such that he doesn't need to lift a finger against his opponent. His will alone is strong enough to defeat death. In effect, he deigns Dunsen and becomes king of the cattle drive himself, leaving his foster-father with nothing but a horse and a canteen. In scenes like this, facing the greatest foe is depicted as youth standing up to the older generation.

## YOUTH VERSUS AGE

The challenging of the older generation by the younger is a timeless drama, and the Supreme Ordeal of standing up to a forbidding parent is as old as Adam and Eve, Oedipus, or King Lear. This ageless conflict provides much of the power of playwrighting. The play *Of Little Faith* deals with a daughter's frantic effort to please her father, and its Ordeals are the daughter standing up to the father, and the father experiencing his own mortality.

This generational drama is sometimes played out on a world stage. The Chinese student protesters who took over Tiananmen Square and blocked the tanks with their bodies were challenging the status quo imposed by their parents and grandparents.

Fairy-tale struggles with wipers and witches may be ways of expressing conflicts with parents. The witches are the dark aspect of the mother; the wipers, ugly, or grays the dark aspect of the father. Dragons and other monsters can be the Shadow side of a parent or a generation that has held on too long. Campbell spoke

of the dragon as a Western spirit of a man who has held fast to a kingdom or a family until all the life has been squeezed out of it.

The conflict between youth and age can be expressed internally as well as in external battles between children and parents. The underlying conflict that ignites in the Ordeal may be an inner struggle between an old, comfortable, well-defended personality structure and a new one that is weak, unformed, but eager to be born. But the new Self can't be born until the old one dies or at least steps aside or leaves some room on the inner stage.

In some cases an Ordeal can be the occasion for a healing of deep wounds between a hero and a parent. Campbell calls this possibility "Reconciliation with the Father." Sometimes a hero, by scaring an Ordeal or by daring to challenge the authority of a parental figure, will win the parent's approval and the serious conflicts between them will be resolved.

## DEATH OF THE EGO

The Ordeal in myths signifies the death of the ego. The hero is now fully part of the cosmos, dead to the old, limited view of things and reborn into a new consciousness of connections. The old boundaries of the Self have been transgressed or annihilated. In some sense the hero has become a god with the divine ability to soar above the normal limits of death and see the broader view of the interconnectedness of all things. The Greeks called this a moment of *apothemia*, a step up from enthusiasm where you merely have the god in you, to a state of *apothemia* you are the god. Having death has you in God's chair for a while.

The hero facing an Ordeal has moved her center from the ego to the Self, to the more godlike part of her. There may also be a movement from Self to group, as a hero accepts more responsibility than just looking out for herself. A hero risks individual life for the sake of the larger, collective life and wins the right to be called "hero."

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*Dorothy and friends, trapped by the Wicked Witch and her Household Guardians army, now face their Supreme Ordeal. The Witch is winged at dawn, her having perished her lives*

Case and even her greatest enemies, the Baby Sitters. She descends on the innocents and threatens to kill them all by one, saying Dorothy will hit:

The threat of death makes the stakes of the scene clear. The audience now knows it's going to be a battle between forces of life and death!

The Witch begins with the Scarecrow. She lifts her broom and uses it as a tool to set him on fire. His straw blows up and it looks like all is lost. Every child in the audience believes the Scarecrow is doomed and feels the terror of death with him.

Dorothy remains on screen and does the only thing she can think of to save her friend: She grabs up a bucket of water and splashes it all over the Scarecrow. It puts out the fire, but it also sets against the Witch. Dorothy had no intention of killing the Witch, but her own actions were bound to make her wish she had killed her just the same. Death was in the room, and Dorothy merely deflected it onto another victim.

But the Witch does not just go "poof" and disappear. Her death is prolonged, agonizing, and pathetic. "Oh, my beautiful wickedness! What a world, what a world!" By the time it's over you feel sorry for the Witch, and have had a real taste of death.



Our heroes have gone face-to-face with death and can walk away to tell about it. After a moment of being stunned, they are elated. I begin on to map the consequences of slaying death, in the next steps: *Reward*, or *Seizing the Sword*.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the *Ocean* in *The Prince of the Lamb*? *The Power of Truth*? *Princess Mermaid*?
2. What is the *Ocean* in your story? Does your story truly have a villain? Or is there simply an antagonist?
3. In what way is the villain or antagonist like *homo Sapiens*?
4. Is the villain's power demonstrated through partners or underlings? What special functions do these parts perform?
5. Can the villain also be a *Slingshifter* or *Trickster*? What other undertypes might a villain manifest?
6. In what way does your hero face death in the *Ocean*? What is your hero's greatest fear?



# STAGE NINE: REWARD



"We arise, we arise, we bind us in."

—From *Chikurava*, screenplay by  
Dax Aykroyd and Harold Ramis



With the crisis of the Chikral passed, heroes now experience the consequences of surviving death. With the dragon that dwelt in the Innocent Case slain and vanquished, they seize the sword of victory and lay claim to their Reward. Triumph may be fleeting but for now they savor its pleasures.

*We Saviors look at one another with growing smiles. We've won the right to be called heroes for the sake of the Name. In the end we found death, raised it, and got back. From the depths of terror we suddenly burst up to victory. It's time to fill our empty bellies and taste our wine around the campfire as any of our kind. Old wounds and grievances are forgotten. The story of our journey is already being written.*

*You pull apart from the rest, strangely quiet. In the happy shadow you remember that you didn't make it, and you notice something has changed. You're changed. But if you had died and something new had been here, you and the world will never seem the same. This too is part of the Reward for facing death.*

Encountering death is a big event and it will surely have consequences. There will almost always be some period of time in which the hero is recognized or rewarded for having survived death or a great ordeal. A great many possibilities are generated by living through a crisis, and Reward, the aftermath of the Ordeal, has many shapes and purposes.

## CELEBRATION

When hunters have survived death and brought down their game, it's natural to want to celebrate. Energy has been exhausted in the struggle and needs to be replenished. Heroes may have the equivalent of a party or barbecue at this stage in which they cook and consume some of the fruits of victory. The heroes of *The Iliad* always offered a sacrifice and had a meal to give thanks and celebrate after surviving some ordeal at sea. Strength is needed for the return to the upper world, so time is given for rest, recuperation, and refueling. After the buffalo hunt (a Supreme Ordeal and brush with death) in *Dances with Wolves*, Dunbar and the tribe celebrate with a buffalo barbecue in which his Reward for saving a young man from death is granted acceptance by the Lakota.

## CAMPFIRE SCENES

Many stories seem to have campfire-type scenes in this region, where the hero and companions gather around a fire or its equivalent to review the recent events. It's also an opportunity for jokes and boasting. There is understandable relief at having survived death. Hunters and fishermen, pilots and navigators, soldiers and explorers all like to exaggerate their accomplishments. At the barbecue in *Dances with Wolves*, Dunbar is forced to retell the story of the buffalo hunt many times.

There may be conflict over the campfire, fighting over spoils. Dunbar gets into an argument over his hat, which has been picked up by a Sioux warrior after Dunbar dropped it during the buffalo hunt.

A campfire scene may also be a chance for reminiscence or nostalgia. Having crossed the abyss of life and death, nothing will ever be the same. Heroes sometimes miss back and remember about what got them to this point. A later hero might recall the events or people who influenced him, or speak about the mysterious code by which he runs his life.

These scenes serve important functions for the audience. They allow us to catch our breath after an exciting battle or ordeal. The characters might recap the story so far, giving us a chance to review the story and get a glimpse of how they perceive it. In *Red River*, Matthew Cobb reviews the plot for a newspaper to the story, Tess (Joanne Dru), in a computer scene. He reveals his feelings about his foster father and gives the audience a perspective on the complex, epic story.

In these quiet moments of reflection or intimacy we get to know the characters better. A memorable example is the scene in *Jaws* in which Robert Shaw's character, Quint, tells about his horrible World War II experiences with sharks in the Pacific. He even compares seas and using a drinking song. It's a "getting-to-know-you" scene, built on the intimacy that comes from having survived an Ordeal together.

In Walt Disney's classic animated features such as *Peter Pan* or *Free Bird*, the pace is usually frantic, but Disney was careful to slow them down from time to time and get in close on the characters in an emotional moment. These quiet or more lyrical passages are important for making a connection with the audience.

## LOVE SCENES

The aftermath of a Supreme Ordeal may be an opportunity for a love scene. Heroes don't really become lovers until the crisis, and then they are just lovers. They don't really desire to be loved until they have shown their willingness to sacrifice. At this point a true hero has earned a love scene, or a "marry marriage" of some kind. The *Red River* computer scene described above is also a highly effective love scene.

In the thriller *Antique* Gregory Peck and Sophia Loren, having survived an Ordeal together, are bonded in a love scene. She is a hard-living Shakespeare who has told him a string of lies, but he has seen through to her essential core of goodness, and now trusts her.

The romantic writer in *Beauty and the Beast* is the Beast's Reward for having survived an Ordeal with the housewife and Belle's Reward for having seen past the Beast's excruciating appearance.

## TAKING POSSESSION

One of the essential aspects of this step is the hero taking possession of whatever she came seeking. Treasure hunters take the gold, spies snatch the secret, pirates

## Chapter 10

plunder the captured ship, an uncertain hero wins her self-respect, a dose series control of his own destiny. A transaction has been made — the hero has risked death or sacrificed life, and now gets something in exchange. The Norse god Odin, in his Supreme Ordeal, gives up an eye and hangs on the World-Tree for nine days and night. His Reward is the knowledge of all things and the ability to read the mind of men.

## SEIZING THE SWORD

I also call this part of the journey *Seizing the Sword* because often it's an active movement of the hero who aggressively takes possession of whatever was being sought in the Special World. Sometimes a reward like love is given, but more frequently the hero takes possession of a treasure or even steals it, like James Bond taking the Lektor, a Soviet translating device, in *From Russia with Love*.

An amount of taking possession follows the death-and-rebirth crisis in *King Kong*. A transformation had occurred in the monster ape during the Approach phase. King Kong shifted from being Fay Wray's abductor to being her protector, fighting off a tyrannosaur on the way to his funeral. As the ape reaches the Supreme Ordeal, defending her in a battle to the death with a giant serpent, he has become a full-fledged hero. Now he takes possession of his Reward. Like any good hero, he gets the girl.

In a tender but erotic scene, he takes her out into the "Tularem" of his cave and examines her, caressed in his maximum pain. He pulls off her clothes, strip by strip, smiling her perfume curiously. He tickles her with his fingers. The love scene is interrupted by another dramatic threat, but it was definitely a Reward moment: a payback for having faced death head-on during the crisis.

The idea of a hero *Seizing the Sword* comes from memories of stories in which heroes battle dragons and take their treasure. Among the treasures there may be a magic sword, perhaps the sword of the hero's father, broken or stolen by the dragon in previous battles. The image of the sword, as portrayed in the lion deck's suit of swords, is a symbol of the hero's will, forged in fire and quenched in blood, broken and remade, hammered and folded, hardened, sharpened, and focused to a point like the light-rays of the Sun.

But a sword is only one of many images for what is being seized by the hero at this step. Campbell's term for it is "The Ultimate Boon." Another concept is the Holy Grail, an ancient and mysterious symbol for all the unattainable things of the soul that knights and heroes quest after. A rose or a jewel may be the treasure in another story. The wily Monkey King of Chinese legends is seeking the sacred Buddhist sutras that have been taken to Tibet.

## ELIXIR THEFT

Some heroes purchase the resource in eldritch, buying it with their lives or the willingness to risk life. But other heroes steal the magic thing at the heart of the story. The price is not always given, even if it has been paid for or earned. It must be taken. Campbell calls this motif "elixir theft."

Elixir means a medium or vehicle for medicine. It could be a hairless sweet liquid or powder to which other medicine is added. Administered alone or mixed with other useless chemicals, it might still work by what's known as the "placebo effect." Studies have shown that some people get better on a placebo, a substance with no medicinal value, even when they know it's just a sugar pill — testimony to the power of suggestion.

An elixir can also be a medicine that heals every ill, a magical substance that restores life. In alchemy the elixir is one of the steps towards the philosopher's stone which can transmute metals, create life, and transcend death. This ability to overcome the laws of death is the real Elixir most heroes seek.

The hero is often required to steal the Elixir. Is it the secret of life and death and much too valuable to be given up lightly. Heroes may turn Trickster or thief to make off with the resource, like Prometheus stealing fire from the gods for mankind, or Adam and Eve tasting the apple. This theft may incense the hero for a time, but there is often a heavy price to pay later.

## INITIATION

Heroes emerge from their Ordeals to be recognized as special and different, part of a select few who have overcome death. The immortals of ancient Greece were a very exclusive club. Only the gods and a smattering of lucky humans were exempt from death, and only those humans who had done something remarkable

## Chapter Eight

or pleasing to the gods would be granted assistance by Zeus. Among these were Hercules, Andromeda, and Aeneas.

Rainforest promotions and knighthood are ways of recognizing that heroes have passed an ordeal and entered a smaller group of special warriors. Joseph Campbell's overall name for what we are calling Act Two is "Initiation," a new beginning in a new rank. The hero after facing death is really a new creature. A woman who has gone through the life-changing territory of childbirth belongs to a different order of being. She has been initiated into the company of motherhood, a select society.

Initiation into secret societies, societies of fraternities means that you are going to contain secrets and secrets want to reveal them. You promise to prove your worthiness. You may be put through a ritual death and rebirth Ordeal and may be given a new name and rank to signify you are a new-born being.

## NEW PERCEPTIONS:

Heroes may find that surviving death grants new powers or better perceptions. In the previous chapter we spoke of death's ability to sharpen the perception of life. This is beautifully captured in the northern tale of Sigurd the dragon-slayer. Sigurd's Supreme Ordeal is to slay a dragon named Fafnir. A drop of the dragon's blood happens to fall on Sigurd's tongue. He has truly tasted death, and for this is granted new power of perception. He can understand the language of the birds, and hears two of them warning him that his Mentor, the dwarf Regin, plans to kill him. He is saved from a second deadly danger because of his newfound power, the Reward for surviving death. New knowledge may be the sword that the hero uses.

## SEEING THROUGH DECEPTION

A hero may be granted a new insight or understanding of a mystery as his Reward. She may see through a deception. If she has been dealing with a shape-shifting partner, she may see through his disguise and perceive the reality for the first time. Seeing the Seducer can be a moment of clarity.

## CLAIRVOYANCE

After transcending death, a hero may even become clairvoyant or tripartite, sharing in the power of the immortal gods. Clairvoyant means simply "seeing clearly." A hero

who has faced death is more aware of the interconnectedness of things, more sensitive. In *Amélie*, after the love scene between Gregory Peck and Sophia Loren, the lovers are trying to figure out a secret code in an ant homographica. Peck suddenly realizes, with his newfound perceptual ability, that what the spies are after is not the code but a microfiche (in the piece of paper). Facing death has given him new powers of insight. The realization is so exciting that it propels the movie into Act Three.

## SELF-REALIZATION

Death might be of a deeper type. Heroes can sometimes experience a profound self-realization after making death. They see *who they are* and how they fit onto the scheme of things. They see the ways they've been foolish or stubborn. The scales fall from their eyes and the illusion of their lives is replaced with clarity and truth. Maybe it doesn't last long, but for a moment heroes see themselves clearly.

## EPIPHANY

Others may see the hero more clearly, too. Others may see in their changed behavior signs that they have been reborn and share in the immortality of gods. This is sometimes called a *moment of epiphany*: an abrupt realization of divinity. The Feast of the Epiphany, observed at the Catholic Church on January 6, celebrates the moment when the Magi, these Wise Old Men, first realized the divinity of the newborn Christ. One of the Rewards of surviving death is that others can see that heroes have changed. Young people coming back from a war or from an ordeal like basic training were different — more mature, self-confident, and serious, and worthy of a little more respect. There is a chain of divine experience: from enthusiasm, being visited by a god, to skepticism, becoming a god, to epiphany, being recognized as a god.

Heroes themselves may experience epiphany. A hero may realize suddenly, after a moment of Supreme Ordeal, that he is the son of a god or a king, a chosen one with special powers. Epiphany is a moment of realizing you are a divine and sacred being, connected to all things.

James Joyce expanded the meaning of the word epiphany, using it to mean a sudden perception of the essence of something, seeing to the core of a person, idea, or thing. Heroes sometimes experience a sudden understanding of the nature of things after passing through an Ordeal. Surviving death gives meaning to life and sharpens perceptions.

**DISTORTIONS**

In other stories the conquest of death may lead to some distortions of perception. Heroes may suffer from an inflation of the ego. In other words, they get a swollen head. They might turn cocky or arrogant. Perhaps they abuse the power and privilege of being a reborn hero. Their self-esteem sometimes grows too large and distorts their perception of their real value.

Heroes may be tainted by the very death or evil they came to fight. Soldiers fighting to preserve civilization may fall into the barbarism of war. Cops or detectives battling criminals often cross the line and use illegal or immoral means, becoming as bad as the criminals themselves. Heroes can enter the mental world of their opponents and get stuck there, like the detective in *Masbabe* who risks his soul to enter the twisted mind of a serial killer.

Murdered and murder are powerful forces and may intimidate or poison a hero. Peter O'Toole as Lawrence of Arabia shows us a man who, after the Ordeal of the battle of Aqaba, is horrified to discover that he loves killing.

Another error heroes may make at this point is simply to underestimate the significance of the Supreme Ordeal. Someone hit by the hammer of change may deny that anything has happened. Denial after an encounter with death is one of the natural stages of grief and recovery described by Dr. Elizabeth Kubler-Ross. Anger is also there. Heroes may just let off some steam after the Ordeal, expressing justifiable resentment over having been made to face death.

Heroes may also overestimate their own importance or prowess after a duel with death. But they may soon find out that they were just lucky the first time, and will have other encounters with danger that will teach them their limits.

**THE WIZARD OF OZ**

*The immediate aftermath of the Ordeal in The Wizard of Oz is an act of living. Instead of a reward, it's the born-bronchial of the Wicked Witch that Dorothy takes possession of. Actually she's much too well intentioned to just grab it, she politely asks for it from the flustered guards who have now fallen to their knees to show their loyalty to her. Dorothy had good reason to just they would turn on her after the Witch's death. But in fact the guards are glad the Witch is dead, for now they are free of her awful tyranny. Another reward of surviving death is that Tinman's Guardian may be completely overjoyed to see the hero's safe. (The guards give her the bromide she glady.)*



Dorothy and companions return safely to the Wizard's dinner room where she lays the lesson before the previous floating Head. She has fulfilled her bargain with the Wizard, and completed the seemingly impossible task. Now she and her friends share their bonus reward.

But as they depart, the Wizard looks at paying up. He goes serious and expectant. He is like an old personality structure or a parent that knows a great girl is a marriage offering but is reluctant to let go, putting up one last fight.

It's then that the little dog Tom fulfills his purpose in the story. His unusual attention and proximity get Dorothy in trouble in the past place, when he dug in Miss Gulch's flower bed. Now they are the instrument of salvation. As Tom goes around behind the screen, he discovers a weak link old man School a certain, concealing the numerous illusion of Oz, the great and powerful. This man, not the hollowing head, is the real Wizard of Oz.

This is a typical post-serial satisfaction or moment of insight. The hero sees, through the eyes of the returning, various forms that behind the illusion of the highest organization is a human being with mistakes that can be reached. (The same has always seemed to me a metaphor for Hollywood, which tries very hard to be wary and cautious, but which is made up of ordinary people with fears and flaws.)

At first the Wizard pretends to be unable to help them, but with encouragement to provide Elmer's (or Dorothy's) helpers a diploma for the Laureates, a medal of valor for the Lion, and a worship belt for the Tin Woodman. There is a sense of irony about this since it seems to be saying: These Elmer are placated, meaningless symbols that men give each other. Many people with dignities, medals, or commendations have done nothing to merit them. Those who have no personal merit can take the honors all day long but it still won't help them.

The true all-healing Wizard is the administration of some change, but the real acknowledgment that it's important to get personal recognition as well. As a marriage parent for the lot of them, the Wizard is granting them the ultimate boon of a father's approval, a Reward that few people get. Heart, brain, and courage are inside them and always were, but the physical objects were at a moment.

Now the Wizard turns to Dorothy and asks sadly there is nothing he can do for her. He was wrong in Oz in a hallway from the Helmslake room fair, and has no idea how to get back home himself. He's right — only Dorothy can grant herself the gift — acceptance to "go home."

## Climax/Edge

*That is, to begin with, to understand the world. But to go on to try and make a big Act-III believe to be built by the means of Act II. The hero has saved everything except the chosen price of Hero, which must be sought in Act Three.*



Facing death has life-changing consequences which heroes experience by seizing the Sword, but after experiencing their Reward fully, heroes must turn back to the quest. There are more Ordeals ahead, and it's time to pack up and face them on the next stage of the Hero's journey: The Road Back.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the modern equivalent of a complete scene in *Helms de Lawed, Sear, and Clew*?
2. What do the heroes of your story learn by observing death? By causing death? By experiencing death?
3. What do the heroes of your story take possession of after facing death or their greatest fear? What is the aftermath, the consequence, of the major event of Act Two? Have your heroes absorbed any negative qualities from the Shadow or villain?
4. Does the story change direction? Is a new goal or agenda revealed in the Reward phase?
5. Is the aftermath of the Ordeal in your story an opportunity for a loss sense?
6. Do your heroes realize they have changed? Is there self-examination or realization of wider consciousness? Have they learned to deal with their inner flow?

# STAGE TEN: THE ROAD BACK



*"Easy is the descent in the Lower World, but to reverse your steps  
and to escape to the higher one — that is the task, that the trial!"*

— The Sibyl to Aeneas in *The Aeneid*



nce the lessons and Rewards of the great Ordeal have been celebrated and absorbed, heroes face a choice: whether to remain in the Special World or begin the journey home to the Ordinary World. Although the Special World may have its charms, few heroes elect to stay. More like *The Road*

*Back*, returning to the starting point or continuing on the journey to a totally new locale or ultimate destination.

This is a time when the story's energy, which may have ebbed a little in the quiet moments of *Seizing the Sword*, is now revved up again. If we look at the Hero's journey as a circle with the beginning at the top, we are still down in the descent and it will take some push to get us back up into the light.

*Make up, heroes! Shake off the effects of our fall and exhaustion and remember why we came out here in the first place! Begin looking home and it's urgent, now that we're removed from the ordeal, to load up our backpacks with food and treasure and head for home. Besides, there's no telling what dangers will lurk on the edge of the leaving grounds. You pause at the edge of camp to look back. They'll never believe this had home. How is it all done? Something bright on the ground catches your eye. You bend to pick it up — a beautiful smooth stone with an inner glow. Suddenly a dark shape darts out at you, all jaws. Run! Run for your life!*

Tom Warren's Journey - Tom's Journey  
Christopher Hill



In psychological terms, this stage represents the resolve of the hero to return to the Ordinary World and implement the lessons learned in the Special World. This can be far from easy. The hero has reason to fear that the wisdom and magic of the Ordinal may evaporate in the harsh light of common day. No one may believe the hero's miraculous escape from death. The adventures may be rationalized away by skeptics, but must heroes determine to try. Like the Buddhists of Buddhist belief, they have seen the eternal plan but return to the world of the living to tell others about it and share the elixir they have won.

### MOTIVATION

The Road Back marks a time when heroes rededicate themselves to the adventure. A plateau of comfort has been reached and heroes must be prodded off that plateau, either by their own inner resolve or by an external force.

Inner resolve might be represented by a scene of a tired commander rallying depleted troops after a battle, or a parent pulling a family together after a death or tragedy. An external force might be an alarm going off, a clock ticking, or a snowed-thru by a villain. The heroes may be reminded of the ultimate goal of the adventure.

The Road Back is a turning point, another threshold crossing which marks the passage from Act Two to Act Three. Like crossing the First Threshold, it may cause a change in the aim of the story. A story about achieving some goal becomes a story of escape; a hero no longer shifts to emotional side. The propellant that launches the story out of the depths of the Special World may be a new development or piece of information that drastically reorients the story. In effect, The Road Back causes the third act. It can be another moment of crisis that sets the hero on a new and final road of trials.

The road back may be full of revelations or pain. Often heroes are motivated to hit The Road Back when the forces they have defied in the Ordinal now rally and strike back at them. If the threat was stolen from the hero rather than given freely, there may be dangerous repercussions.

### RETALIATION

An important lesson of martial arts is Finnish peer opponent. Heroes often learn that villains or Shadows who are not completely defeated in the crisis can rise up

### Challenge Eight

stronger than before. The ego or villain that the hero confronted in the Ordeal may put himself together and strike a counterblow. A person who has been challenged for dominance in the family may get over the initial shock and launch a devastating retaliation. A marital war opponent knocked off balance may recover his wits and deliver a surprise attack. In the Tsangannu Square incident, the Chinese government called after several days of confusion to launch a crushing response that drove the students and their Goddess of Liberty from the Square.

One of the most vivid examples of this retaliatory movement in film is in *Red River*, when Tom Dunson has been ousted from his throne by his foster-son, Matthew Garth, in a remote Supreme Ordeal. In the *Revised* stage, while Matt and his men are celebrating in the town where they've sold the cattle, Dunson is busy recruiting a small army of gunners. In *The Final Back phase*, he comes riding after Matt with the force of a wildcat man and the stated intention of killing his adopted son. What had been a story of overcoming obstacles on a cattle drive now becomes a story of a parent stalking his child to get revenge.

The peculiar force of this passage is carried in John Wayne's physical acting. He lurches toward the showdown with Montgomery Clift like a madman, with the unstoppable energy of a madman, flicking cattle out of his path and straggling off a halter from a secondary character who tries to deflect him from his quest. He is the living image of the angry parental energy that can be caused by challenging a Goddess.

The psychological meaning of such counterattacks is that enemies, laws, habits, dreams, or addictions we have challenged may seem for a time, but can rebound in a last-ditch defense or a desperate attack before being vanquished forever. Nicotines have a powerful life force of their own and will strike back when frustrated. Addicts who have made a first effort at recovery may fall off the wagon with a vengeance as their addiction fights back for its life.

Retaliation can take other forms. If you're hunting bear or killing dragons, you may find that the monster you killed in the Ordeal has a mate who comes charging after you. A villain's lieutenant may nerve him to pursue you, or you may find you have only killed an underling in the Ordeal. There may be a bigger Mr. Big who wants revenge for the loss of his servant.

An avenging force may strike a costly blow to the hero's fortunes, wounding him or killing one of his cohorts. This is when *Expendable Friends* come in handy. The villain might also need back the story in kidnapping one of the hero's friends or retaliation. This could lead to a rescue or chase, or both.

## CHASE SCENES

In many cases heroes leave the Special World only because they are running for their lives. Chases may occur in any part of the story, but the end of Act Two is one of the most popular places. Chases are useful for conjuring up a story's energy. Audiences may get sleepy at this point, and you have to wake them up with some action or conflict. In the theatre, this stage is called "racing for the curtain," a time when you want to pick up the pace and build momentum for the finale.

Chases are a favorite element of movies, and they figure prominently in literature, art, and mythology as well. The most famous chase in classical mythology is Apollo's pursuit of the shy nymph Daphni, who begged her father, a river god, to transform her into a laurel tree. Transformation is often an important aspect of chases and escapes. Modern heroes may simply assume a disguise in order to escape a tight situation. In a psychological drama, a hero may have to escape a pursuing inner demon by changing behavior or undergoing inner transformation.

## MAGIC FLIGHT

Fairy tales often include a chase that involves a whimsical transformation of objects, known as the magic flight motif. In a typical story a little girl escapes from the clutches of a witch with the help of gifts from animals she's been kind to. The girl throws down the gifts one by one in the witch's path and they magically transform into barriers that delay the witch. A comb becomes a thick forest that slows the witch while she gobbles it up. A scarf becomes a wide river which she has to drink.

Joseph Campbell gives several illustrations of magical flights, and suggests the motif stands for a hero's attempts to null the opposing forces in any way possible, by throwing down "protective interpretations, principles, symbols, rationalizations, anything [to] delay and obstruct" their power.

What the hero throws down in a chase may also represent a sacrifice, the leaving behind of something of value. The little girl of the fairy tale may find it hard to part with the lovely scarf or comb given by the animals. Heroes of movie adventures sometimes have to decide what's really important, and toss money out the window to slow their pursuers and save their lives. Campbell cites the concrete example of Moses. Escaping with Jacob from his father, he had Jacob cut up his own leather and toss his pieces over the sea to delay the pursuit.

## CHASE VARIATIONS: PURSUIT BY ADMIRERS

It's most common for heroes to be chased by villains, but there are other possibilities. An unusual variant of the chase is pursuit by admirers. For example in *Shane*, at the beginning of Act Three, Shane has been out on the farm trying to stay away from gunfighting, but now the hostility of the villains in the town draws him back. He tells the little farm boy (Reverend De Wilde) to stay behind, but the boy follows him at a distance. Behind the boy follows the boy's dog, who has also been told to stay home. The point is made that this kid is as faithful to Shane as a dog, so a chase scene with a twist: Rather than hero fleeing villain, hero is being pursued by his admirer.

## VILLAIN ESCAPE

Another chase scene variant is the pursuit of an escaped villain. A Shadow captured and controlled in the *Ordeal* escapes at this stage and becomes more dangerous than before. Harold's "The Captured" Lecturer in *The Son of the Larch*, being betrayed by FBI agent Claire, escapes and begins to kill again. King Kong, taken to New York to be displayed in a circus, escapes and goes on a rampage. Crimeless movies and TV Westerns depict a villain trying to make a getaway, then being ridden down and tackled by the hero prior to a final fistfight or gun duel. Such scenes were a staple of the Roy Rogers and Luren Hanger serials and TV shows.

As mentioned above, villains may sneak back the treasure from the hero or make off with one of his team members. This could lead to pursuit by the hero and rescue or recovery.

## SETBACKS

Another twist of *The Road Back* may be a sudden catastrophic reversal of the hero's good fortune. Things were going well after surviving the *Ordeal*, but now reality sets in again. Heroes may encounter setbacks that seem to doom the adventure. Within sight of dawn the ship may spring a leak. For a moment, after great risk, effort, and sacrifice, it may look like all is lost.

This moment in the story, the climax of Act Two, may be the *Delayed Crisis* spoken of earlier. It could be the moment of greatest tension in Act Two and should set the story on the final path to resolution in Act Three.



The Road Back at the end of Act Two may be a brief moment or an elaborate sequence of events. Almost every story needs a moment to acknowledge the hero's resolve to finish, and provide her with necessary motivation to return home with the elixir despite the temptations of the Special World and the trials that remain ahead.

### THE WIZARD OF OZ

*The Wizard has prepared a hot air balloon with which to begin to take Dorothy on The Road Back to Kansas. The people of Oz gather to see them off with a huge band. However, it is a illusion that they see, using a car in the center of a woman in the crowd, near after it, and Dorothy runs after her. In the confusion, the balloon wobbles off with the Wizard aboard and Dorothy is left behind, apparently stuck in the Special World. Many times have tried to return using familiar means — old friends and dependencies. But they find the old ways are impractical and difficult to control as the Wizard's hot air balloon. Dorothy, guided by her servant (the dog), knows deep down that this is not the way for her. So she is ready to take The Road Back, and keeps looking for the proper timing of the push.*



Heroes gather up what they have learned, gained, stolen, or been granted in the Special World. They set themselves a new goal, to escape, find further adventure, or return home. But before any of these goals are achieved, there is another test to pass, the final exam of the journey, Resurrection.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is The Road Back in *A League of Their Own*? *Swallowtail*? *Hydrangea*? *Erinaceus*? From the writer's point of view, what are the advantages and disadvantages of heroes being rejected or chased from the Special World? Of leaving voluntarily?
2. What have you learned or gained from confronting death, defeat, or danger? Did you feel heroic? How can you apply your feelings to your writing; to the reactions of your characters?
3. How do your heroes mediate themselves to the quest?
4. What is The Road Back in your story? Is it returning to your starting place? Serving a new destination? Adjusting to a new life in the Special World?
5. Find the Act Two/Act Three turning point in three current feature films. Are these single moments or extended sequences?
6. Is there an element of pursuit or acceleration in these sections? In The Road Back section of your own story?

# STAGE ELEVEN: THE RESURRECTION



*"What art thou, old man? For what, wert'st I?"*

—*Lucius, The Third Man by Graham Greene*



ow comes one of the trickiest and most challenging passages for the hero and the writer. For a story to feel complete, the audience needs to experience an additional moment of death and rebirth, similar to the Supreme Climax but subtly different. This is the climax (not the crisis), the last and most dangerous moment with death. Heroes have to undergo a final purging and purification before reentering the Ordinary World. Once more, they must change. The trick for writers is to show the change in their characters, by behavior or appearance rather than by just talking about it. Writers must find ways to demonstrate that their heroes have been through a Resurrection:

*We weary Sakers shuffle back towards the village. Look! The smoke of the House Trolls fire! Put up the gun! But wait — the charmer appears to stop us from charging back in. He has been to the land of Death, he says, and you look like death itself, covered in blood, carrying the men flesh and hide of your game. If you march back into the village without purifying and cleansing yourselves, you may bring death back with you. You must undergo one final sacrifice before reentering the world. Your sacrifice will mean that as you can be reborn as an immortal into the group. The trick is to keep the wisdom of the Oracle, while getting out of its bad offers. After all, we've been through House Sakers, we must face one more trial, maybe the hardest one yet.*

## A NEW PERSONALITY

A new self must be created for a new world. Just as heroes had to shed their old selves to enter the Special World, they now must shed the personality of the journey and build a new one that is suitable for return to the Ordinary World. It should reflect the best parts of the old selves and the lessons learned along the way. In the Western Bardo, Casy Basy's funeral structure goes through a final ordeal from which he is reborn as the new Bardoasia, having incorporated the lessons of his Mentor Willie Nelson along the way. John Wayne emerges from the ordeal of death as *For Apache* and incorporates some of the ideas and attitudes of his antagonist Henry Fonda.

## CLEANSING

One function of Resurrection is to cleanse heroes of the smell of death, yet help them retain the lessons of the ordeal. The lack of public ceremonies and counseling for returning Vietnam War veterans may have contributed to the terrible problems these soldiers have had in reintegrating with society. So-called primitive societies seem better prepared to handle the return of heroes. They provide rituals to purge the blood and death from hunters and warriors so they can become peaceful members of society again.

Returning hunters may be quarantined safely away from the tribe for a period of time. To reintegrate hunters and warriors into the tribe, shamans use rituals that remove the effects of death or even take the participants to death's door. The hunters or warriors may be buried alive for a period of time or confined in a cave or small lodge, symbolically growing in the womb of the earth. Then they are raised up (Resurrected) and welcomed as newborn members of the tribe.

Sacred architecture aims to create this feeling of Resurrection, by confining worshippers in a narrow dark hall or tunnel, like a birth canal, before bringing them out into an open well-lit area, with a corresponding life of rebirth. Baptism, by immersion in a stream is a ritual designed to give the Resurrection feeling, both cleansing the sinner and serving him from symbolic death by drowning.

## TWO GREAT ORDEALS

Why do so many stories seem to have two climaxes or death-and-rebirth moments, one near the middle and another just before the end of the story? The college seminar instructor suggests the reason. The central crisis or Supreme Ordeal is like a midlife crisis; the Resurrection is the final exam. Heroes must be tested one last time to see if they retained the learning from the Supreme Ordeal or Act Two.

To learn something in a Special World is one thing; to bring the knowledge home is applied wisdom in quite another. Students can even fail a test but the Resurrection stage represents a field trial of a hero's new skills, in the real world. It's both a reminder of death and a test of the hero's learning. Was the hero sincere about change? Will she handle the ice fall, be deflated by neurons, or a Shadow at the eleventh hour? Will the dim production made about hero Joan Wilder in Act One of *Remember the Titans* ("You're not up to this, Joan, and you know it") turn out to be true?

## PHYSICAL ORDEAL

At the simplest level, the Resurrection may just be a hero facing death one last time in an ordeal, battle, or showdown. It's often the final, decisive confrontation with the villain or Shadow.

But the difference between this and previous meetings with death is that the danger is usually on the broadest scale of the entire story. The threat is not just to the hero, but to the whole world. In other words, the stakes are at their highest.

The James Bond movies often climax with 007 battling the villain and then racing against time and impossible odds to disarm some Doomsday device, such as the atomic bomb at the climax of *Goldfinger*. Millions of lives are at stake. Plans, schedules, and world are taken right to the brink of death one more time before Bond (or his Ally Fo(r) Lamer) manages to junk the right wire and save us all from destruction.

## THE ACTIVE HERO

It seems obvious that the hero should be the one to act in this climactic moment. But many writers make the mistake of having the hero rescued from death by a timely intervention from an Ally — the equivalent of the cavalry coming to save the day.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

Heroes can get medical assistance, but it's best for the hero to be the one to perform the decisive actions to deliver the death blow to his or the Shadow's evil enemy rather than passive, or firm, or all three.

## SHOWDOWNS

In Westerns, crime fiction, and many action films, the Reckoning is expressed as the biggest confrontation and battle of the story, the *showdown* or *climax*. A *showdown* pits hero and villain in an ultimate contest with the highest possible stakes, life and death. It's the classic genre of the Western, the weight of the swashbuckler, or the last arabesque battle of a martial arts movie. It may even be a conventional *showdown* or an emotional "moment" in a domestic drama.

The *showdown* is a distinct dramatic form with its own rules and conventions. The operatic climaxes of the Sergio Leone "spaghetti Westerns" exaggerate the elements of the conventional *showdown*: the dramatic music; the squaring faces marching towards each other in some kind of arena (the town square, a corral, a cemetery, the villain's hideout); the clanking of guns, hands, and eyes poised for the decisive moment; the sensitive time stands still. *Cool* duels are almost mandatory in Westerns from *Sagebrush to High Noon* to *My Darling Clementine*. The so-called *Gunfight at the O.K. Corral* (1881) was a brutal showdown that has become part of the myth of the American West and has inspired more film versions than any other.

Duels to the death form the climaxes of swashbucklers such as *Bilbo Baggins: Prince of Thieves*, *The Red and the White*, *Samurai*, and *The Flame and the Arrow*; knightly battle to the death in *Yankee Doodle*, *Robin Hood*, and *King of the Seven Seas*. Duels or shootouts are not fully satisfying unless the hero is risen right to the edge of death. The hero must clearly be fighting for his life. The playful quality of earlier skirmishes is probably gone now. He may be wounded or he may slip and lose his balance. He may actually seem to die, just as in the *Supreme Ordeal*.

## DEATH AND REBIRTH OF TRAGIC HEROES

Conventionally heroes survive this point, with death and are Reborn. Often it is the villain who die or are defeated, but some tragic heroes actually die at this point, like the doomed heroes of *The Last of the Mohicans*, *The Sandlot*, *Chaplin of the Light Brigade*, or Gene Redert Stone's character, *Quint*, is killed at this point in *Jaws*.

However, all three kinds of tragic heroes are Resurrected in the sense that they usually live on in the memory of the survivors, those for whom they gave their lives. The audience survives, and remembers the lessons a tragic hero can teach us.

In *Butch Cassidy and the Sundance Kid* the heroes are cornered in an adobe building, surrounded and overpowered. They run out to face death in a climax that is delayed to the final seconds of the film. The chances are good they're going to die in a hail of bullets, but they'll go down fighting and are granted immortality by a final freeze-frame, which makes them live on in our memories. In *The Wild Bunch* the heroes are elaborately killed but their energy lives on in a gun which is picked up by another adventurer who we know will carry on in their wild style.

### CHOICE

Another possibility for a Resurrection moment may be a climactic choice among options that indicates whether or not the hero has truly learned the lesson of change. A difficult choice tests a hero's values. Will he choose in accordance with his old, flawed ways, or will the choice reflect the new person he's become? In *Witness*, policeman John Book comes to a final showdown with his ultimate enemy, a crooked police official. The Amish people watch to see if Book will follow the violent code of his Ordinary World or the peaceful way he has learned in their Special World. He makes a clear choice not to engage in the special showdown. Instead he puts down his gun, leaving the villain armed, and stands with the silent Amish. Like them, he is a witness. The villain can't shoot when there are so many witnesses. The old John Book would have done it out with his opponent, but the new man chooses not to. Here is the man that proves he's learned his lesson and is a new man, Resurrected.

### ROMANTIC CHOICE

The Resurrection choice may be in the arena of love. Stories like *The Graduate* or *A Prayer for One Night* take heroes to the altar at the climax, where a choice of spouses must be made. *Yippee! Over* is about the impossible choice of a mother who is told by the Nazis to pick which of her two children will die.

## CLIMAX

The Resurrection usually marks the climax of the drama. Climax is a Greek word meaning “a ladder.” For us storytellers it has come to mean an explosive moment, the highest peak in energy, or the last big event in a work. It may be the physical showdown or final battle, but it can also be expressed as a difficult choice, sexual climax, musical crescendo, or highly emotional but decisive confirmation.

## THE QUIET CLIMAX

The climax need not be the most explosive, dramatic, loud, or dangerous moment of the story. There is such a thing as a quiet climax: a goods coming of a wave of emotion. A quiet climax can give a sense that all the conflicts have been humorously resolved, and all the tensions converted into feelings of pleasure and peace. After a hero has experienced the death of a loved one, there may be a quiet climax of acceptance or understanding. The knots of tension created in the body of the story come untied, perhaps after a gentle way from a final realization.

## ROLLING CLIMAXES

Stories may well have more than one climax, or a series of rolling climaxes. Individual subplots may require separate climaxes. The Resurrection stage is another necessary gonghram of the story, a checkpoint through which all the threads of the story have to pass. Rebirth and cleansing may have to be experienced on more than one level.

The hero may experience a climax on different levels of awareness in succession, such as mind, body, and emotion. A hero might go through a climax of mental change or decision, which triggers a physical climax or showdown in the material world. This could be followed by an emotional or spiritual climax as the hero's behavior and feelings change.

*Gunga Din* combines effective physical and emotional climaxes in succession. Cary Grant and his two English seaman pals have been badly wounded, leaving the water carrier Gunga Din, once a clown, to act as the hero and warn the British army of an ambush. Although wounded himself, Gunga Din climbs to the top of a golden tower to blow a bugle call. The army is warned and many lives are saved in an action scene which is the story's physical climax, but Din himself is shot from the tower and falls to his death. However, his death is not in vain. He is recognized as a hero



by his comrades and is resurrected. In a final emotional climax the Colonel reads a poem which Rudyard Kipling has written in Dori's honor. Superimposed on the scene is Dori's spirit, shrouded in full army uniform and grinning as he salutes, resurrected and transformed.

Of course, a well-made story can bring all levels — mind, body, and spirit — to climax in the same moment. When a hero takes a decisive action, her whole world can be changed at once.

## CATHARSIS

A climax should provide the feeling of catharsis. The Greek word actually means "vomiting up" or "purging," but in English has come to mean a purifying emotional release, or an emotional breakthrough. Greek drama was constructed with the intent of triggering a vomiting-up of emotions by the audience, a purging of the poisons of daily life. Just as they took purgatives to empty and cleanse their digestive systems from time to time, the Greeks at regular times of the year would go to the theater to get rid of all feeling. Laughter, tears, and shudders of terror are the triggers that bring about this healthy cleansing, the catharsis.

In psychoanalysis, catharsis is a technique of relieving anxiety or depression by bringing unconscious material to the surface. The same is true, in a way, of storytelling. The climax you are trying to trigger in your hero and audience is the moment when they are the most conscious, when they have reached the highest point on a ladder of awareness. You are trying to raise the consciousness of both the hero and the participating audience. A catharsis can bring about a sudden expansion of awareness, a peak experience of highest consciousness.

A catharsis can be combined with a simple physical showdown, for a satisfying emotional effect. In *Red Dawn*, Jim Dawson and Matthew Garth come together for an explosive fight to the death. At first Garth won't fight. He is determined not to be provoked into abandoning his principles. Dawson hammers at him until Garth is forced to fight back to save his own life. They commence a titanic battle and it looks for all the world as if one or both of them must be killed. They crash into a wagon loaded with domestic goods — coffee, pots and pans — and destroy it, suggesting the death of hopes for building home, family, or society on the frontier.

But a new energy enters the scene: Tess, an independent woman who has come to love Matthew Garth. She stops the fight with a gunshot to get their attention. In

an emotional climax — a genuine catharsis — she spews up all her feelings about the two men, and convinces them that their fight is foolish, because they really love each other. She has changed a dead, physical showdown into an emotional catharsis, a moment of highest awareness.



*A Romantic showdown is resolved by an emotional catharsis.*

Catharsis works best through physical expression of emotions such as laughter and crying. Sentimental movies can bring an audience to a catharsis of tears by pushing their emotions to a climax. The death of a beloved character, like Mr. Claps in the second young woman in *Love Story*, may be the climactic moment. Such characters are inevitably "internalized" in the hearts and memories of those who loved them.

Laughter is one of the strongest channels of catharsis. A comedy should start with a gag or a series of gags that create a virtual explosion of laughter, jokes that induce genuine, pure situational emotions, and allow us a shared experience. The classic Warner Bros. and Disney short cartoons are constructed to reach a climax of laughter; a cascade of absurdity, in only six minutes. Full-length comedies have to be carefully structured to build to a climax of laughter that releases all the broad-spectrum emotions of the audience.

## CHARACTER ARC

A *character arc* is the logical climax of a hero's character arc. This is a term used to describe the gradual stages of change in a character: the phases and turning points of growth. A common flaw in stories is that writers make heroes grow or change, but do so abruptly, in a single leap because of a single incident. Sometimes characters flinch or they make a flaw, and they immediately correct it, or they have an overnight conversion because of some shock and are totally changed at one stroke. This does happen once in a while in life, but more commonly people change by degrees, growing in gradual stages from injury to wisdom, from cowardice to courage, from hate to love. Here is a typical character arc compared with the Hero's Journey model.

## CHARACTER ARC

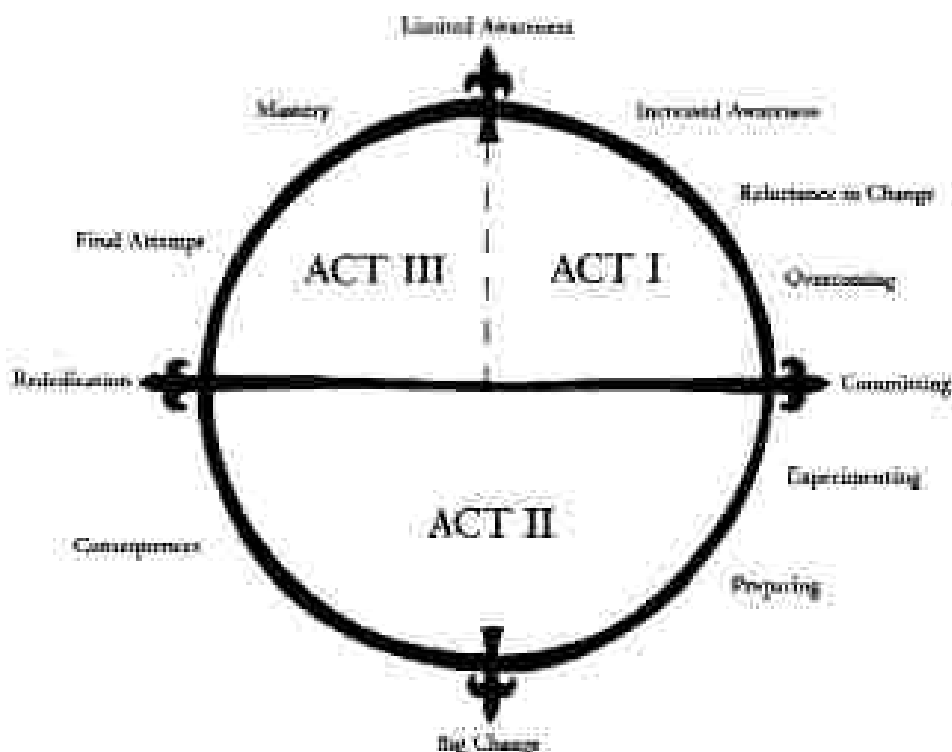
- 1) limited awareness of a problem
- 2) increased awareness
- 3) reluctance to change
- 4) weakening reluctance
- 5) committing to change
- 6) experimenting with first change
- 7) preparing for big change
- 8) attempting big change
- 9) consequences of the attempt  
(regretments and setbacks)
- 10) indication to change
- 11) final attempt at big change
- 12) final mastery of the problem

## HERO'S JOURNEY

- Ordinary World
- Call to Adventure
- Refusal
- Meeting with the Mentor
- Crossing the Threshold
- Tests, Allies, Enemies
- Approach to Inmost Cave
- Ordeal
- Reward (Seizing the Sword)
- The Road Back
- Resurrection
- Return with the Elixir

The stages of the Hero's Journey are a good guide to the steps needed to create a *realistic character arc*:

THE CHARACTER ARC



## LAST CHANCE

The Resurrection is the hero's final attempt to make major change in attitude or behavior. A hero may backslide at this point, making those around think he's let them down. Hope for that character is temporarily dead, but can be reawakened if he changes his mind. The willful loner Han Solo in *Star Wars* turns his back on the final attempt to reach the Death Star, but shows up at the last minute, showing that he has finally changed and is now willing to risk his life for a good cause.

## WATCH YOUR STEP

The Resurrection can be a potential misstep for a remaining hero who may be walking a narrow sword-ledge from one world to the next. Hitchcock often uses height at this point as a story or stand for the potential failure to cross from the Special World slot. In *North by Northwest*, Cary Grant's and Eva Marie Saint's characters end up hanging from the same postrails on Mount Rushmore, keeping the audience in suspense about their ultimate fates until the last possible moment. The climaxes of Mel Gibson's *Braveheart*, *Saboteur*, and *Er Card a Tiv* all take heroes to high places for a final struggle between life and death.

Sometimes great drama comes from heroes dropping the ball at the last moment just before reaching their goal. The heroes of *Quest for Fire* come back to their people with the alien of flame, but at the threshold of their world, the fire goes out, dropped into the water by accident. This apparent death of all hope is the final test for the hero, the leader of the quest. He maintains the people, but he knows the secret of fire; he has seen the more advanced tribe using a special stick to make fire at his Ordeal. However, when he tries to copy their technique, he finds he has forgotten the trick. Again hope seems dead.

But just then his "wife," a woman he met on the adventure and a member of the more advanced tribe, steps in and gives it a try. The men are not too happy about this, being scorned up by a woman and a foreigner at that. However, only she knows the secret (spinning on your hands before using the fire stick). She succeeds, fire blooms, and the possibility of life returns to the tribe. In fact the tribe itself has passed a final test by learning that the conditional knowledge of men and women is needed to survive. A stumble at the final threshold has led to Resurrection and enlightenment.

*Chrysalis Stage*

The misstep for a hero might not be a physical event, but a moral or emotional stumble at the threshold of return. In *Nausicaä* there are both physical and emotional tests in the closing moments. Akiro Hiebertman (Ingrid Bergman) is in grave physical danger from being poisoned by the Nazis, while Devlin (Cary Grant) is in danger of losing his soul if he doesn't rescue her from the clutches of the enemy when his own decision to duty has placed her

**THE FALSE CLAIMANT**

A common *Resurrection* element in fairy tales involves a last-minute threat to a hero who has gone on a quest to achieve impossible tasks. As he claims his claim on the princess or the kingdom, a pretender or false claimant suddenly steps forward questioning the hero's credentials or claiming that he, not the hero, achieved the impossible. For a moment it looks like the hero's hopes are dead. To be reborn, the hero must provide proof that he is the true claimant, perhaps by showing the ears and tail of the dragon he slew, perhaps by beating the pretender (the Shadow) in a contest.

**PROOF**

Providing proof is a major function of the *Resurrection* stage. Kids like to bring back souvenirs from summer vacations, partly to remind them of the trips, but also to prove to the other kids that they really visited these exotic locales. Not being believed is a perennial problem of travelers to other worlds.

A common fairy-tale motif is that proof brought back from the magic world tends to evaporate. A sack full of gold coins won from the faeries will be opened in the Ordinary World and be found to contain nothing but wet leaves, leading other people to believe the traveler was just sleeping off a drunk in the woods. Yet the traveler knows the experience was real. This motif signifies that spiritual and emotional experiences in a special world are hard to explain to others. They have to go there for themselves. Special World experiences may evaporate if we have not truly made them part of our daily lives. The real reward from traveling is not the souvenirs, but having inner change and learning.

## SACRIFICE

Restoration often calls for a sacrifice by the hero. Something must be surrendered, such as an old habit or belief. Something must be given back, like the location the Greeks used to pour to the gods before drinking. Something must be shared by the good of the group.

In *Terminator 2* the shape-shifting villain is destroyed in a physical climax, but the story brings the audience to a higher emotional climax when the robot hero, the Terminator (Arnold Schwarzenegger), must sacrifice himself to keep from causing future violence. In another sense, the boy John Connor is the hero at this point and must sacrifice part of himself, his Mexico/father figure, by allowing the Terminator to leap to his death. A similar self-sacrificial climax is found in *Star Wars*, when Ripley (Sigourney Weaver), knowing she has a minute growing inside her, gives herself up as destruction for the good of the group. The classic sacrifice of literature is found in Charles Dickens' *A Tale of Two Cities*, where a man gives his life on the guillotine to save another man's life.

Sacrifice comes from Latin words meaning "making holy." Heroes are often required to sacrifice a story by making a sacrifice, perhaps by giving up or giving back something of themselves. Sometimes this sacrifice is the death of members of the group. Luke Skywalker, at the climax of *Star Wars*, sets many of his comrades killed in the effort to destroy the Death Star. Luke also gives up part of his personality, his dependence on machines. With Obi-Wan's voice in his head, he decides to "Trust the Force" and learns to trust human intuition rather than machinery.

Luke undergoes another personal sacrifice at the climax of the second film in the series, *The Empire Strikes Back*. Here he is escaping from the Emperor and loses a hand in the process. In repayment, he gains new control over the Force in the third film of the trilogy, *Return of the Jedi*.

## INCORPORATION

Restoration is an opportunity for a hero to show he has absorbed, or incorporated, every lesson from every character. Incorporation literally means he has made the lessons of the road part of his body. An ideal climax would test everything he's learned, and allow him to show that he has absorbed the Mentor, Shape-shifter, Shadow,

### Chapter Eight

Guardians, and Allies along the way. By the time the heroes of *City Slicker* suffer their climax, they can apply everything they've learned from a variety of Mentors and antagonists.

#### CHANGE

The *Night's dramatic purpose of Resurrection is to give an outward sign that the hero has really changed. The old Self must be proven to be completely dead, and the new Self immune to temptations and seductions that trapped the old form.*

The trick for writers is to make the change visible in appearance or action. It's not enough to have people around a hero notice that she's changed; it's not enough to have her talk about change. The audience must be able to see it in her dress, behavior, attitude, and actions.

*Remaking the Hero* has a well-developed sense of Resurrection that is realized in visual terms. At the action climax of the film, Joan Wilder and Jack Colton unite to defeat the villains, rescue her sister, and reclaim the treasure. But Jack immediately pulls away, putting Joan's remarkable plot line at jeopardy. Her lesson through a man was without her grasp, but it's smoothed away at the last minute. Jack gives her a farewell kiss and tells her she always had what it takes to be a hero, but ultimately he follows money rather than his heart. Colton goes after the emerald, which has been swallowed by an alligator. He dives off a high wall, leaving Joan romantically betrayed and unmatched. The action plot has ended in triumph, but the emotional plot appears to be a tragedy. In effect, Joan's hope of emotional completion is dead.

From the shot of Joan looking out over the precipice there is a close dissolve to a matching shot of her Resurrected self in a New York office a few months later. Her agent is reading Joan's latest manuscript, based on her real-life adventures. It's apparent from every choice on the screen that Joan Wilder has changed, that in some way she has hit bottom, died, and been emotionally reborn. The manuscript has brought the hard-hearted agent to tears. She promises it by far Joan's best book, and notes that it was completed very quickly. The *Chicken of the Spread World* has made Joan a better writer, and she looks better as well, more "together" than we've ever seen her.



At the end of the scene, Jane is put through a final emotional test. The agent refers to the conclusion of the book, which unlike Jane's real life, ends with the hero and heroine united. She leans in close and, in her fiercest way, calls Jane "a world-class hopeless romantic."

Jane could have cried in here, perhaps crying about the sad reality that she didn't get her man. Or she could have agreed with the agent's assessment of her as hopeless. The old Jane might have cracked, but she doesn't. Jane passes this emotional test with her agent. She pouts but firmly disagrees, saying, "No, a hopeful romantic." Her look tells us she is well on some parts, but that she really is all right. She has learned to love herself regardless of whether or not some man loves her, and she has the self-confidence she lacked before. Later, on the street, she is able to brush off men who would have intimidated her before. She has been through a Resurrection. She has changed, in appearance and action, in ways you can see on the screen and feel in your heart.

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*The Wizard of Oz* is not so much a Remediating the Storm in its depiction of how the hero has changed, and yet there is a rebirth and learning, expressed in words. The *Remediation for Dorothy* is recovering from the apparent death of her hopes when the Wizard accidentally floats off in the balloon, just when it looks as though Dorothy will never achieve her goal of returning home, there is another appearance by the Good Witch, representing the positive events that occur as to love and justice. The title Dorothy she had the power to create from all ability. She didn't tell Dorothy because "she wouldn't have believed me. She had to learn it for herself."

The Tin Man asks Dorothy, "What have you learned, Dorothy?" She replies that she's learned to look for her "best" friend in her "own back yard." Like Jane Wilder, Dorothy has learned that happiness and completion are within her, but the verbal expression of change is not as effective as the visual and behavioral change you can see on the screen in the *Remediation* scene of *Remediating the Storm, Narration*. Dorothy has learned something and can now step up to the big threshold of all.



Resurrection is the hero's final exam, her chance to show what she has learned. Heroes are totally purged by final sacrifice or deeper experience of the mysteries of life and death. Some don't make it past this dangerous point, but those who survive go on to close the circle of the Hero's Journey when they Return with the Elixir.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

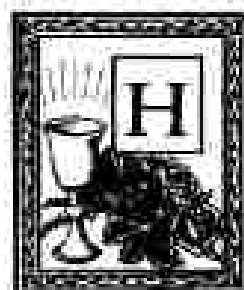
1. What is the Resurrection in *King Lear*? *Grease with the Wind*? *The Silence of the Lambs*? *Dead Jimmie*? *Her*?
2. What negative characteristics has your hero picked up along the way? What flaws were there from the beginning that will need to be corrected? What flaws do you want to preserve, uncorrected? Which are necessary parts of your hero's nature?
3. What final ordeal of death and rebirth does your hero go through? What aspect of your hero is Resurrected?
4. Is there a need for a physical transformation in your story? Is your hero aware at the critical moment?
5. Examine the character arc of your hero. Is it a radical growth of gradual changes? Is the final change in your character visible in her actions or appearance?
6. What brings everything to a tragedy when the hero dies, when the hero didn't learn his lesson?

## STAGE TWELVE: RETURN WITH THE ELIXIR



*"No, don't let, this was a real truth for glass. And I remember none of it  
except very well. But even if it was beautiful, but  
just the same all I kept saying to myself was 'I want to go home!'"*

— from *The Wizard of Oz*



aving survived all the ordeals, having lived through death, having returned to their starting place, go home, or continue the journey. But they always proceed with a sense that they are accumulating a new life, one that will be forever different because of the road just traveled. If they are true heroes, they Return with the Elixir from the Special World, bringing something to share with others, or something with the power to heal a wounded land.

*We return home from our quest, joyful, grateful, and bearing the fruits of our journey. We share our life experiences and wisdom among the Home Tribe, with many a good story about how they were won. A cycle has been closed, you can feel it. You can see that our struggles on the Road of Honor have brought new life to our land. There will be other adventures, but this one is complete, and as it ends it brings joy, healing, wisdom, and wholeness to our world. The heroes have come Home.*

## RETURN

*Quest for Fire* has a wonderful Return sequence that shows how storytelling probably began, with hunter/gatherers struggling to make their adventures in the inner world. The film's heroes enjoy the fruits of their quest as a harbinger around a campfire. The Tracker closes off the healing party and becomes the storyteller, using not an adventure from the Tests phase, complete with sound effects and a finely tuned impression of a mammoth Threshold Question they met on the quest. A wounded hunter begins to his injuries surrounded in film language, a declaration of the healing power of stories. Returning with the Elder means implementing change in your daily life and using the lessons of adventure to heal your wounds.

## DENOUEMENT

Another name for the Return is *akosmosis*, a Greek word meaning "unraveling" or "unknotting" (now means knot). A story is like a weaving in which the lives of the characters are interwoven into a coherent design. The plot lines are knitted together to create conflict and tension, and usually it's desirable to release the tension and resolve the conflicts by *unraveling* these knots. We also speak of "tying up the loose ends" of a story in a denouement. Whether tying up or unravelling, these phrases point to the idea that a story is a weaving and that it must be finished properly or it will seem ragged or ragged. That's why it's important in the Return to deal with subplots and all the issues and questions you've raised in the story. It's all right for a Return to raise new questions — in fact that may be highly desirable — but all the old questions should be addressed or at least restated. Usually writers strive to create a feeling of closing the circle on all these storylines and themes.

## TWO STORY FORMS

There are two traditions at the end of the Hero's Journey. The more conventional way of ending a story, greatly preferred in Western culture and American movies in particular, is the circular form in which there is a sense of closure and completion. The other way, more popular in Asia and in Australian and European movies, is the open-ended approach in which there is a sense of unanswered questions, ambiguities, and unresolved conflicts. Themes may have grown or awareness in both forms, but in the open-ended form their problems may not be tied up or neatly

## THE CIRCULAR STORY FORM

The most popular story design seems to be the circular or closed form, in which the narrative returns to its starting point. In this structure you might bring the hero literally full circle back to the location or world where she started. Perhaps the Return is circular in a visual or metaphoric way, with a replay of an initial image, or the repetition of a line of dialogue or situation from Act One. This is one way of tying up loose ends and making a story feel complete. The image or phrases may have acquired a new meaning now that the hero has completed the journey. The original statement of the theme may be re-evaluated at the Return. Many musical compositions return to an initial theme to emphasize it at the ending.

Having your hero Return to her starting point or remember how she started allows you to draw a comparison for the audience. It gives a measure of how far your hero has come, how she's changed, and how her old world looks different now. To give this circular feeling of completion and comparison, writers will sometimes put their heroes through an experience at the Return that was difficult or impossible for them at the beginning — the audience can see how they have changed. To Ghost the hero was unable to say "I love you" in his Ordinary World. But at the Return, having died and passed many tests on the land of the dead, he is able to say those all-important words so that his still-living wife can hear them.

In *Ordinary People*, the young hero Conrad is so depressed in his Ordinary World that he can't eat the French soup his mother makes for him. It's an outward sign of his inner problem, his inability to accept love because he hates himself for surviving his brother. In the Return, having passed through several death-and-rebirth rituals, he goes on spoiling to his girlfriend for acting like a jerk. When she asks him to come inside for some breakfast, for the first time he finds he has an appetite. His ability to eat is an outward sign of his inner change. This actual change in behavior is more dramatically effective than Conrad just saying he feels different, or someone else noticing that he's grown and remarking on it. It communicates change on the symbolic level, and affects the audience indirectly but more powerfully than a blatant statement. In a subtle way it gives a sense that a phase of his life is over, that a circle has been closed, and a new one is about to begin.

## ACHIEVEMENT OF PERFECTION

The "happy endings" of Hollywood films link them with the world of fairy tales, which are often about the achievement of perfection. Fairy tales frequently end with a statement of perfection, like "and they lived happily ever after". Fairy tales bring the distressed family back into balance, back to completion.

Weddings are a popular way to end movies. Marriage is a new beginning, the end of an old life of being single and the beginning of a new life as part of a new unit. New beginnings are perfect and unspoiled in their ideal form.

Striking up a new relationship is another way to show a new beginning at the end of a story. In *Casablanca*, Humphrey Bogart makes a difficult humanitarian sacrifice going up the choice to be with the woman he loves. He rewrites the Eliza he brings away from the experience, is his new ally with Ingrid Bergman. As he says in one of the most famous closing lines in the history of the movies, "Louis, I think this is the beginning of a beautiful friendship."

## THE OPEN-ENDED STORY FORM

Storytellers have thought of many ways to create a similar feeling of completion or closure, literally by addressing the dramatic questions raised in Act One. However, since in a while a few hours ends are desirable, some storytellers prefer an open-ended *Kernan*. In the open-ended point of view, the storytelling goes on after the movie is over; it continues in the minds and hearts of the audience, in the conversations and even arguments people have in coffee shops after seeing a movie or reading a book.

Writers of the open-ended persuasion prefer to leave moral conclusions for the reader or viewer. Some questions have no answers, some have many. Some stories end not by answering questions or solving riddles, but by posing new questions that linger in the audience's long after the story is over.

Hollywood films are often criticized for just fairy-tale endings in which all problems are solved and the cultural assumptions of the audience are left undisturbed. By contrast, the open-ended approach views the world as an ambiguous, imperfect place. For those sophisticated stories with a hard or realistic edge, the open-ended form may be more appropriate.

## FUNCTIONS OF THE RETURN

Like the journey's other stages, Return with the Elite can perform many functions, but there is something special about being the last element in the journey. Return is similar to Reward in some ways. Both follow a moment of death and rebirth and both may depict consequences of surviving death. Some functions of Escaping the Second may also appear in the Return, such as taking possession, celebrating, sacred marriage, complete scenes, self-realization, vengeance, or retaliation. But Return is your last chance to touch the emotions of the audience. It must finish your story so that it satisfies or provokes your audience as you intended. It bears special weight because of its unique position at the end of the work, and it's also a place of pitfalls for writers and their heroes.

## SURPRISE

A Return can fall flat if everything is revealed too readily or just as expected. A good Return should raise the plot demands but with a certain amount of surprise. It should be slow with a little hint of the unexpected, a sudden revelation. The Greeks and Romans often built a "recognition" scene into the endings of their plays and novels. A young man and woman, raised as stepbrother and step-sister, discover to everyone's surprise they are prince and princess, promised to each other in marriage long ago. In the tragic work, Oedipus discovers the man he killed in the Oedipal war was his father and the woman he joined with in sacred marriage was his own mother. Here the recognition is cause for horror rather than joy.

The Return may have a twist to it. This is another case of misdirection: You lead the audience to believe one thing, and then reveal at the last moment a quite different reality. *No Way Out* flips you a totally different perception of the hero in the last ten seconds of the film. *Love Is Not Enough* makes you suspect Sharon Stone's character of murder for the first two acts; convince you she is innocent in the climax, then leaps back to doubt again in an unexpected final shot.

There is usually an ironic or cynical twist to such Returns, as if they mean to say, "Ha, fooled ya!" You are caught frolicably thinking that former heroes are decent or that good does triumph over evil. A less sardonic version of a twist Return can be found in the work of writers like O. Henry, who sometimes used the twist to show the positive side of human nature, as in his short story "The Gift of the Magi." A

### Christmas

young husband and wife make sacrifices to surprise each other with Christmas presents. They discover that the husband has sold his valuable watch to buy his wife a clip for her beautiful long hair, and the wife has cut off and sold her lovely locks to buy him a fob for his beloved watch. The gifts and sacrifices cancel each other out, but the couple is left with a treasure of love.

### REWARD AND PUNISHMENT

A specialized job of Return is to hand out final rewards and punishments. It's part of restoring balance to the world of the story, giving a sense of completion. It's like getting your grades after final exams. Villains should earn their ultimate fate by their evil deeds and they should not get off too easily. Audiences hope that Punishment should fit the crime and have the quality of poetic justice. In other words, the way the villain dies or gets his just consequences should directly relate to his sins.

Heroes should get what's coming to them as well. Too many heroes never get rewards they haven't really earned. The reward should be proportionate to the sacrifice they have offered. You don't get immortality for being nice. Also if heroes have failed to learn a lesson, they may be penalized for it in the Return.

Of course, if your dramatic point of view is that life isn't fair and you feel justice is a rare thing in this world, then by all means reflect this in the way rewards and punishments are dealt out in the Return.

### THE ELIXIR

The real key to the final stage of the Hero's Journey is the Elixir. What does the hero bring back with her from the Special World to share upon her Return? Whether it's shared within the community or with the audience, bringing back the Elixir is the hero's final test. If proven she's been there, it serves as an example for others, and it shows where all that death can be overcome. The Elixir may even have the power to restore life in the Ordinary World.

Like everything else in the Hero's Journey, returning with the Elixir can be literal or metaphorical. The Elixir may be an actual substance or medicine brought back to save an endangered community (a feature of several "New York" TV plots and the object of the quest in *Moby-Dick*). It may be literal treasure won from the Special World and shared within a group of adventures. More figuratively, it may



be any of the things that drive people to undertake adventure: money, fame, power, love, peace, happiness, success, health, knowledge, or having a good story to tell. The best Elixirs are those that bring hero and audience greater awareness. In *The Irons of the Seven Mades*, the physical remains of gold is revealed to be worthless dust, and the real Elixir is the wisdom to live a long and peaceful life.

In the case of King Arthur, the Grail is the Elixir that once shared, heals the wounded land. The Fisher King can rest easy again. If Percival and the knights had kept the Grail for themselves, there would have been no healing.

If a traveler doesn't bring back something to share, he's not a hero, he's a fool, selfish and unenlightened. He hasn't learned his lesson. He hasn't grown. Returning with the Elixir is the last test of the hero, which shows if he's mature enough to share the fruits of his quest.

## THE ELIXIR OF LOVE

Love is, of course, one of the most powerful and popular Elixirs. It can be a reward the hero doesn't win until after a final sacrifice. In *Remember the Name* Joan Wilder has surrendered her old fantasies about men and said goodbye to her odd, uncertain personality. The payoff for her is that unexpectedly, Jack Caloon comes for her after all, miraculously transforming a romance villain to her New York neighborhood to sweep her away. He has transmuted the Elixir he was after — the precious emerald — into another form, love. Joan gets her reward of romance, but she has earned it by learning that she could live without it.

## THE WORLD IS CHANGED

Another aspect of the Elixir is that the wisdom which heroes bring back with them may be so powerful that it forces change not only on them, but also those around them. The whole world is altered and the consequences spread far. There is a beautiful image for this in *Excalibur*. When Percival brings the Grail back to the ailing Arthur, the King rises and rules out with his knights again. They are so filled with new life that flowers burst into bloom at their passing. They are a living Elixir, whose mere presence renews nature.

**THE ELIXIR OF RESPONSIBILITY**

A common and powerful Elixir is for heroes to take under responsibility at the Return, giving up their lower status for a place of leadership or service within a group. Families and relationships get started, cities are founded. The hero's center has moved from the ego to the Self, and sometimes expands to include the group. Mad Max, the lower hero of George Miller's *Mad Max: Beyond the Thunderdome*, furthest has submode to become Mentor and father-figure to a race of orphaned children. The Elixir is his skill at survival and his recollection of the old world before the apocalypse, which he passes on to the orphans.

**THE ELIXIR OF TRAGEDY**

In the tragic mode, heroes die or are defeated, brought down by their tragic flaw. No there is learning, and an Elixir brought back from the experience. Who learned? The audience, for they see the errors of the tragic hero and the consequences of error. They learn, if they are wise, what mistakes to avoid, and this is the Elixir that they bring away from the experience.

**SADDER BUT WISER**

Sometimes the Elixir is heroes taking a rueful look back at their wrong turns on the path. A feeling of closure is created by a hero acknowledging that he is sadder but wiser for having gone through the experience. The Elixir he brings away is better medicine, but it may keep him from making the same error again, and his past serves as fair warning to the audience not to choose that path. The heroes of *Rocky Horror* and *White Men Can't Jump* have been down a road of learning that caused pain and pleasure. They ultimately lose the prize of love, must Return without the woman of their dreams, and have to console themselves with the Elixir of experience. These stories create a feeling that the account is closed and the heroes are being presented with the final balance:

**SADDER BUT NO WISER**

A "sadder but wiser" hero is acknowledging that he's been a fool, which is the first step to recovery. The worse kind of fool is the one who doesn't get it. Either he never

own the error or he goes through the motions but has not really learned his lesson. Even after achieving terrible odds, he slides back to the same behavior that got him in trouble in the first place. He is sadder but no wiser. This is another kind of circle dance.

In this type of Return, a selfish or foolish character seems to have grown and changed. Perhaps he is a clown or Trickster, like Dick Dope in the *Country Store* pictures or Eddie Murphy in *48 Hours* or *Teddy Bears*, who seems he has learned his lesson. However, in the end he humiliates the Elixir and returns to an original error. He may fall back to his original, irreversible attitude, closing the circle and dooming himself to repeat the adventure.

For this is the penalty of failing to return with the Elixir. The hero, or someone else, is doomed to repeat the Ordeal until the lesson is learned or the Elixir is brought home to share.

## EPilogue

Just as some stories may have a prologue that precedes the main action, there may also be a need for an epilogue that follows the bulk of the story. An epilogue or postscript on rare occasions can serve to complete the story, by projecting ahead to some future time to show how the characters turned out. *Seven Years in Tibet* has an epilogue that shows the characters a year after the main story has ended. The feeling communicated is that even though there is isolation and death, life goes on. *Back to Back* Ending has an epilogue that shows the birth of the baby hero's little some nine months after the main plot has been resolved. Stories that show a group of characters at a formative or critical period, like *American Graffiti* or war movies such as *Glory* or *The Dirty Dozen*, may end with a short segment that tells how the characters did, progressed in life or were remembered. *A League of Their Own* has an extensive epilogue in which an aging woman, ballplayer, having remembered her career in flashback for the main body of the film, visits the Baseball Hall of Fame and sees many of her teammates. The fates of the players are revealed and the surviving women, now in their sixties, stage a game to show that they still know how to play ball. Their spirit is the Elixir that revives the hero and the audience.

There have been a few of the purposes and functions of Return. There are also pitfalls to avoid in Returning with the Elixir.

## PITFALLS OF THE RETURN

It's easy to blow it in the Return. Many stories fall apart in the final moments. The Return is too abrupt, prolonged, unforced, unsurprising, or unconvincing. The mood or chain of thought the author has created just evaporates and the whole effect is wasted. The Return may also be too ambiguous. Many people faulted the loose ending of *Blue Juice* for failing to resolve uncertainty about a woman's guilt.

## UNRESOLVED SUBPLOTS

Another pitfall is that writers fail to bring all the elements together at the Return. It's common for writers today to have subplot threads dangling. Perhaps in the hurry to finish and deal with the main characters, the bits of secondary characters and ideas are forgotten about, even though they may be extremely interesting to the audience. Older films tend to be more complete and satisfying because the creators took time to work out every subplot. Character arcs could be worked on to do their bit somewhere in the beginning, the middle, and the end. A rule of thumb: Subplots should have at least three "beats" or scenes distributed throughout the story, one in each act. All the subplots should be acknowledged or resolved in the Return. Each character should come away with some variety of Elisee or learning.

## TOO MANY ENDINGS

On the other hand, the Return should not seem labored or repetitive. Another good rule of thumb for the Return phase is to adhere to the KISS equation, that is Keep It Simple, Stupid. Many stories fail because they have too many endings. The audience senses the story is over but the writer, perhaps unable to choose the right ending, tries several. This leads to frustration in audiences, disrupting the strategy the writer has created. People want to know the story's definitively over so they can quickly get up and leave the theater or finish the book with a powerful charge of freedom. An overly ambitious film like *Lost in La Mancha*, trying to take on a dense novel, can exhaust an audience with demands and endings that seem to go on forever.

An extreme example of keeping it simple might be the famous match that forms the climax of *The Korean War*. When the last kick is delivered and the team wins, the credits roll immediately in a burst of final theme music. There is almost

no doubtment. We know the kid is bearing the Elite of lessons learned well in his training.

### ABRUPT ENDINGS

A Return can seem too abrupt, giving the sense the writer has quit too soon after the climax. A story tends to feel incomplete unless a certain emotional space is devoted to bidding farewell to the characters and drawing some conclusions. An abrupt Return is like someone hanging up the phone without saying goodbye, or a pilot bailing out without leaving the plane in for a landing.

### FOCUS

A Return may feel out of focus if the climactic questions raised in Act One and joined in Act Two, are not answered now. Writers may have failed to pose the right questions in the first place. Without realizing it, a writer may have drifted the theme. A tale that started out as a love story may have turned into an exposé of government corruption. The writer has lost the thread. The story will not seem focused unless the reader is closed by Returning to the original frames.

### PUNCTUATION

The final function of Return is to conclude the story decisively. The story should end with the emotional equivalent of a punctuation mark. A story, like a sentence, can end in only four ways: with a period, an exclamation point, a question mark, or an ellipsis (the three or four little dots that indicate your thoughts have just trailed off vaguely. Example: Do you want to go now, or...)

The needs of your story and your attitude may dictate ending with the listing of a period, an image or line of dialogue flatly making a declarative statement. "Life goes on." "Love conquers all." "Good triumphs over evil." "That's the way life is." "There's no place like home."

An ending can give the effect of an exclamation point if the intent of the work is to stir action or rouse alarm. Science fiction and horror films may end on a note of "We are not alone!" or "Repent or perish!" Stories of social awareness may end with a passionate roar of "Never again!" or "Wise up and throw off chains of oppression!" or "Something must be done!"

## Chapter Eight

In a more open-ended approach to structure, you may want to end with the effect of a question mark, and the feeling that uncertainties remain. The final image may pose a question such as “Will she here Return with the Elbow or will it be forgotten?” An open-ended story may also trail off with the feeling of an ellipsis. Unspoken questions may linger in the air or conflicts may remain unresolved with endings that suggest doubt or ambiguity: “The hero can’t decide between two women, and therefore...” or “Love and art are irreconcilable so...” or “Life goes on... and on... and on...” or “She proved she’s not a killer, but...”

One way or another, the very ending of a story should announce that it’s all over — like the Warner Bros. cartoon signature line “That’s all, folks.” Oral storytellers, in addition to using formulas like “...and they lived happily ever after,” will sometimes end folktales with a ritual statement like “I’m done, that’s that, and who’ll ease my dry throat with a drink?” Sometimes a final image, such as the hero riding off into the sunset, can sum up the story’s theme in a ritual metaphor and let the audience know it’s over. The final image of *Utopia*, a shot of Clint Eastwood’s character leaving his wife’s grave and returning to his home, signals the end of the journey and sums up the story’s theme.

There are only a few of the features of Return with the Elbow. As we come full circle, let’s leave a little opening for the unknown, the unexpected, the unexplored.

## THE WIZARD OF OZ

*Dorothy’s Return begins with opening goodbye to her allies and acknowledging the Elbow of love, courage, and wisdom since she has gained them from them. Then, rapping her heels and chanting “There’s no place like home,” she wishes herself back to Kansas where she started.*

*Back home in the Ordinary World, back to Munch and where Dorothy wakes up in bed with a bruise on her head. The Return is ambiguous. Was the trip to Oz “real?” or was it the dream of a girl with a conscience? In every story, however, it doesn’t matter; the journey was real to Dorothy.*

*She imagines the people around her at home are from Oz. But her perception of them has changed as a result of her experience in the Special World; she remembers that some of it was terrible, some beautiful, but the bottom is what she’s learned — there’s no place like home. Dorothy’s dilemma is that she will never have been again a stranger in a strange land.*

*It's not this little frame house in Kansas in which she writes, but her own mind. She is a fully integrated person in possession of her best qualities, in control of her words, and in touch with the positive forms of masculine and feminine energy within her. She has incorporated every lesson she has learned from every being along the road. She is fully happy in her own skin and will feel at home in nature where she is. The Elite she brings back is this new idea of home, a new concept of her Self.*



And so the Elite's Journey ends, or at least rests for a while, for the journey of life and the adventure of story never really end. The hero and the audience bring back the Elite from the current adventure, but the quest to integrate the lessons goes on. It's for each of us to say what the Elite is — wisdom, experience, mischief, love, fun, or the thrill of a lifetime. But a good story, like a good journey, leaves us with an Elite that changes us, makes us more aware, more alive, more human, more whole, more a part of everything that is. The circle of the Hero's Journey is complete.

## QUESTIONING THE JOURNEY

1. What is the *filix* of *Ann Inuit? Ayl City Rules? Fast Forward? Dams and Hires?*
2. What is the *filix* your hero brings back from the experience? Is it kept in her/his/it or is it shared?
3. Does your story go on too long after the main event or climax is over? What would be the effect of simply ending it off after the climax? How much disappointment do you need to satisfy the audience?
4. In what ways has the hero gradually taken more responsibility in the course of the story? Is the Return a point of taking greater responsibility?
5. Who is the hero of the story now? Has your story changed heroes, or have characters been to be honored? Who should not to be a disappointment? Are there any surprises in the final outcome?
6. Is your story worth telling? Has enough been learned to make the effort worthwhile?
7. Where are you or your own Hero's journey? What is the *filix* you hope to bring back?





LOOKING BACK ON THE JOURNEY

# EPILOGUE: LOOKING BACK ON THE JOURNEY

---

*"I had a bit of a lot of fun, and I've enjoyed every minute of it."*

—Errol Flynn



Now that we have come to the end of the Road of Heroes, it may be useful to examine how this model works in some representative film stories. I have chosen *Tomb Raider*, *Pulp Fiction*, *The Low King*, and *The Ball Player* as stories that made creative, entertaining use of the Hero's Journey archetypes and structures. I also want to say a few words about the *Star Wars* saga, which has been much a part of the development of the Hero's Journey idea.

Analyzing these films and tracing the Hero's Journey as they have been a rewarding exercise, revealing some story flows and also surprising levels of meaning and poetic association. I strongly recommend you try this fun yourself on a movie, novel, or story of your own. This material pays back a rich reward when you apply it to a story or a life situation. However, before presenting these analyses, a few warnings and guidelines are in order.

## CAVEAT, SCRIPTOR

First, *Caveat Scriptor!* (Let the writer beware!) The Hero's Journey model is a guideline. It's not a cookbook recipe or a mathematical formula to be applied rigidly to every story. To be effective, a story doesn't have to conform with this or any other

*Concepts*

about paradigm, or method of analysis. The ultimate measure of a story's success or excellence is not its compliance with any established pattern, but its lasting popularity and effect on the audience. To force a story to conform to a structural model is putting the cart before the horse.

It's possible to write good stories that don't exhibit every feature of the Hero's Journey; in fact, it's better if they don't. People love to see familiar conventions and expectations defied creatively. A story can break all the "rules" and yet still touch universal human emotions.

**FORM FOLLOWS FUNCTION**

*Remember:* The needs of the story dictate its structure. Form follows function. Your beliefs and priorities, along with the characters, setting, style, tone, and mood you are trying to get across, will determine the shape and design of the plot. Structure will also be influenced by the audience, and the time and place in which the story is being told.

The forms of stories change with the needs of the audience. New story types with different themes will continue to be created. For instance, thanks to television and MTV styles of cutting, the attention span of the world audience is shorter these days and its sophistication is greater than ever before. Writers can build faster-moving stories and can assume the audience will be able to handle twists and shortcuts in familiar structures.

New terms are being coined every day and new observations about story are being made every time one is written. The Hero's Journey is only a guideline, a starting point for hammering out your own story language and rules of thumb.

**CHOOSE YOUR METAPHOR**

The pattern of the Hero's Journey is but one metaphor for what goes on in a story or a human life. I have used training, college classes, and human sexual response as metaphors to help explain the pattern I see in stories, but these are far from the only possibilities. Work out a different metaphor or several of them, if it helps you understand storytelling better. You might find it useful to compare a story to a baseball game, with nine innings instead of twelve stages, and terms like "Sevenshifting Satchel" instead of Seizing the Sword. You might describe the process of

sailing a boat, taking a road, riding a river, driving a car, or wearing a statue makes a more meaningful comparison to telling a story. Sometimes a combination of metaphors is needed to illuminate different facets of the human journey.

The stages, terms, and ideas of the Hero's Journey can be used as a design template for stories, or as a means of troubleshooting a story as long as you don't follow these guidelines too rigidly. It's probably best to acquaint yourself with the Hero's Journey ideas and then forget about them as you sit down to write. If you get lost, refer to the metaphor as you would check a map on a journey. But don't consult the map for the journey. You don't drive with a map pinned to your windshield. You consult it before setting out or when you get disoriented. The joy of a journey is not reading or following a map, but exploring unknown places and wandering off the map now and then. It's only by getting creatively lost, beyond the boundaries of tradition, that new discoveries can be made.

## DESIGN TEMPLATE

You may want to experiment with the Hero's Journey as an outline for plotting a new story or troubleshooting one in the works. In Disney Animation we have used the Hero's Journey model to tighten up scenarios, pinpoint problems, and lay out structure. Hundreds of writers have told us they plotted their screenplays, romance novels, or TV sitcom episodes using the Hero's Journey and the guidance of mythology.

Some people like to plot a movie or novel by writing the twelve stages of the journey on twelve index cards. If you already know some of the major scenes and turning points, write those down where you think they match up with the twelve stages. In this way you begin to map out your story by filling in the gaps in your knowledge of the characters and what happens to them. Use the ideas of the Hero's Journey to ask questions about your characters: What are the Ordinary and Special Worlds for these people? What is my hero's Call to Adventure? How is fate expressed in Refusal? Is it overcome by Steering with a Mentor? What is the First Threshold my hero has to cross? And so on. Before long the gaps fill and you can progress to chart Hero's Journeys for all the characters and subplots until the complete design is sketched out.

You may find that a certain scene matches with the function of one of the stages, but it comes at what seems to be the “wrong” point in the Hero’s Journey model. In your story a Mentor might be needed to present a Call and Refusal in Act Two or Three instead of Act One, as the Hero’s Journey model appears to indicate. Don’t worry about this — put it in the scene wherever it seems right to you. The model only shows the most likely place for an event to occur.

Any element of the Hero’s Journey can appear at any point in a story. *Exiles and Brides* begins with a hero’s Ordeal or Resurrection that you usually expect to see at the midpoint or end of a Hero’s Journey, and yet the story works. All stories are composed of elements of the Hero’s Journey, but the units can be arranged in almost any order to serve the needs of your particular story.

This is why you use index cards rather than writing the stages on a single sheet of paper. You can move the cards around to create scenes as needed, and you can add more cards to treat a movement like Call and Refusal needs to be repeated a number of times (as was the case with *Titan*).

You may find that as you narrate your story, you will think of some scenes that don’t seem to match any particular stage of the journey. You may have to invent your own terminology or metaphors to cover this category of scenes, as well as tailoring the Hero’s Journey terminology to suit your own picture of the universe.

## DEMONSTRATION OF THE IDEA

Now let’s look at five very different films to demonstrate how the cards of the Hero’s Journey keep being re-created with new combinations of the old patterns.

## DROWNING IN LOVE

A Hero's Journey Analysis of James Cameron's *Titanic*

When the great ocean liner *Titanic*, on its maiden voyage from Liverpool to New York, scraped against an iceberg and sank on the evening of April 14, 1912, a story of extraordinary emotional impact began to form. Scattered news reports flashed around the world, telling of over fifteen hundred people lost, more than half the souls aboard the supposedly unbreakable luxury liner. Then came the individual stories of cowardice and courage, arrogant selfishness and noble self-sacrifice. The threads were bound together into one great epic which, with its powerful elements of human tragedy and death, was amply fit for succeeding generations in the form of books, articles, documentaries, feature films, stage plays, and even a musical or two. The *Titanic* disaster became part of Western popular culture: a subject of abiding fascination like the Pyramids, UFOs, or *Artistic* romance.

Then, after eighty-five years of *Titanic* stories, an unusual coalition of two Hollywood studios, Paramount and 20th Century Fox, offered the public yet another version — James Cameron's *Titanic*. Not only did this one top all the other *Titanic*-related movies in its production values and spectacle, it was also the most expensive movie ever made, costing more than two hundred million dollars to produce and many millions more to advertise and distribute. Director and writer James Cameron's vision, requiring the pooled financial resources of two studios, was so colossal that many observers predicted the same fate for the movie as the ship. The new movie was sure to sink, possibly taking the studios and their top executives down with it. No matter how popular it would be, no matter how fantastically well-received were the special effects, such an arguably enormous production could not possibly recoup its costs.

After all, said the critics who specialize in reviewing movies before they are made, it had so many strikes against it: First, everyone knows how the story turns out. They dance, they hit the iceberg, they die. That vital element of suspense, of not knowing what happens next, would be lacking.

## Chapter 16

Second, it was a period piece, set in the obscure time before World War I, and everyone knows period pieces are expensive and often unpopular because they are not “relevant” to modern audiences. Third, the structure of the script was considered as flawed as the design of the Titanic, forcing audiences to endure an hour and half of melodrama, the length of a normal movie, before delivering the iceberg and the action. It had a tragic ending, which is usually death at the box office. At over three hours long, it was almost twice the ideal picture length from the point of view of theater owners, who could schedule fewer screenings per day. And finally, its featured players were not considered big stars at that time.

Twentieth Century Fox executives, who had put up most of the money in return for the international distribution rights, had particular cause to worry. The Titanic story was familiar to the US and the UK, but not in Asia and other foreign markets. Would the vital international audiences turn out for a costume drama about a long-ago disaster?

Well, they did, in unprecedented numbers, and reportedly. To the amazement of everyone, including the filmmakers, audiences around the world embraced Titanic on a scale as huge as the ship itself. Its fantastic costs were recouped within two months, ensuring that Fox and Paramount would reap immense profits. It remained number one at the box office around the world for more than 16 weeks. A sweep of the Academy Awards, with the film pulling down fourteen nominations and eleven Oscars, including best picture and best director, provided another boost in success. The soundtrack hit number one on the charts and peaked there for four months.

Titanic never extended to beyond attending the movie or listening to the music. We live in a collecting society, where the ancient urge to own little pieces of a story can be indulged on a fantastic scale. In the same impulse that caused Neolithic people to carve bone models of their favorite goddess or totem animal, the contemporary movie audience wanted to own a piece of the Titanic experience.

They bought models of the ship, books about the movie, movies about the movie, and novel props such as lifeboats, deck chairs, and stoves offered in luxury catalogs. Some even went as far as to sign up for an expensive ride to the bottom of the sea in a high-tech submersible, to actually see the wreck of the great ship and the scaber graveyard of its passengers.

As the film continued to be the number-one box office attraction for four months, people began to wonder what was going on. What was fueling this unusual response to a mere movie?

#### QUANTUM MOVIE EVENTS

Certain films, because of surprising box office success or memorable critical because permanent monuments on the cultural landscape. *Titanic*, like *The Shawshank Redemption*, *The Godfather*, and *Independence Day*, has become such a monument. Movies of this type are quantum events, breaking through old shells and boundaries, flinging the idea of a movie to a whole new level. These quantum-event films capture something that resonates in many, many people. They must express some nearly universal emotion or satisfy a widely shared wish. What was the universal wish that *Titanic* granted?

Naturally, I'm inclined to think the movie succeeded because it satisfies the universal wish for meaning, and that it does so through extensive use of Heron's Journey motifs and concepts. As James Cameron said in a letter to the *Los Angeles Times*, March 28, 1998: *Titanic* "intentionally incorporates universals of human experience and emotion that are timeless — and familiar because they reflect our basic emotional fabric. By dealing in archetypes, the film touches people in all cultures and of all ages."

These archetypal patterns turn a chaotic event like the sinking of an ocean liner into a coherent design that asks questions and provides opinions about how life should be lived.

As a story within an epic scale, *Titanic* indulges the luxury of a leisurely storytelling pace, taking its time to set up an elaborate framing device which has a complete Heron's Journey structure of its own. In this glacial, parallel to the actual story of the *Titanic*'s passengers, at least two Heron's Journeys are unfolded: one of a woman-adventurer seeking a physical treasure, the other of an old woman returning to the scene of a great disaster to solve a grand passion. A possible third Heron's Journey is that of the audience, traveling into the *Titanic* world to learn the dead ship's lessons.

Like many movies, *Titanic* is "bookended" by an outer tale set on modern day, that serves several important story functions. First, by using actual documentary



footage of the Titanic wreck on the bottom of the sea, it reminds us that this is more than a made-up story — it's a dramatization of a real event. The wreck of the ship and the powerful, humble relics of its human passengers bring out one of the most powerful elements in the production — that this could happen, this *did* happen, and it happened to people like us.

Second, by mentioning the steamer of Old Rose, the bookend device connects this story of another time with our own day, and reminds us that the Titanic disaster was not so long ago, within the span of our human life. Old Rose dramatizes the fact that there are many people alive today who remember the Titanic, and a few who actually survived it.

Third, the framing device creates mystery — who is this elderly woman who claims to be a Titanic survivor, and what happened to the post-war captives is so eager to get Edw. Rose find love and did his lover survive? These question marks are hooks that engage the audience's attention and create suspense even though we know the general outcome of the Titanic story.

*Twain* begins by introducing us to our HERO of the mini-story, the very contemporary figure of Newk Lorenz, the scientist/businessman/explorer who can't quite decide how to present himself to the public. His ORDINARY WORLD is that of a showman trying to raise money for his expensive scientific adventures. His OUTER PROBLEM is trying to find a treasure, a diamond thought to have been lost on the Titanic; his INNER PROBLEM is trying to find an authentic voice and a better system of values.

The figure of the scientist-explorer is common enough to have become an archetype, expressed as Sir Arthur Conan Doyle's creation, Professor Challenger; Allan Quatermain of *King Solomon's Mines*; the explorer-showman Carl Denning of *King Kong*; and the contemporary Indiana Jones. These fictional characters are reflections of real adventuring archaeologists and travelers like Howard Carter, Heinrich Schliemann, Roy Chapman Andrews, and Jacques Cousteau. Robert Ballard, the scientist-adventurer-businessman who actually found the wreck of the Titanic, is our model for Lorenz in the movie, and actually went through his own Hero's Journey in choosing how to regard the ship. At first he came as a kind of scientific companion, but gradually was moved deeply by the human tragedy and decided the wreck site was a sacred place that should be left undisturbed as a memorial to those who died on the ship.

In this plot thread, the young scientist is following a prime directive: find the treasure. But through the magic of the old woman story, a tale that occupies the body of the film, the explorer is transformed from a money-driven capitalist to a true explorer of the heart, who comes to understand that there are more important treasures in life than jewels and money.

## THE OBJECT OF THE QUEST

What is the Holy Grail Loreen seeks in her quest? It's a diamond called "The Heart of the Ocean," a name that links the theme of love with the setting of the film. The jewel is a true MacGuffin—something small and concrete to focus the audience's attention and symbolize the hopes and aspirations of the characters. A diamond is a symbol of perfection, of the immortal, eternal power of the gods. Its facets, with their mathematical precision, are physical proof of the grand design, of the creative hand and mind of the gods. Like the gods' certain cabotages, such as gold, silver, and jewels, seems to be immortal. When flesh and bone, leaf and tree, even copper and steel, corrode away, jewels remain untouched, unchanged. They miraculously survive the crushing power of the bottom of the sea in perfect condition. Jewels and precious metals have always been used, along with incense, perfumes, beautiful flowers, and other means, to connect religious and dramatic presentations to the world of the gods. They are little pieces of heaven, islands of perfection in an imperfect world, "islands of perfection" giving a glimpse of Paradise. "The Heart of the Ocean" is a symbol for the idealized notions of love and honor that the movie reveres.

Loren remarks the ship with his remote-controlled robot but doesn't find the bit of heaven he's seeking, at least not in the way he anticipated. Opening the safe he's retrieved, he finds rotten gold that was once money and a miraculously preserved drawing of a beautiful young woman, wearing nothing but the diamond he is looking for. Loren makes a CNN broadcast that is a CALL, heard by Old Rose and her granddaughter, Lizzy Calvert.

Old Rose's **ORDINARY WORLD** is that of an elderly but active senior living in Ojai, California. She is a **HERO** in her own drama, bringing her long life to a climax and conclusion, but she also serves as a **MENTOR** for Loren and the audience, guiding us through the special world of the Titanic and teaching a higher system of values. Her **OUTER PROBLEM** is how to get across the Titanic

## Chapter 14

experience her **INNER PROBLEM** is dredging up those strong memories that for a long time have been swimming in her unconscious. She joins her own **CALL** to Lorez, claiming to be the woman in the drawing he has found, and asserting that she knows something about the diatribe. After some **REFUSAL** to accept her story, he accepts and brings her out to his research vessel, where she begins to tell her story of the Titanic's first and last days at sea.

**MAIN STORY — ORDINARY WORLD**

Now the movie leaves the framing device to fully enter the main story and the world of the Titanic. We see the ship in her new mental glory for the first time. The bustling dock is the **ORDINARY WORLD** stage on which the main protagonists or **HEROES**, young Rose and Jack, are introduced. Rose gets an elaborate **ENTRANCE** as one of the beautiful possessions in the recourage of Cal Hockley, her fiancé and the **SHADOW**, or villain of the piece, a smugging "lady" straight out of a Victorian melodrama. We also meet the sub-villain, Hockley's henchman Looey, who executes Cal's arrogant wishes.

Our first sight of Rose is her hand in a delicate white glove, emerging from the mirror. The hands of the lovers, twining and separating, will become a continuing visual thread. She is elegantly dressed but feels a prisoner, as Old Rose tells us in voice-over. She is a **HERO** on a journey, but at this moment wears the mask of the **VICTIM** archetype, a damsel in distress, beautiful but powerless.

Cal represents the arrogance and bigotry of his class and also the dark, Shadow side of manhood and marriage. He is at one extreme of a **POLARITY**, representing repression and tyranny, with Jack at his polar opposite representing liberation and love. Although the Titanic is a great feat of the imagination, built by honest laboring men, it has deep, fatal flaws, the fault of arrogant men like Cal. He has bought into and identified with the hubristic aspects of the Titanic, believing fully that it is unshakable because it was created by men of Cal's exalted class, by "gentlemen." He claims that "not even God himself could sink her." In the world of myths, a statement like that is sure to bring down the wrath of the gods, who hit us usefully and punish cruelly.

Rose's mother, Ruth ENWAT Bukater, is another **SHADOW** figure, representing the dark side of femininity, the repress-w, another potential of near-barbarism, a wicked, scheming queen like Medea or Clytemnestra.

Rose has received a dark **CALL TO ADVENTURE**, being manipulated into marrying a man she doesn't love. As Rose **CROSSES THE THRESHOLD** of the gateway with her mother and Cal it is a kind of royal procession, but Rose experiences it as a march to slavery, and the Titanic as a slave ship taking her to captivity in America. She doesn't quite **REFUSE THE CALL** but is certainly a reluctant hero.

Now we meet the second principal **HERO**, Jack, who with his **ALLY**, the young Italian immigrant Fabrizio, is gambling, risking everything on fate or chance. A clock is ticking, setting up a **MOTIF** of time running out, of the general shortness and precariousness of life. Jack's **ORDINARY WORLD** is that of drifting and adventure, trusting to luck and his own skills and gifts. The **CALL TO ADVENTURE** comes, on one level, as he wins the card game and a pair of third-class tickets on the Titanic. He shows no **RELUCTANCE** or fear at this level — he's not the reluctant kind of hero. However, the **IRONY** is thick as he declares himself and Fabrizio to be "the luckiest sons-of-bitches alive." If he knew what awaits him, he might have cause to be afraid.

Jack is a slightly superhuman figure who doesn't appear to have major flaws, but he will have an **INNER PROBLEM**, trying to find and win the love of his life. If he has a flaw, it's that he's a little too steady and arrogant, which later worsens his problems with Cal and Lorraine. His **OUTER PROBLEM** or challenge is first to climb into society and then to survive the disaster. He is something of a **CATALYST HERO**, one who is already fully developed and who doesn't change much, but who spends his energy in helping others to change. He is also a **TRICKSTER HERO**, using deceit and disguise to penetrate the enemy's defenses. In the end he makes the ultimate heroic **SACRIFICE**, giving his life to save the woman he loves.

Together Jack and Rose form a pair of **YIN-AND-YANG OPPONITES**, male and female, pure and void, but also express the great oppositional forces of Flight and Restriction. Jack stands for freedom, no boundaries, not accepting the limits imposed by society, or fears daring to fly above his station. At the beginning of the film Rose is aligned, against her will, with the opposite force of Restriction, bound by society's conventions, by the force of her mother's grasping will, by her promise to marry Cal Hockley, the dark prince of society. She is a Persephone being dragged down to the underworld. Cal, like Pluto, the god of the underworld who kidnapped Persephone, obsesses about money and is harsh and judging. Pluto was the god of

wealth and one of the official judges of the dead. Persephone's lover in the under-world was Adonis, a phenomenally beautiful youth. Like Adonis, Jack comes to Rose in her dark imprisonment and reminds her of the joys of life.

Rose's **INNER PROBLEM** will be to break away from her **ORDINARY WORLD** to realign herself with the freedom and ability in life that Jack embodies. Her **OUTER PROBLEM** will be to be successful in the car impement what she's learned in a long, happy life.

Olson elaborately explores the function of **MENTOR**, with a number of characters serving the master at different times. In addition to Old Rose, Molly Brown does the **MENTOR** job, guiding Jack through the **SPECIAL WORLD** of First Class and, like a fairy godmother, providing him with a proper costume so he can pass as a gentleman.

Captain Smith is supposed to be a **MENTOR** for the entire voyage, a leader and the king of this little world. But he is a fatally flawed king, arrogant and complacent, overconfident on the triumphant first voyage of his career.

Jack wears the mask of **MENTOR** for Rose, teaching her how to enjoy life and be free. He fulfills the fantasy of many a young woman by freely offering the gift of commitment. From nothing but a glance he decides he can't abandon her, for "I'm involved now." Later, when the ship goes down, he gives her the vital knowledge of how to survive by staying out of the water as long as possible and swimming away from the suction of the sinking ship.

Another **MENTOR** to Rose is Thomas Anderson, the architect of the ship. She wins his respect by her intelligent questions about the Titanic, and he rewards her by telling her how she can find Jack when he is trapped below decks. In this he is a Daedalus to Rose's Ariadne. Daedalus was the architect of the deadly Labyrinth, and gave its secrets to the young princess Ariadne so she could rescue her love, Theseus, who ventured into the Labyrinth to battle a monster that represented the dark side of her family.

**CROSSING THE THRESHOLD** in *Titanic* is celebrated with an elaborate sequence depicting the ship "stretching her legs." This movement climaxes with Jack and Fabrizio on the bow of the ship, and Jack asking, "I'm king of the world!" Jack and Rose have other Thresholds to cross — each entering the other's world and both entering a Special World of love and danger.

**TESTS, ALLIES, and ENEMIES** play out in conflicts between Jack and Rose and the forces of Restriction; Jack and Rose connect and become **ALLIES** when she tries to kill herself by jumping off the ship. He **RESCUES** her and wins an invitation to dine with Rose and Cal in First Class. He enters that **SPECIAL WORLD** with the help of **MENTOR**, Molly Brown, and is **TESTED** secretly at the dinner by the naming of his **ENEMIES**, Cal and Rose's mother. He passes those tests and stands up to their violence, delivering his credo, an expression of the movie's theme: Life's a gift, learn to take it as it comes, make each day count. He wins Rose's greater respect and guarantees further clashes with Cal.

Rose's **TEST** comes a little later when Jack, promising to show her a "real party," guides her into the **SPECIAL WORLD** of Third Class. In a sequence of wild music, dancing, and drinking, Rose is initiated into the world of Dionysus, the god of intoxication, passion and ecstasy. It's a test of her society girl standards — will she be offended by the earthy bawling orgy? She passes the test by outdoing the immigrants with her drinking, smoking, and dancing.

The stage of **APPROACH** is expressed in the lovers' intimate romantic dance with each other, including the lyrical moment when Jack positions Rose at the bow of the ship, making her his figurative tail, teaching her how to fly, how to balance between life and death. If he is king of the world, now she is queen.

Rose makes a deeper **APPROACH** when she asks Jack to dress her picture, mistfully exposing her naked self to him. This is a **TEST** for Jack which he passes by acting like a gentleman and a professional artist, enjoying the erotic moment but not taking advantage of her vulnerability.

**THRESHOLD GUARDIANS** abound as the lovers' drive near to the Inland Cave and the beginning of an elaborate, multi-layered **ORDEAL**. One of White Sox Lane's stewards sends guards of lions, elephants, and grays, and a squadron of them, like a pack of hunting dogs, is sent by Cal to seek out the lovers. Jack and Rose, fleeing from Restriction, find themselves deep in the wild where they face an **ORDEAL** on the level of animacy. They climb into the Inland Cave of the luxury insurance and join as lovers. In the "triple death" of cinema Rose's hand smashes the window glass, looking like the hand of a drowning victim, drowning in love. By crossing this great threshold, they have died to the old life and are reborn in the new.

The death-bringing **ORDEAL** for the Titanic comes moments later when the ship hits the iceberg, the most incredible force of Nemesis, that spirit sent by the gods to punish prideful mortals. The death of the ship and of hundreds of passengers occupies the next major movement of the drama.

Jack and Rose harvest some **REWARD** from their death-and-rebirth experience. They are bonded, supporting each other in the struggle to survive. This is tested when Rose is given a chance to escape in a lifeboat. Seeing that Cal will abandon Jack to die, Rose fights her way back onto the ship to share her fate with Jack's.

**THE ROAD BACK** is the battle for survival, which includes a classic **CHASE** as Cal, impatient for the ship to do its work, tries to hasten Jack and Rose's death with bullets. The other characters face life-and-death tests, some choosing to die with honor, others to live at all costs, and some, like Loomis, dying despite their most ignoble efforts to survive. Act Two concludes with Jack and Rose balancing on the steel rail and riding the ship as it plunges toward the bottom.

**RESURRECTION** commences as Jack and Rose fight to preserve the warmth of life in the frozen sea. Finding that the bit of floating wreckage they cling to will support only one person's weight, Jack puts Rose's life ahead of his in a classic **HERO'S SACRIFICE**. He has already lived a full life and has experienced perfect happiness with her. She is relatively new to freedom and life, and he charges her to live richly and fully enough for both of them. He lets go of life, confident of being **RESURRECTED** in her heart, in her memories.

Rose herself goes to the edge of death, but is **RESURRECTED** as the lone lifeboat searches for survivors in the sea of dead faces. In a final **TEST** of all she has learned from Jack, she summons the strength to swim to get a whistle from a dead officer's lips, calling for rescue. With that Old Rose concludes her story, returning us to the framing device in modern day and counting the toll of the Titanic's dead.

The sailor who finds the wreck in peace and silence. On the research ship Loomis tosses away the cigar he had saved to celebrate finding the diamond, a little **SACRIFICE** of an old personality trait. He admits to Rose's granddaughter that he spent three years thinking of the Titanic but never really got his message. He has been **TRANSFORMED** by the **ORDEAL**, and his **REWARDS** are his insight and the sympathy of Rose's granddaughter. Is there a glimmer of immortality, a chance to fully live out the traumatic loss of Jack and Rose in another generation? He has not found

the physical treasure be some stealing, but has her like Jack, found a greater treasure in the new world of romance:

Old Rose goes to the railing of the research ship, refusing her dying scene in the bow with Jack. She even climbs up on the railing as she did so long ago. In a final moment of **SUSPENSE** we don't know her intention — will she jump, joining Jack in the sea at last, like a belated Juliet pining for Romeo in death? But instead she pulls out the diamond and in a quick flash we see young Rose finding it in her pocket beneath the Statue of Liberty, an **ELIXIR** revealed for arrival. With a little cry of final dramatic **CLIMAX**, Old Rose releases it into the water where, like Jack, it spreads down into mystery, a last **SACRIFICE** that says her experience and memories are more important than any physical potencies. This is the **ELIXIR**, the healing message the movie means to send the audience home with.

Doesn't now to Old Rose falling asleep, surrounded by phrases of her long, full life. Here, after **FINAL CREDITS**, is **FINAL REWARD**, fulfillment of Jack's prophecies — Rose is an adventurer, a pilot, an actress, fishing boats by a California port, being babies, being a life for each of them part of the **ELIXIR** she brought back. The dark wounds of her family history have been healed.

Rose dreams, and in that **SPECIAL WORLD** the Titanic and its passengers live again, **RESURRECTED** by the power of the immemorial. Through Rose's eyes, we pass the **THRESHOLD GUARDIANS** of the White Star Line one last time, entering the heaven of First Class where all the good folk live eternally. (The villains are conspicuously absent, no doubt bobbing in a frigid, wet hell.) Jack stands at his old place by the clock, a supernatural being conquering time. He exceeds his hand, they touch again, they kiss, and the ship's company applaud this final **SACRED MARRIAGE**. Camera up to the ceiling dome, the vault of heaven, and its white party fills the screen. Rose has her **ELIXIR**.

## THE END

*Titanic* is certainly not a perfect movie, and there are hundreds of critics its point out its flaws — a certain inattention to the writing, a tendency to mull scenes with crude, obvious assurances like "Shit", "Oh, shit", and "I'll be God damned!" For a while at the beginning the movie seems to have Tourette's Syndrome. There is a sense of pandering to the modern audience in an exaggerated attempt to make the



*Chaplin's High*

story "relevant" with contemporary dialogue and acting styles; and there is a one-dimensional quality to some characters, especially the seething, unshaded villain.

Although well played by Billy Zane, Cal in the screenplay is one of the weakest parts of the design, and would have been a more effective rival if he were more seductive, a better match for Rose, real competition for Jack, and not such an obvious monster. Then it would have been a real contest, not a one-sided match between the most attractive young man in the moment and a leering, always cad with a bag of money in one hand and a pistol in the other.

The chase scene in which Cal is shooting at Jack and Rose while the Titanic is sinking strikes some people as almost dramatic overkill and takes them out of the movie. Perhaps it serves a story purpose — Cameron may have felt he needed his heroes to endure one more round in the belly of the Titanic and need Cal to drive them there — but another chase, such as needing to go back to its source, couldn't have achieved the same effect.

Maybe this round of conflicts isn't needed at all. The movie would benefit from cutting and this sequence of underwater scenes seems repetitive after they've already been through so many games. The whole sequence seems to be structured to build up to a climactic shot in which Jack and Rose rise from a wall of water — an iconic emblem of their struggle with the force of death. However, this shot is one of the least effective illusions in the movie, for the actors' faces are suddenly jared onto the waterpeople's bodies by some electronic magic which has not quite been perfected. The whole sequence could be cut or trimmed — there's enough tension, already.

I confess, we are here not to bury Caeson, but to analyze him — how does Cameron succeed, what strengthens the flow in his design?

## A GREAT STORY

First, the fate of the Titanic and its passengers is a great epic story in its own right, and has worked its fascination since the day the ship went down. A dramatization of the Titanic disaster, only recently unearthed in a film vault, was produced by a German company within weeks of the tragedy. It was only the first of many documentaries and feature films, not to mention countless books and articles, about the disaster. Like the tragic, fairy-tale story of Princess Diana, the events around the sinking of the Titanic fall into dramatic patterns that harmonize with deep, archetypal images, shared and understood by everyone.

SYMBOLISM OF "TITANIC"

From an archaic, archetypal name originates, the Titanic is laden with symbolism and meaning. The ship's name is a choice that reveals much about the psychology of its builders. In the movie, Kate asks Bruce Ismay, the businessman behind the Titanic project, why he chose that name. He replies that he wanted a name to evoke great magnitude, inspiring Reed to comment on the Freudian overtones of male preoccupation with size.

However the movie doesn't address the mythological origins of the word "titanic," which were certainly known to the classically-trained English gentlemen who chose that name. It refers to the immense Titans, giant perpetrators and deadly enemies of the gods. The Titans were fundamental forces from the beginning of time — greed, rule, and nihilism — and the gods had to fight a great battle to defeat them and imprison them under the earth before they spoiled and looted everything. When the press of the time called first-class passengers like Astor and Guggenheim "Titans of industry and capital," they were indicating ways that the greater size of their empires.

A few years before the Titanic was built, German archaeologists unearthed a Hittite temple called the Pegasus Altar that depicted in dramatic relief the battle between the gods and the Titans, recalling an earlier epic struggle with the gods' age-old enemies, the Titans. This monument is virtually a storyboard in stone for what would be a great special-effects room. The builders of the Titanic, who probably had seen pictures of these reliefs, chose to identify themselves and their dream not with the gods but with their ancient enemies, the Titans. They were truly challenging the gods by this choice. Many people felt, even before the ship sailed, that the builders were tempting fate to give the ship such a grandiose name. Even some was to claim that it was unshakable. That was a foolish blasphemy, challenging the almighty power of God. A superstitious man named the Titanic, something like the curse of King Tut's tomb, a belief that the builders called down the wrath of God by their arrogance and pride.

The story of the Titanic resonates with an old literary concept. The Ship of Fools Storytellers created the satirical form around the tale of Columbus' first voyage to the New World. One of the first expressions was Sebastian Brant's narrative poem, "Das Narrenschiff," printed only two years after Columbus first successfully crossed the Atlantic. It tells of a ship's passengers bound for Narragotia, the land of

foods, and is a scathing depiction of the follies of its time. It was widely translated and adapted into books and plays.

The *Ship of Fools* is an allegory, a story in which all the conditions of life and levels of society are compressed, roughly in the situation of a handful of pathetic passengers. It is a satiric tale, brutally depicting the flaws in the people and social systems of its time.

Tasso goes in for broad-brush social criticism as well, portraying the rich and powerful in foolish manners, and the poor as their noble but helpless victims. The exceptions are Jack, who is poor but not helpless, and Molly Brown, who is rich but not miserly. She is the somewhat noble American who rose from the same level as Jack and who may represent the healthy side of the American immigrant experience — ambitious, climbing the social ladder, but also big-hearted, egalitarian, generous, and fair. Tasso is more hopeful, less cynical than *The Ship of Fools*, suggesting that a few can transcend their foolishness and victimization to live full, meaningful lives.

The irony of *The Ship of Fools* was derived from the point of view, the audience's knowledge that the struggles of the passengers are meaningless and foolish because they are all trapped and doomed anyway. Tasso has some of that ironic feeling as Jack and Fabiano rush in their good fortune at winning tickets on a ship that we know will sink. In my guess with the territory in a story about a ship that we know is fated to destruction.

The idea of *The Ship of Fools* is summed up in the old phrase "We're all in the same boat." It shows that despite our foolish attention to superficial differences of birth, wealth, and status we are all trapped by the absolutes of life, all alike in being subject to inevitable forces like gravity, fate, death, and taxes.

A ship isolated at sea on a long journey becomes a convenient symbol of the human condition, of the world's hasty passage through life. The isolation of the Titanic in the North Atlantic makes her a little world, a microcosm, a nearly perfect model of the society of her time, in which the two thousand people on board represent all the millions alive at that time.

Like the ship itself, the scale of this story is epic, larger than life, big enough to tell the story of a whole culture, in this case of the whole Western world at that time. This vast story is made comprehensible and digestible by selecting the lives and deaths of a few who represent qualities and political issues to some degree in all members of the culture.

Like its epic predecessors, the *Iliad*, the *Odyssey*, the *Aeneid*, the *Arctic* tonances, or the *Ring Cycle* of *Wagner*. These tell part of a vast story, the bridging of two worlds, the Old World and the New. Within these enormous superlatives are hundreds of subplots and epic cycles, each with its own dramatic structure and completeness. No single work can tell all the threads, but the individual story can communicate the sense, the dramatic form, of the entire situation. There has been criticism for not dramatizing this or that subplot — the Carpathia's race to the coast, the storms of the *Astoria* and *Gaigopolitana*, the difficulties of the telegrapher in getting out distress calls, etc. But no film could tell all the subplots. Storytellers of the future can choose other incidents and personalities to highlight. It will take the combined output of many artists to fully tell the tale of the Titanic, just as it has taken Homer, Sophocles, Euripides, Virgil, Kazantzakis, Hollywood Productions, Glenn Gould, and thousands of other artists to fully tell the epic story of the *Odyssey*. It'll only one of dozens of epic cycles in the superlativity of the *Titanic* War.

As a story about the rapid crossing of the Atlantic, *Titanic* symbolizes this century's preoccupation with speedy travel and increasing global consciousness. It speaks of certainties of European culture passing to America, of the waves of immigrants filling the American continent, lured by the seductive promise of freedom. In the film the Statue of Liberty is a recurring symbol of the immigrant dream, a lighthouse beckoning the newcomers. Jack Dawson Fabrizio pretends he can see her all the way from Cherbourg.

The Statue of Liberty, a gift from the people of France to the people of America is a colonial example of the ancient practice of sending statues of gods and goddesses from a founding city to its colonies to connect them by a psychic thread, a religious tie. France and the United States went through revolutions at the same time and are linked by their devotion to liberty, one of many cultural links between New World and Old.

The content of *Titanic*'s release has to be taken into account in evaluating its success. It came out at a time when we were becoming more aware of a global society and links between Europe and America. Shocks like the Gulf War, the collapse of the Berlin Wall and the fall of Communism in Russia joined with unpredictable shifting worldwide weather patterns to make a time of uncertainty when the ship of life seems fragile. We were two years away from the end of the century and so a need to look back at the beginning.

## Chapter 54

The stage was set for the new Titanic movie by the discovery a few years before of the wreck's location on the ocean floor. The finding of the ship was a major triumph of science and a powerful psychological moment. For centuries it has been impossible to find ships lost at such depths. The Titanic being buried in the sea for so long, then found again, makes a strong symbol of our surprising power to recover lost treasures from the subconscious. It is a godlike thing to be able to go down and see the Titanic, and a true Hero's Journey to recover lost treasure from the subconscious.

The discovery led to the fantasy of raising the Titanic, as described in Clive Cussler's novel, *Raise the Titanic*, but now the fantasy became a real possibility. The experts agree it is feasible to raise the pieces of the ship, and many artifacts have been brought up, but for the moment the consensus is that it's better to leave the wreck where it lies as a monument to its victims. The spectacular drama of seeing live TV of the wreck with its program business remains helped provide the right dream for releasing another Titanic movie.

Much has been made of the inclusion of a young love story as a factor in Titanic's great popularity. It was a kind of Romeo and Juliet plot device, an easily relatable tale of young people from warring factions filling in love.

Romance is the genre Cameron has chosen to present the Titanic story, and by making that choice he opens the story mostly to women. He could have chosen other genres, telling the Titanic story as a mystery, a detective story, a treasure hunt, or even as a comedy. As times it is all of those things, but the primary theme and design principle is romantic love, and the structure is that of a romance. For that choice he gains a clear-cut formula with a high degree of audience identification—a triangular relationship in which a woman must be saved from domination by a cruel older man through the intervention of a younger man.

This triangulated relationship is a familiar pattern in romance novels and in the quantity of film noir and hard-boiled fiction. It provides the three-act road stage for conflict, jealousy, rivalry, betrayal, revenge, and rescue just as do the stories of *Grease*, *Lancelot*, and *King Arthur*; the romance movie where the hero must choose between two men, and the film noir world of the young woman who must choose between Mr. Big and the young doctor or detective.

Leonardo DiCaprio plays the doctor corner of the triangle in *Titanic*. The secret of his remarkable attractive power may be that he projects the archetypal

mask of the romantic young man, displaying both masculine action and feminine sensitivity. He is well suited to play Jack, a Ferryman, a pure aeternus (eternal youth) who remains forever young by his brutal, sacrificial death. Rose is another Wendy, a girl in bedclothes running around a ship dodging an evil Captain Hook while the eternal youth teaches her how to fly and how to embrace life. The ticking and the ticking of the clock fulfill the same archetypal purpose as the crocodile which has swallowed a clock in *Howl's Moving Castle*. They are projections of the Shadow, the unconscious force that threatens to destroy us, sooner or later, if we don't acknowledge it.

Further back in our mythic past, Jack's slight, youthful persona resonates with David, the gun-killer, and especially with doomed young gods like Adonis and Osiris, who die tragically young; Jack is also a twin with Dionysus, the god of frenzy, passion, amnesia, who appeals to the wild side of women, who drives them wild. The shadowy dates in the lower depths of secrecy, in which Rose is stretched head to foot or born, is a true Dionysian meal and her initiation into those sacred mysteries, with Jack as her intimate.

Jack is a HERO, but of a specialized type, a CATALYST hero, a WANDERER who is not greatly changed by the story but who triggers change in the other characters. Jack is an ethereal, otherworldly creation who leaves no trace except in Rose's heart. There's no record of him being aboard the Titanic and he left no legacy, not even a silver bullet, unless you count Old Rose's memento. One character, Bodine, Lovett's sidekick and a kind of THRESHOLD GUARDIAN to Old Rose, even suggests that the whole thing could have been her romantic invention, a story too good to be true. Like all travelers to the silver world, Rose has to be taken on faith.

The character of young Rose is a manifestation of the "damsel in distress" archetype. As such she is a sliver of Sleeping Beauty and Snow White, princesses caught between life and death and whiskered by a kiss, the Twelve Dancing Princesses rescued from enchantment by a young man who makes himself invisible to follow them into their world; Psyche in love with the mysterious young Spring god Cupid (Eros), Persephone kidnapped to an underworld hell by a cruel king, Helen of Troy snatched away from her brutal husband by a handsome young stranger; and Andromeda rescued from a bad marriage by the passionate, artistic god Dionysus.

Women struggle with the "damsel in distress" archetype because it perpetuates patterns of domination and submission, and can encourage a passive, victimized attitude. However, it is an easy archetype to identify and empathize with, representing the feelings of anyone who has felt powerless, trapped, or imprisoned. The "woman in jeopardy" is a staple of movie and TV plots because it creates instant identification and sympathy and raises the emotional involvement of the audience. In *Titanic* the audience can both feel sorry for Rose in her imprisonment and enjoy seeing her become free and at the same time enjoy the "damsel in distress" trick and grow into the role of Hero.

There may be another factor in the movie's particular appeal to women. *Titanic* is a special offering in that it does not scream science fiction, war, or macho male adventure. It offers a spectacle that does not exclude or ignore the concerns of women, and is given human scale with its emotional melodrama dealing with issues of love and fidelity.

For men as well as women, *Titanic* fulfills another contract with its audience, providing an unparalleled opportunity for COMPARISON. The movie offers examples of human behavior in a set of dire, extreme circumstances against which viewers can measure themselves. People can enjoy speculating, from the safety of their seats, on how they would act in a similar situation. How would I have handled the challenge of the *Titanic*? Would I face death with honor and courage, or would I panic and act with selfish greed? Would I fight for life or would I sacrifice my place in the lifeboat so women and children could go first?

The movie has the fascination of a train wreck or a highway accident. It's natural to contemplate and compare when we see such a disaster, to measure our own luck against that of the victims. We watch with compassion but also with relief that we are not among the victims. We seek lessons and make conclusions about fear and justice from what we see.

People describe certain movies as spectacular, but forget that the word comes from the ancient Roman spectacles, which were ritual dramas, combats, races, games, and contests enacted in the arena and amphitheaters throughout the empire. In those days the most thrilling (and expensive) form of entertainment was the "Naumachian," the staging of great sea battles, in which the arena would be flooded and the spectators seated on the roofs of ships circling each other and capturing, or saluting and dooming prisoners, drowning.

*Times* is a spectacle in this medium. Lives were certainly sacrificed to the effort to put on this show, and the movie itself presents a feast of death, the deaths of fifteen hundred people being re-enacted for our entertainment and edification. There is still something compelling about the spectacle of death on such a massive scale, like the gladiatorial combats and ritual sacrifices of the ancient world. A vast amount of life force is being released all at once, and in an almost ghastly way we have to see it. At the sight of people leaping from a great height to smash against various machinery our eyes grow big as if we are drinking in the sight of death. We study the sea of human faces for signs of how they died and how it will be for us.

These plays on fears that have a high degree of identification for the audience—the universal fear of heights, fear of being trapped and imprisoned, fear of drowning in a boundless sea, fear of fire and explosion, fear of loss of self and isolation.

The movie offers an irresistible horror. It could happen to anyone. Since it provides a complete spectrum of the society of its time, any viewer can find an identity there, as a well-off member of the ruling class, as a worker, as an immigrant, as a dreamer, as a loner. And we can appreciate the truth that certain measurable forces—nature, death, physics, fate, accident—afflict all of us across the spectrum without exception. For a while the human story is reduced to one archetype—the Victim.

*Times* is a coherent design in part because it observes the unities of time, place, and theme. The confinement of the central story to the time from the Titanic's sailing to her death concentrates the dramatic energy. This concentration continues in the second half of the film which follows the swirling events in real time, moment by moment. Confining the action to one place, the world of the ship above all else, makes it more a microcosm of life. It is an island of life in a dead sea just as the island Earth is itself an island of space. And the ideas and arguments of *Times* are woven into a coherent design by concentrating on a single theme—the love between an old man and a child.

Carson casts his story wide as beckoning the audience to identify with his story. There's room enough on that ship for all of us. We can all identify with Inuiton like the Turk who, while the boat sinks, frantically tries to read a moribund sign with a Turkish-English dictionary. We are all strangers somewhere. We're all on the same boat.

The movie is cast to appeal to a broad range of age groups. The young love the youthful love story to relate to; the old are inspired to identify with Old Rose,



## Chapter 14

who is still lively and active, and the baby-boomer generation is represented by the scientist explorer and Rose's granddaughter.

The movie is not quite universal in that you don't see black or Asian faces. Certainly the slave experience is mentioned as a metaphor of Rose's emotional captivity, although here is where metaphor breaks down — Rose's prospered life is hardly the same as the Middle Passage in the bowels of the *Amistad*. However, the symbols of *Titanic* seem broad enough that almost everyone around the world can find something of themselves in it.

Where Cameron is most successful is as a visual and emotional poet. *Titanic* is a tapestry, a weaving of plots and threads. He finds poetry in braiding together the big story and the little story. He articulates connections very well, connections between the little story of Lovett and the big story of Old Rose's colorful life, between the little story of Jack and Rose and the big story of the *Titanic*, which is in turn part of the bigger story of the 20th century.

He organizes all this connection by finding a SYMBOL to coalesce and focus it, the narrow eye of a needle to pass all the threads through. "The Heart of the Ocean" connecting in its name the threads of romance and the sea, is a metaphor tying together all the plot lines, making them into a coherent design. (Cameron uses a wedding band to similar purpose in *Dr. Zhivago*.)

The jewel has a European pedigree, was once a crown jewel of the ill-fated Louis XVI, and makes a good symbol of the treasure of European experience and wisdom, art and beauty, not also class warfare and bloodshed.

Old Rose's action of tossing away the diamond at the end is a powerful poetic image that brings all the plot threads together for a real **DENOUEMENT**, an untying of all the knots and a smooth finish for all the plot threads. Lovett doesn't get the treasure but has a shot at love, Cal is discarded and doesn't get Rose's heart or the diamond, Old Rose has kept her secret and now returns it to the sea. It was something private between her and Jack, hers to withhold all these years, hers to give back now.

The audience feels the material value of the stone — it's still a shock to see something worth so much money tossed away — but by that shock the whole experience of *Titanic* is concentrated into a symbol of fading memory. The conscious, the unconscious materials stirred up by the movie are made to their proper place, though the memory will forget. As the scene rolls away, we see how the filmmaker

wants us to regard the Titanic. Let it mean where it is: a mystery and a monument to the human tragedy.

Old Ross, like every hero returning from a journey to the unknown, had a choice to face. Do I return and share about my elixir, try to explain it or evangelize about it? Or do I simply go about the business of my life, letting what I have learned radiate out from me and inevitably change, raise, regenerate those around me, and thus the whole world? Do I choose an outer or an inner path to express my elixir? Obviously, Ross took the latter path, examining and internalizing the message from the special world, a poetic lesson taught by the Celtic tales, where heroes who come back and brag about their adventures in the Underworld find nothing but seasickness where they thought they'd collected fairy treasures. But the first one, like Ross, keeps the fables' secrets and lives a long and happy life.

James Cameron borrows his Celtic moorings with the folk music that plays below decks and whenever emotions surge. It makes a strong contrast with the courtly European dance and (bunch) music played on first class, and contributes to the poetic feeling. This is the epic telling of the Titanic by a Celtic band, accompanied by pipes and harps as in days of yore.

This is supported by visual poetry and structural consciousness like the repetitive banding of a Celtic graphic design. Simple patterns, bow and stern, above decks and below, first class and third, light and dark, give strong structural cues for an almost mathematical composition. Cameron's design offers a number of poetic metaphors — the boat as a model of the world, the diamond as a symbol of value and love, the clock as a symbol of forcing time, the angel statue on the main staircase as an image of Ross's innocence. In the broad strokes of a pop song, the movie provides metaphors against which the audience can compare themselves, a set of tools for interpreting their own lives.

Finally CATHARSIS is the elixir this movie provides, the healthy purging of emotions that Aristotle identified and that audiences will want above anything. People rewarded this story for giving them the rare chance to feel something. We are well defended against emotion, and the movie launches away with shocking effects and strong sentiments (and even the most jaded and guarded must feel some reaction, some release of tension). Shots of packing passengers fighting for lifeboat space, of Jack and Rose hurling to survival, and of married victims falling to their brutal deaths bring the tension to an almost unbearable pitch, and

got their most lie something meaningful and satisfying about this, for people stayed in their seats and many returned for multiple viewings. They couldn't get enough of the emotions released by this film. It gives the viewer for a shudder of horror and a good cry, valuable sensations in any age.

The audience witnessing this spectacle goes through an ordeal along with the characters. Joseph Campbell used to say that the purpose of ritual is to wear you out, to grind down your defenses so that you fall open to the transcendent experience. Wearing you out seems to be part of *Titanic*'s strategy: making you feel something of what the passengers felt by immersing you in the *Titanic* world for so long.

In this special, piled time, it takes courage to be so visibly emotional, for both the filmmaker and the audience. Movies like *Titanic*, *The English Patient*, *Barbarian Days*, and *Blue* are taking a big risk in being sentimental on a grand scale. The darkness of the theme offers the audience some protection — they can cry silently and few will witness their emotional vulnerability. But the filmmakers must expose emotions in public, under the full light of a cynical society, and deserve some respect for this act of courage.

## IN THE WAKE OF *TITANIC*

What will be the long-term effect of *Titanic* on the movie industry? Its success shows that the big gamble sometimes pays off. Big production values generally do pay off in the long run — even *Caspar*, the film that nearly sank 20th Century Fox in the 1960s, eventually made back its production costs and is now a jewel in the company's crown. *Titanic* turned a profit quickly, and its success will undoubtedly encourage others to spend big in hopes of hitting the same kind of jackpot.

In the short run, however, some executives responded by setting tight limits on their budgets. Although the Fox and Paramount executives had seen the gamble, they didn't enjoy the suspenseful period before the film opened, and they didn't want to repeat that again. Of course they reserve the option of making *Titanic*-sized exceptions now and then if all the key executives in the company are agreed that it's worth the risk on a specific project.

In all likelihood, other films will be made on the scale of *Titanic* and even greater quantum levels will be reached. There will doubt be an audience for spectacle especially when it moves many of us emotionally. On the other hand, small-budget

films at the opposite end of the spectrum can be more profitable in relation to their cost. The major Hollywood studios are learning from the example of independent filmmakers, developing lower-budget films for carefully targeted, specialized audiences, to keep profit flowing while they gamble on the big ones.

It's likely also that filmmakers will be influenced by Cameron's choice to build his script around a purely love story, which is widely regarded as a significant factor in the film's success. It's becoming a rule of thumb in Hollywood that an expensive period piece has a better chance if it features a romantic melodrama, preferably with young lovers to make it inviting for the core of the movie-going audience.

Some critics worry that the wisdom of the script will become institutionalized because *Titanic* made so much money, and that future writers will be forced to "dumb down" their scripts to appeal to the mass audience needed to offset the big budgets. That would certainly be exciting new studies, and producers have always argued for broader appeal in expensive productions. But maybe there's another scenario, in which audiences clamor for more sophisticated and cerebral filmmakers who try harder to make their stories both more intelligent and more emotionally universal.

## SYNERGY

James Cameron has spoken of a certain synergy that operated with *Titanic*, a combination of elements that somehow adds up to more than the sum of its parts, just as certain combinations of chemical elements sometimes produce unexpected powers and capacities, so the elements of acting, sets, costumes, music, effects, story, context, the needs of the audience, and the skills of the artists combined into a mysterious, organic whole which has an emotional and transformative power greater than the sum of the individual parts.

Part of this synergy is the use of the motifs and archetypes of the Hero's Journey, such as tests, crossings, ordeals, suspense, death, rebirth, victory, escapes, clues, sacred marriages, etc. These devices give the audience reference points in the long story and contribute to making it a coherent design, directed to maximum cinematic effect. In the tradition of the Hero's Journey, *Titanic* explores death but makes the case for the full substance of life.

## Christopher Ryle

Ultimately the success of the film is a mystery — a secret compact between the audience and the story. Like the man in the moon-robe we can share some light on this mystery, but in the end we must simply withdraw and wonder.

## THE LION KING AND OTHER PROBLEMS

In the summer of 1992 I was asked by the executives at Disney Feature Animation to review story materials on a project called "King of the Jungle." It came to be known as *The Lion King* and eventually turned into the most successful animated film Disney had done so far, but at the time it was just another opportunity to use the tools of the *Flora's Journey* on story problems.

As I drove to "animation country" in an anonymous industrial district of Glendale, California, I recalled what I knew of the project so far. This was an unusual undertaking, a departure from the Disney tradition of adopting popular children's literature as classics. For the first time it was an original story idea, cooked up by Jeffrey Katzenberg and his team of young animators on the company jet. They were on a flight back from New York when they had just presented their latest work, *Bambi and the Hunt*.

Katzenberg, a smart and enthusiastic convert to animation, engaged the animators in a discussion at the moment when they first felt the stirrings of adulthood. He related his own moment of feeling he had become a man, and they all realized it was an interesting thing to make a movie about. They began discussing forests and settings that could support such a story, and eventually fell on the idea of doing it entirely in the world of African animals. Disney had not done an exclusively animal-driven animated feature since *Bambi* in 1942, so it seemed fresh and also could play on the public's fondness for nature stories. It would avoid some of the problems of animating humans. To animate a human character you have to represent a particular ethnic group and choose certain hair and skin colors, which may prevent audience members with different features from fully identifying with the character. Much of this limitation is swept away with the use of animals, where human concerns about race and genetics are less relevant.

A father-odious story was developed by borrowing inspiration from *Huckleberry Finn*. Kerouac liked to blend animation stories with plot elements from several sources so that a treatment for *The Odyssey* or *Huckleberry Finn* might be woven together with themes and structure from *It Happened One Night* or *45 Hours*. The *Don King* had elements of *Huckle Finn* but was made richer and more complex by weaving in some *Huckle Finn* elements. These included a jealous uncle who bumps off the hero's father and usurps the throne, and an untamed young hero who gradually gathers his will and strikes back.

One of my first assignments, after having read the "King of the Jungle" treatment, was to read *Huckle Finn* carefully and choose one element we could use in our script. I did a Hero's Journey analysis of the *Huckle Finn* plot to illustrate its turning points and movements, and then listed many of its memorable lines which the writers could use to playfully evoke the Shakespearean connection. The Disney animated films were conceived to work for all levels of the audience, with physical gags for the younger kids, irreverent verbal wit and action for teenagers, and sophisticated inside jokes for the adults. Some of Shakespeare mirrored the script, especially through the character of Scar, the villain, voiced by the English actor Jeremy Irons. He delivered several *Huckle Finn* references in drill and ironical fashion, with a knowing wink to the grown-up audience.

Arriving at the Disney animation complex, I entered the special world of what would become *The Lion King*. Every animator's cubicle was plastered with photos and drawings of African life and several of the staff had music-planet safari trips to Africa to gather inspiration. Storyboards were set up in the cinema and I sat down with the animators and designers to see the latest presentation by the directors, Rob Markoff and Roger Allers.

Here was an opportunity to test some of the Hero's Journey ideas on a major project. I was one of literally hundreds of people giving their opinions on the story, but for a moment I had a chance to influence the final product by my reactions and arguments. I took notes as the animators unfolded the story that was to become *The Lion King*.

*In the mythology of "The Circle of Life," the spirit world guides us toward the birth of a young lion, Simba, whose father is Mufasa, ruler of the region around Pride Rock. One year at the gathering is a strong old lioness, Rafiki, who is drawn away by the King's adviser, a jewel thief named Scar. Scar grows into a sassy young cub who sings "I Just Can't Wait*

in *The King*? Doubting his father, he makes off to capture the speedy English's Crowfoot with his young lioness playmate Mela, and then they are arrested by two extremely wary Jafals, servants of Madam's jealous brother Sor. Madam accuses them but merely orders Simba for *divorcing* him.

Simba is just beginning to form the illusion of *kingship* from his father when Madam is cruelly killed in an surprise stampede, thanks to Scar's underhanded trickery. Scar wants Simba dead to avenge his own father's death, and Simba, fearing Scar will kill him, escapes across the desert like Hamlet leaving the court of Denmark after his uncle killed his father.

In Act Two, a guilt-riddled Simba comes to the *SPIRITUAL WORLDS* of a lush jungle area where he meets two funny vultures, two talking meerkat Timon and rabbit warbling Pumbaa, the *Acrobats* and *Guidance* of the place. To get his mind off his guilt, they teach him the tale of a *very philosophy* of "Hakuna Matata" and show him how they live in the jungle's *time-losing language of logic*. Simba grows into a powerful lion aged lion and one day has a *chance encounter* with another lion who was once named Pumbaa. However, it turns out to be Nala, who has grown into a beautiful and powerful young lioness. They love Madam in a *romantic* way. But Nala is in a mission. She tells him how Scar has hypnotized Pumbaa, *recreated the animals*, and tried to take her as his mate. She pleads with him to return and take his rightful place as king. Haunted by his guilt and aware of his strength, Simba becomes. Like many heroes, he can't *sign* to leave the *presence of the SPIRITUAL WORLDS* but his father's spirit appears (like the ghost of Hamlet's father in *An Ode of Hamlet*) and urges him to *join his destiny*.

In Act Three, Simba shakes off his guilt, returns to Pride Rock, and confronts Scar. A fierce lion's breath cuts Simba's "meekness" and right to be king are put to the *admirable test*. Simba's *ALLIES* come to his aid, and Scar falls from power with a touch of *poetic justice*, showing the way he allowed Madam to fall to his death. Simba takes his father's place and "The Circle of Life" continues.

As the presentation concluded, it wasn't difficult to see the Hero's Journey elements in *The Lion King*. Simba is a classic hero whose *ORDINARY WORLD* is that of privilege and the knowledge that he will one day be king. His first *CALL* is his father's demand that he grow up and face the responsibilities of *kingship*. Learning the right to rule the land as king is a metaphor for adulthood in many fables and fairy tales. His resistance and disobedience constitutes a *REFUSAL OF THE CALL*. He

receives other **CALLS** — the temptation to explore the forbidden zone, a call of childhood romance from Nala, and most drastically, the death of his father that calls him to enter a new phase of life in which he has to run away to survive.

Simba has many **MENTORS** throughout the story. His father is his first great teacher, showing him the path of kingship and the Circle of Life, but he also learns diplomacy and statecraft from Zazu and something of the magical side of life from Rafiki. In Act Two his **MENTORS** are Timon and Pumbaa, teaching him their Hakuna Matata lifestyle. At the end of Act Two, Nala comes to teach him about love and responsibility, and his father's spirit is a supernatural **MENTOR** encouraging him to face his destiny. In the climax, Nala, Timon, and Pumbaa become his **ALLIES** against Scar. Nala is also a kind of **SHAPESHIFTER** from Simba's point of view, changing drastically from a playful call into a sleek, powerful she-lion, presenting him a face of love but also demanding that he do something to save his domain.

The energy of the **SHADOW** is manifested in Scar and his minions, the Jackals. Scar represents the dark side of kingship, isolation and compassionless. He can be read as a harsh model of adulthood, in which the early wounds inflicted out by life have become excuses for jealousy, cynicism, suspicion, and a certain complex that turns into tyranny when the ill-forgotten victim finally gets power. He is the dark possibility in our lives, Simba. If Simba doesn't shake off his guilt and take responsibility, he could turn out the same way, a rogue rule lying bitterly on the fringe, waiting for a weakness to exploit. The Jackals are a lower form of life than the lions, living by scavenging rather than by noble hunting. They are bullies who readily follow the tyrant because they enjoy tormenting his subjects and looting it over them.

Rafiki, the crazy hadzani witch doctor, was one of the most interesting characters in the script, combining elements of a **MENTOR** and a **TRICKSTER**. In early versions, I felt his function was out there. He was played for comedy, as a loopy fellow who came around to make magical noise but who commanded no respect. The king regarded him as a nuisance and Zazu, the king's bird advisor, shooed him away when he approached the baby Simba. He had little to do in the script after the first scene, and appeared mostly for comic relief, more **TRICKSTER** than **MENTOR**.

In the meeting that followed the supernatural presentation, I suggested calling him a little more seriously as a **MENTOR**. Perhaps Zazu was still suspicious and



## Chapter 14

would try to run him off, but the mist was so thick and compassionate Mufasa would let him approach the child. I had the impulse to quarantine the ritualistic aspects of the moment, referring to the rituals of baptism and christening, or the coronation ceremonies in which a new king or queen is anointed on the forehead with holy oil. Rafiki would bless the baby lion, perhaps with berry juice or some substitute from the jungle. One of the acrobats and Rafiki already carried a stick with orange gumballs tied to it, and came up with the idea of Rafiki cracking open one of the gumballs in a mysterious gesture and marking the lion cub with a colorful liquid.



*The Mongoose marks the Lion as a chosen heir.*

I thought, too, of the presentation rituals in various religions, in which the holy books, images, and artifacts are held up for veneration. I remembered that the Catholic churches I grew up with had stained-glass windows strategically placed to create stunning effects when beams of colored light fell on the altar. It occurred to me that when Rafiki held up the baby lion to show the assembled animals, a beam of sunlight from the clouds could strike the cub, giving the divine stamp of approval to the specialness of this child and to Mufasa's royal line. There was an almost audible crackle of energy in the room at that moment. The image came into several minds at once and I experienced the *psion*, the stream down the back that always tells me when an idea expresses the truth of the story.

One hotly-debated issue at this stage was the matter of Mufasa's death. Some of the animators felt that the graphic depiction of the death of a parent (even an animal parent) was too intense. In the storyboards, Mufasa is trampled to death in an antelope stampede and the young Simba is shown approaching, nudging, and sniffing the corpse, looking for signs of life but finally understanding that his father is dead. Some felt this was too strong for young children.

Others argued that Disney has always shown the dark, tragic, and brutal side of life, and that although the company has often been criticized for it, such scenes are part of the Disney tradition: from the death of Bambi's mother to the death of Old Yeller, the family housed in a cabin of the same name. Walt weathered a squall of controversy around Old Yeller's death, and later came to feel that killing off a beloved character was a breach of his contract with the audience. When the question came up on the animated adaptation of *The Jungle Book*, Walt insisted, "The bear lives!"

In the end, it was decided that *The Lion King* would emulate death directly, but the scene we shot is originally rounded. The argument that prevailed was that the music was strong for the realism of a nature documentary, that the audience was used to seeing realistic treatments of animal violence, and that we were taking a massive hit (in the entire spectrum) of the audience, not just for infants who might be traumatized by the scene. I agreed with this choice, feeling that it was true to the animal world we were trying to depict, but was somewhat disappointed when the music then strayed from realism in Act Two, with cheerful comedy replacing what would have been a desperate struggle to survive.

I was bothered by one structural element in Act One — the excursion to the wacky Elephant's Graveyard. Instinctively I felt that though it was a good scene, it was in the wrong place. It was a dark visit to the country of death, and it felt more appropriate as the stage for an Act Two central. Act One was already heavily weighted with the death of Simba's father, and I felt the Elephant's Graveyard sequence both made the first act too long and overwhelmed it with death energy. I suggested writing the Graveyard incident as an **INMOUTH CAVE** for an Act Two central crisis of death and rebirth, and replacing the Act One scene with some other transgression by Simba that tests his father's patience, but with a lighter, less morbid tone. This bit of advice was not taken and who can say if it would have made any difference.

## Chapter Eight

I do feel, however, that the movie is weakened by the time it takes in Act Two. The almost photographic realism of the Act One animal scenes is replaced with a more old-fashioned Disney cartoon style, especially the comic rendering of Timon and Pumbaa. Simba is a growing carnivore and there is nothing realistic about him subsisting on a diet of bugs. I feel the movie missed a big chance to follow through on the promise of the first act with a series of TESTS, leading to a life-threatening ORDEAL near the midpoint. Someone should have been teaching Simba real survival skills, how to stalk his prey, how to hunt, how to fight for what is his. I offered a range of possibilities. Timon and Pumbaa could teach him, he could meet another lion to teach him survival skills, or Rafiki could appear to carry on the teaching of Mufasa. I advocated creating a scene where Simba is truly tested, a real ORDEAL in which he discovers his innate power in a battle with a crocodile, a water buffalo, a leopard, or some other formidable foe.

The development of Simba from a scared little cub into a jantily bred-aged lion is handled too quickly, in my opinion, with a few quick dislates of him growing older as he crosses a log bridge. A montage of scenes of him learning to hunt, first comically and then with greater assurance, would have been more effective storytelling. Timon and Pumbaa add much-needed comic relief to the story, but fail to dramatize the stages of Simba's development, the individual lessons that he has to learn. They teach him how to kick back and enjoy life, but they don't give him what he really needs. The lessons learned in Act Two (be laid back, relax, enjoy life, don't stress out, be respectfully and a little gross, recognize love when you find it) don't prepare Simba for the ORDEAL he must ultimately face.

Meanwhile I felt there was more work for Rafiki to do in this story. I wanted him to be more like Merlin, an experienced wise man who had perhaps been the king's counselor at one time, who pretends to be crazy so he can appear harmless to the usurper, and who is charged with looking after the young prince as he grows up in obscurity, training him for the moment when he's ready to take his rightful throne. I advocated weaving him into Act Two as a MENTOR, who accompanies Simba into the SPECIAL WORLD and does a MENTOR'S function — giving the hero something needed to complete the journey and outface death. Rafiki was needed to teach real survival lessons that Timon and Pumbaa failed to impart. I envisioned Rafiki showing up soon after Simba arrived in the SPECIAL WORLD, and that he would guide Simba through a series of escalating tests that prepared him for his

ultimate showdown with Scar. Of course Timon and Pumbaa would still be there as welcome comic relief.

The character of Rafiki grew significantly through the rest of the development process. The animators ended by making him a true MENTOR, a great Zen master who gives Simba tough advice and hard knocks, but also the gift of inspiration, guiding him to the vision of his father's spirit. He wants as active as possible, as I would have liked, although a couple of brief scenes were added in the first half of Act Two. Rafiki witnesses the devastation of Pride Rock by Scar and, thinking Simba is dead, sadly creates a clayling of him on a cave wall. Later, Rafiki's divination powers tell him that Simba is still alive and, after adding an adult lion's mane to the rock drawing, he sets out to instruct the young lion to his destiny.

Rafiki really comes into action at the end of Act Two as he takes Simba on a river quest that has elements of a CALL and REFINAL, and an ORDEAL, in which Simba has an encounter with death (the ghost of his father) and wins a REWARD in the form of enhanced self-confidence and determination.

The encounter with the father's ghost, a another borrowing from "Hamlet," although in Shakespeare the young hero encounters his father's ghost in Act One. It made for a powerful scene in *The Lion King*, although one that small children sometimes find confusing. When I saw the film I heard children in the audience ask their parents questions like "Wasn't he dead before?" and "Is he back alive again?" The appearance of the ghostly father is dramatic and emotionally moving, but it plays mostly on the verbal and intellectual level. Simba gets encouraging advice, but the lesson is not dramatized as well. The teaching of Rafiki is more tactfully concrete and physical — the baboon shaman raps him on the head to teach him a lesson about putting his mistakes in the past.

At the time of the storyboard presentation, the details of Simba's return to Pride Rock had not been worked out. We discussed many options. Simba could leave the SPECIAL WORLD with Nala, Timon, and Pumbaa, agreeing to face Scar together. Simba and Nala could go together, after having a parting of the ways with Timon and Pumbaa, who might show up later having had a change of heart. The final decision was to have Simba go off alone during the night, leaving Nala, Timon, and Pumbaa to wake up and find him gone the next morning. Rafiki tells them Simba has gone to take his rightful place, and they hurry to join him.

## Chapter 14

Act Three marches swiftly to the climactic battle, although it feels somewhat weighted down by Simba's lingering guilt over his belief that he caused his father's death. Scar dodges it up again hoping to turn the tides against Simba by getting him to admit his responsibility for his father's death. I felt the writers played too heavily on this note, making the story seem rigid and overly melodramatic, and turning Simba into an angst-ridden modern protagonist, more appropriate to a novel than to an animated film about animals. However, it does provide a RESURRECTION moment in which Simba passes a final test by accepting responsibility for his father's death instead of running from it.

*The Lion King* can be faulted for giving more stage to the male characters and relatively little energy to the female. Nala is fairly well-developed but Simba's mother is underutilized and passive. She could have been more significant in training Simba in Act One and raising Scar in Act Two. This imbalance is addressed in Julia Tzujowski's stage version of *The Lion King*, which gives more weight and action to female characters, and which makes Rafiki a female shaman.

There was considerable suspense around the release of *The Lion King*. None of us in the production knew how the film would play for the audience. The Disney animated films had been climbing in popularity with *The Little Mermaid* and *Beauty and the Beast*, and many wondered if *The Lion King* would fail to top them. To everyone's relief, it performed even better, becoming the most successful animated film to date, and the most profitable motion picture in history. What? Partly because people were delighted by the animation of the animals and the substantial African-flavored music, but also thanks to the universal power of the Hero's Journey pattern in its story. The challenge of growing up and claiming your rightful place in the world is a classic Hero's Journey motif that naturally struck something deep in many people. The familiar rhythms of the Journey were not the only principles guiding *The Lion King* — in fact, at times, they were outweighed by other concerns like low comedy and clever fun — but I can say that this is one case where they were applied conscientiously to make the work more accessible to a broad audience and more dramatically satisfying.

## HEROIC JOURNEYS IN PULP FICTION

*with reference to the examples*by Quentin Tarantino, *from above*

by Tamihiro and Roger Robert Avery

For the past few years, the film that young people were most interested in talking about was *Pulp Fiction*. They wanted to know how in earth the structure of the *Hero's Journey* could be found in that film. Its defiance of the conventions of structure, content, framing, dialogue, and editing intrigued them. They enjoyed its passionate intensity and audacious humor. Some people were offended by its vulgarity and flashes of violence, but most admired the film for proving that unorthodox subject matter and uncompromising style can be both entertaining and highly successful. However, despite its innovative qualities, *Pulp Fiction* can be interpreted with the reliable old tools of the mythic *Hero's Journey*. Seen this way, the film in fact presents at least three distinct journeys by three different heroes: Vincent, Jules, and Burch.

## THE POST-MODERN MIRROR

Young people may have responded to *Pulp Fiction* because it reflects the post-modern attitude concerning they grew up with. Post-modernism is the result of a world blown apart, fragmented into millions of pieces by a century of war, social domination, and rapid technological change. The frame of perception has been shattered by machines and the frantic pace of deconstruction. Young people now come to consciousness in a high-intensity bombardment of random images and brief story segments torn from all the previous styles of art and literature. The hero map has no rational consistency and obey some rules of the old story world, but they stretch the consciousness of the young to its apparent limits.

Young people perceive the world as reflection in a shattered mirror, whether they channel-surf to cut up the stories themselves or have the stories chopped up for them by MTV-style editing. They are accustomed to juggling story lines, time periods, and genres at staggering speed. Because of the archaic nature of television, constantly changing images and texts, post-modern kids live in a stew of styles. The young now mature themselves in fashions ranging from 'old hippie' to heavy metal headbanger, from cowboy to surf dude, from gangsta to grunger to peepin'. They

master the idioms and attitudes of all these options and more. On their interactive, multi-media computers, they are comfortable with randomly sampling bits of entertainment and information without concern for the old world's norms of time and sequence.

*Pulp Fiction* reflects the postmodern condition in both style and content. Postmodernism is most apparent in its unusual structure, which disregards the conventional cinema's respect for linear time. The sequences appear to have been shuffled up with a natural sword and thrown in the air, although in fact the order of scenes has been carefully chosen to develop a coherent theme and produce a definite emotional effect. The signs of postmodernism are also present in the film's content. The nightclub where Vincent and Mia dance is a perfect postmodern microcosm. Contemporary characters find themselves in an environment peopled by icons of former eras — Marilyn Monroe, James Dean, Elvis Presley, Jayne Mansfield, Ed Sullivan, Buddy Holly, Dean Martin, and Jerry Lewis. Most of these people are dead, but they *are* live on through their immortal images. Vincent and Mia perform mostly dances from the 1960s to music that hasn't been heard in movies for thirty years. *Pulp Fiction* is part of the pop-culture jet stream, flowing freely out of its current collective unconscious, charged with images and sounds from previous era-

## RELATIVITY AND WORLD CULTURE

*Pulp Fiction* is postmodern also in its sense of cultural relativity. Although the film is set in America, it is shot through with a sense of worldwide culture and a global viewpoint. The characters are constantly comparing our culture to another, one set of standards to another. Jules and Vincent discuss the peculiar way American fast food is named and consumed in other countries, and marvel at drug laws in other lands. Butch, the American boxer, compares notes with a South American boxer cubelover on personal names in different cultures — her Spanish name is poetic and meaningful, while in America, he says, our names don't mean anything. This consciousness of other cultures may have contributed to the film's worldwide popularity.

The characters in *Pulp Fiction* are engaged in debates about value systems, reflecting the postmodern sense that no single code of ethics is adequate anymore. Jules and Vincent argue the moral significance of their message and the cosmic importance of a pattern of bullet holes. What Vincent sees a meaningless accident

inspiring an response, Jules sees a divine miracle demanding a complete change of behavior. In the postmodern universe, everything is relative, and moral values are the most relative of all. Although the audience has seen Jules as a cold-blooded killer, he can seem like a hero compared with those around him. The story appears to say that Western society's narrow value judgments about morality are outdated. In the new world, each person must select his or her own moral code, argue it fiercely, and live or die by it.

### THE ETERNAL TRIANGLE IN PULP FICTION

One of the pop-culture streams tapped by *Pulp Fiction* is the tradition of film noir and its sources in the hard-boiled fiction of 1930s and '40s pulp magazines. Like *Taxi*, the film employs the powerful archetype of the Eternal Triangle. The Mr. Big of *Pulp Fiction* is Marsellus Wallace, mysterious crime boss; the Young Woman is Mia, Marsellus' wife; and Vincent is the Young Man, who at least finds himself attracted to the Young Woman, testing their loyalty to Mr. Big. Vincent passes through this ordeal without betraying Mr. Big, like a Card-playing knight refusing to yield to *g*-*ross* bodily temptations. But, as we shall see, in another sense, another branch of *his Hero's Journey*, Vincent fails a more spiritual test.

### "PROLOGUE"

#### AN ORDINARY WORLD

In *Pulp Fiction's* opening segment, titled "Prologue," two young people sit talking in a "Central Diner's, Suvini-like coffee shop in Los Angeles." What could be more ordinary than this world? However, it turns out the young man (Vincent) and woman (Honey Bunny) are discussing the pros and cons of various flavors of armed robbery. It's a different kind of ORDINARY WORLD, a criminal world of low-level criminals, a world most of us would rather not think about. It's too hardy to consider that all around us are legions of dull-witted crooks waiting for their chance to rob us or kill us, perhaps sitting right across from us in our favorite 50s coffee shop.

Pumpkin's first words are characteristic of a REFUSAL — "No, forget it. It's too risky. I'm through doing that shit." Apparently Honey Bunny has just issued a CALL, by proposing they rob another liquor store, their last of crime until now.



(their ORDINARY WORLD). While denigrating Asians and Jews who run liquor stores, the English-voiced Pumpkin talks himself and Honey Bunny into robbing the restaurant, where there are no security guards or cameras, and when the employees have no need to play hero. He evokes a MENTOR of sorts, referring to the story of a bank robbery in which the robbers used terror and trickery to seize control. Working each other into a frenzy, Pumpkin and his daffy golfed GROSS THE THRESHOLD, waving their guns, bringing the possibility of instant death into play. Then with a swirl of retro swing music, we are thrown into the main title and the body of the movie.

This opening sequence executes the cinematic rule of "Disorientation leads to suggestibility." You don't know if those people are the heroes of the story or, as it turns out, mere henchmen. The filmmaker's intention is to leave you a bit disoriented and gawking about their importance. You're also left guessing about the fate of these hoodlums and the people in the restaurant.

### VINCENT and JULES

Now for the first time, we see our two protagonists, Vincent Vega and Jules Winnfield, driving in a big American car. They, too, are in their ORDINARY WORLD having a mundane conversation about the subtle differences in fast-food menus and customs in the countries of Europe. Vincent has spent some time in Europe where things are different — a Big Mac is called La Big Mac in France, and the tiles above shops in Amsterdam are different. He has been in a SPECIAL WORLD and has the experienced air of a hero reliving a previous adventure.

Vincent and Jules stop at an apartment building and take guns from the trunk of their car. The feeling is that this is just another day at the office for them, a routine job in their Ordinary World.

As they approach the apartment to perform their mission, the conversation turns to Mia (a SHAPESHIFTER), wife of their criminal boss Marsellus Wallace (Mr. Big). This is the first note of a CALL TO ADVENTURE for Vincent, who has been put in the difficult position of being asked by Marsellus to escort his wife on a date while he's in Florida. The danger of this Call is made clear (a form of REFUSAL) in the complex philosophical discussion about fast marriage. Jules points out that a Samoan gangster named Anawan Rockmanora was

thrown off his balcony into a greenhouse just for giving Mia a foot rub. Jules thinks the punishment was (or of) proportion to the crime, but Vincent understands very well that a foot massage could be a sexual experience and could get you killed. Nonetheless he has accepted the Call and will be Mia's escort. He promises her to get in trouble with Mia and claims that it will even be a real date, but Jules is skeptical.

After a long pause at the door, they **CROSS A THRESHOLD**, entering the apartment of Three Young Guys "obviously in over their heads." They have something which Monsieur Wallace wants, and apparently they have tried to stiff him on a deal for the contents of a mysterious briefcase. Jules, *intentionally* standing over the leader, Beeri, intimidates him by eating his last food and questioning him about what restaurant he bought it from. It's not a Wendy's or McDonald's hamburger, it's a Big Kahuna burger. Kahuna is Hawaiian magic, so it suggests big magic coming. Certainly there is magic in the briefcase, whose glowing contents hypnotize Vincent when he opens it to check on them. What's in the briefcase? It doesn't matter because it's just a MacGuffin, and in keeping with the Lindbergh tradition, Tarantino never bothers to say what it really is. It's enough that it's something of importance to the characters, something worth the risk of dying for. It's a Holy Grail or a Golden Fleece, a symbol of all the desires that drive heroes mad.

Confronting the terrified young men, Vincent and Jules are **HERALDS** bringing a final CALL, acting at this moment as the allies of Death, the servants of the **SHADOW**. They are agents of Nemesis, the goddess of retribution, who brings punishment on those who offend the order of the gods. The god in this case is Monsieur Wallace. Beeri and Roger have offended Mr. Big by trying to cheat him in the deal for the briefcase.

Jules makes his power manifest by shooting Roger without provocation, Beeri receiving Beeri. Jules performs a ritual reciting the Bible passage from Ezekiel 25:17 which is his trademark:

"The path of the righteous man is beset on all sides by the iniquities of the selfish and the tyranny of evil men. Blessed is he who, in the name of charity and good will, shepherds the weak through the valley of darkness, for he is truly his brother's keeper and the father of lost children. And I will strike down upon thee with great vengeance and furious anger those who attempt to poison and destroy my brother. And you will know my name is the Lord when I lay my vengeance upon you."

## Chapter Eight

This, in effect, is a statement of the theme of the movie, a complex statement that can be interpreted many ways. On this reading, Jules seems to identify with only part of the message, the part about "great vengeance and furious anger," for he and Vincent empty their guns into first when the speech is done.

Then a miracle occurs. While Jules' friend Marvin, who has been there all along, mutters in a corner, a Fourth Young Man bursts out of the bathroom, firing away at Jules and Vincent with a heavy handgun. The miracle is that the bullets seem to have no effect. The Young Man is blown off his feet by some fire from Jules and Vincent.

This sequence establishes the Ordinary World for the protagonists of this thread of the story. They are witnesses for a powerful gangster, a coach or two above the level of the two kids in the coffee shop, but not far above. They are trying to work out an ethical space between them and are concerned about the limits of honor and duty. The two heroes are traveling down the same road so far, but their paths are about to split because of their differing reactions to the miracle that has just occurred.

## "VINCENT VEGA AND MARSHALL WALLACE'S WIFE"

A title card now establishes that the prologue or framing device is over and the first of the pulp fiction short stories is about to begin. But before bringing Vincent and Mia together, the storyteller introduces two new characters, Marshall Wallace and Butch Coolidge, positioning them to Butch's story thread. Marshall, described as sounding like "a cross between a gangster and a king," was talking to Butch, a knocked-second praefighter. In Butch's Hero's Journey, he is in his ORDINARY WORLD, getting a dark CALL to throw a fight.

Marshall is both HERALD and MENTOR, godlike, seen only from behind, possessor of a MENTOR'S wisdom and a defiant philosophy of life. Perhaps significantly, he has a Band-Aid on the back of his neck. Was he roughly cut while shaving his perfectly bald head, or does the Band-Aid cover something more serious — like the alien brain implants from the 1950s classic *Invasion from Mars*? Like the glowing cocoon of the infocase, it poses a puzzle which the protagonists decline to solve.

Marshall commands Butch to swallow his pride and give up his shot at being featherweight champion of the world in return for the nice thing, Butch doesn't hesitate before accepting his Call to throw the fight. He takes the money unobscuringly. He

seems to be accepting the Call, but in fact, as we later learn, he is planning to REFUSE this particular Call, intending instead to win the fight and collect big money by betting on himself.

Vincent and Jules enter with the briefcase, but are dressed quite differently than in the previous scene. They wear T-shirts and shorts, which look a little out of place in the bar. Later we'll see that several days have passed since we last saw Vincent and Jules, and that they have been through several major ORDEALS.

Vincent clashes with Butch, mocking him as a washed-up palooka, in a confrontation typical of the TESTS, ALLIES, ENEMIES phase. Vincent throws a challenge, which Butch refuses to rise to. The chance encounter with Butch is a TEST which shows a flaw in Vincent, a lack of respect for his sides. He should know that Butch is an experienced hero, a potential MENTOR who could teach him a few things, but instead he makes fun of him. Butch's REFUSAL to rise to this challenge shows that he is mature and careful. He sees that Vincent is a friend of Marcellus and wisely decides to let it ride — for now. However, a potential ALLY has been turned into an ENEMY by Vincent's arrogance.

The third man follows Vincent, who has previously received the CALL to take Mia on a date. In keeping with the criminal underworld theme, Vincent approaches his own kind of MENTOR — his drug dealer, Lance — before CROSSING THE THRESHOLD to deal with Mia. The Mentor's bar is an old house in Echo Park. This Mentor, like a shaman equipping a initiate with magic potions and healing herbs, presents an array of heroin options for Vincent's selection. Vincent pays top dollar for the strongest stuff.

Vincent slinks up and enters her in a blissful state to pick up Mia. Here is another of Vincent's flaws — he is weakened by his drug addiction. Vincent CROSSES A THRESHOLD as he enters Marcellus' house. He passes by strange moral certainties, like THRESHOLD GUARDIANS from some primal culture. There's a sense that the gods are watching.

Inside, Mia operates in the godlike realm of Mr. Big, playing with Marcellus' toys. Like Mr. Big in every two minutes, she watches from a hidden upper room, manipulating Vincent by remote control with her disembodied voice. The rules are different in this SPECTAL WORLD. In Vincent's ORDINARY WORLD, he and his gun are the absolute rulers. Here, a barefoot woman holds the power of life and death. She calls the tune and selects the theme music for the evening.

## Chapter Eight

Moving further into the SPECIAL WORLD, Vincent takes Mia to the strange 50s cafe for a TESTS, ALLIES, ENEMIES scene. Jackrabbit Sim's is a world of the postmodern world, in which images of the recent past are continuously chopped up, recycled, and hammered to new tasks. Legendary faces like Marilyn Monroe, Elvis, and Buddy Holly are reduced to waiting tables and delivering hamburgers.

In a typical Harō's Journey Stage Six bar scene, Mia and Vincent TEST each other out. Mia chooses assume great importance in chess to (chance), Trallec cigarettes are rolled and quoted. They get the measure of one another through cool but probing dialogue. Vincent boldly tests Mia by asking about her relationship with the fellow who was thrown out the window. He passes his TESTS by asking diplomatically without assuming the war in the room. They become ALLIES.

They are linked in another way, revealed when Mia gets up to "powder her nose," in fact, to snort cocaine. Like Vincent she is weakened by her addiction and it will lead to her ORDEAL.

The act to enter the dance contest is an APPROACH, moving them a step closer to the life-and-death matter of sex. From the way they groove together on the dance floor, it's clear they would have fantastic sex. Their dance moves and hard grooves reflect the SHAPESHIFTER archetype, as they try on various masks and identities in the APPROACH to love.

Vincent and Mia return to her house to face a SUPREME ORDEAL. Mia is looking very seductive, and Vincent moves to the bathroom to steel himself. He talks to his image in the mirror, convincing himself not to have sex with Mia. In this area, at least, he passes an important TEST, remaining loyal to his boss despite strong temptation. His motivation may not be so noble — he knows Marceline will probably find out and kill him. If he does fool around with Mia — but he passes the TEST, nonetheless.

Meanwhile Mia finds Vincent's hammer in his coat, and mistaking it for cocaine, snorts it greedily and passes out. Vincent finds her with blood running from her nose and panics. Here Vincent is not just facing Mia's death, but also his own — for he will surely be killed if Mia dies. It was his heroin, his weakness, that caused the problem, along with Mia's lust for sensation.

Vincent runs to his Mother's house (THE ROAD BACK) where a frantic search for a medical book, a marker pen, and a large subcutaneous needle commences.

Vivian digs deep for the hero's courage to plunge the needle into Mia's heart. In a neat reversal of the classic scene from certain movies, driving a stake into her heart is actually the way to bring her sleepily back to life, a RESURRECTION. Vivian, like Sir Lancelot, has the guiding power to bring someone back from the land of the dead.

Vivian returns Mia to her home (RETURN WITH THE ELIXIR) where, pale and wan, she goes from a hint of ELIXIR, a fertile joke from the TV pilot she appeared in. They part with another ELIXIR, a sense of friendship and mutual respect arising from sharing an ORDEAL together. They promise each other they won't tell Marshall what happened. You get the feeling that if anything ever happened to Marshall Willis, these two would probably get together.

## BUTCH'S STORY

The story now switches to another thread, the Hero's Journey of Butch, for whom it takes us back to Butch's early ORDINARY WORLD, a scene from his childhood in Vietnam, when he watches a special force mission on TV in 1972.

A CALL TO ADVENTURE is issued by a HERALD or MENTOR, Captain Koons, the Air Force officer, who brings the gold watch that belonged to his father and grandfathers. In a long monologue Koons describes the watch's tradition of being carried by American soldiers in Butch's family. He notes the ORDEAL that he and Butch's father endured in the Vietnamese prison camp. The watch becomes an emblem of family tradition that connects it to symbols like the magic sword that heroes inherit from their fathers. However, we're brought crashing back to reality with the early detail of when Butch's father had the watch for five years, and Captain Koons used a similar juggling piece for two years after Butch's father died. Fulfiling the DONOR'S function of a MENTOR, the officer gives the watch to Butch.

We're then thrown back to the present where we see Butch getting another CALL — this time his manager calling him into the ring for the fight he's supposed to throw.

## "THE GOLD WATCH"

A side and more subtle thread we are taking up is a major thread of another Hero's Journey. We find one, through the radio that plays in the tactical tentacle, that instead of throwing the fight as agreed with Marshall, Butch has won the fight and

killed the other boys. He has refused Marcellus' CALL, but has answered other calls — the CALL of his own spirit to fight well, and the CALL of temptation to cheat Marcellus and collect a lot of money.

Burch CROSSES A THRESHOLD as he leaps from a window into a dumpster. He boards the cab and begins stripping off the attributes of a prizefighter, leaving this part of his life behind. In a TESTS, ALLIES, ENEMIES scene, his attitude is probed through his conversation with Eusemilda Villalobos, the woman calligrapher from Colombia. She explains her name has a beautiful, poetic meaning ("Eusemilda of the Wolves"), and Burch says his name, like most American names, doesn't mean anything. Again the note of cultural relativity is sounded. She is modestly famous about what it feels like to kill a man. Instead of horrifying her, it seems to turn her on. Everything is relative. Burch himself offers a rationalization for having killed the other boys. If he was a better fighter, he'd be alive. He makes an ALLY of her and wins her promise to tell the police she never saw him.

By his actions he has made ENEMIES of Marcellus Wallace and his crew. We see Marcellus sending his minions to hunt down Burch all the way to Iquitos-Chimo if necessary.

In an APPROACH phase, Burch makes a phone call to check on his winnings. He goes to his French girlfriend, Tabirnes, at a motel and they make plans to skip the country since he's collected his money. Their flirtatious talk, characteristic of immature APPROACH scenes, seems to be more of the seemingly banal chatter that marks the early scenes between Vincent and Jules. It has the same sense of cultural relativity and differing value systems. Here the distinctions are along gender lines, as the girlfriend tries to make Burch understand her precise attitude about possibilities on women. They make love and the night ends with a false sense that all will be well.

A new and immediate CALL TO ADVENTURE is sounded the next morning as Burch discovers she has failed to retrieve his father's watch from his apartment. Without consulting any Minotaur, he overcomes his fear of being caught by Marcellus and goes to get the watch. Diving in his apartment, he is CROSSING THE THRESHOLD into a SPECIAL WORLD of increased danger.

After a careful APPROACH to his apartment, Burch takes possession of the watch, SEIZING THE SWORD. However, he encounters a THRESHOLD GUARDIAN sent by Marcellus to kill him. It's Vincent, who has been reading a book

in the bathroom (the comic-epic thriller *Melody Place* by Peter O'Donnell). Foolishly in a fatal tragic mistake, Vincent has underestimated his opponent, and has left his gun sitting on the kitchen counter. Burch hears the ruler bang, grabs the gun, and kills Vincent. It's a near-death **ORDEAL** for Burch, but it's the tragic **CLIMAX** for Vincent, who has been brought down by one of his flaws — his disrespect for his elders. He is punished with near poetic justice, and in a humiliating way, being caught gaudy while eating the bait. We don't know it yet, but Vincent also appears to be paying the price he has long desired a miracle — the miracle of escaping the bullets of the Fourth Young Man in the earlier scene. His death at this point seems like divine punishment for having refused to acknowledge divine intervention.

With the **REWARD** of the watch in his pocket, Burch hits **THE ROAD BACK**, trying to get to his girlfriend. On the way, he literally runs into his **SHADOW**, Marcellus, running him with the car when he sees Marcellus crossing the street. However, Burch is also injured and dazed when his car collides with another car, a quick **REVERSAL**. Marcellus, appearing dead to a tyrant, comes back to life (**RESURRECTION**) and staggers towards Burch with a gun.

Burch tumbles into the "Mason-Dixon Gunshop" and Marcellus follows him (a **CHASE** typical of **THE ROAD BACK**). Burch punches Marcellus and is about to kill him when he's stopped by the gunshop owner, Maynard, who is armed with a shotgun.

Burch and Marcellus don't realize they've tumbled into an **INMOST CAVE** more sinister than anything they have encountered: an underworld beneath the underworld in which they live. Maynard knocks out Burch and summons his brother Zed, like him, a **SHADOW** projection of the worst aspects of white American male culture. Marcellus and Burch wake up, chained and gagged with S&M gear, in the still deeper cave of the dungeon beneath the mine.

Zed brings up a leather-clad creature, The Gimp, from a still deeper pit beneath the foot. Whether he is their intended hunter at a poce victim, is not made by their current. The Gimp suggests the horrors that await Marcellus and Burch. Marcellus is chosen to be the first victim of the evil hunters' sadistic attention, and is taken into a room once occupied by another victim, Russell. There is a sense in this adventure that others have gone before and have not won their round with death.



Butch hears the sounds of the two brothers raping Marcellus, a terrible **ORDEAL** that brings death to Marcellus' manhood. (In these scenes, again, in a sense of relatives. No matter how brutally we may have judged Marcellus and Butch for their behavior, they are still worse villains and lower circles of hell. Marcellus and Butch look like villains or **SHADOWS** from society's point of view, but compared to the denizens of the gunshop they are **HEROES**.)

Butch sees an opportunity and escapes, pushing out The Gimp, who falls limp and hangs himself on his death. Butch escapes upstairs and actually has his hand on the door, ready to blow, but has a crisis of conscience. He decides to make a true hero's **SACRIFICE**, risking his life by returning to rescue Marcellus, even though he knows Marcellus wants to kill him for not throwing the fight. He selects a sword from the many weapons at hand (literally **SEIZING THE SWORD**), and descends once again into the **INMOST CAVE** for his ultimate **ORDEAL**.

Butch kills Maynard, and Marcellus grabs a shotgun, shooting Zed in the groin. Marcellus is free, having rebounded from almost certain death, a **RESURRECTION**. Butch's heroic action balances the moral books for Butch's killing of the other man; Marcellus is **TRANSFORMED** by the experience, and grants a **BOON** to Butch, sparing his life and allowing him to escape so long as he promises not to tell anyone what happened, and to stay away from Los Angeles. Then he calls upon a **MENTOR**, Mr. Wolf, for help in dealing up the situation.

Butch **SEIZES A SWORD**, so to speak, taking the motorcycle that belonged to one of the numerous heirs. On this road the hero takes **THE ROAD BACK** to collect his fair lady. Although he may not be able to collect the **ELIXIR** of the gambling money, the hero has been rewarded with a greater **ELIXIR** of life. He rides off, with fatigue on the motorcycle, which bears the significant name of "Grace," as **ELIXIR** granted to those who make the right moral choices on the Hero's Journey.

## "THE BONNIE SITUATION"

Now the thread of Vincent and Jules is picked up again at the moment when Jules makes his Bible passage in the apartment of the Young Man, and we hear the scripture for a second time. The Young Man bursts out shooting at them, clearly a death-dealing **ORDEAL**. By rights they should be dead, but somehow they survive and the bullets pock the wall all around them.

The two young men react quite differently to their brush with death. Vincent dismisses it as a lucky break or coincidence, but Jules has an **APOTHEOSIS**. He is deeply moved and recognizes it as a miracle, an act of God, a sign which requires a change in attitude. Their reaction is a kind of **TEST**, one which Vincent appears to fail and Jules appears to pass with flying colors. Jules wins a **REWARD** from the experience, a greater spiritual awareness, but Vincent gets nothing out of it.

(The fact that we have already seen Jules kill Vincent makes this seem a kind of **RESURRECTION** for Vincent; we have seen him die, but now we see him alive again. This is another manifestation of the fractured postmodern time sense, which sees the notion of linear time as an arbitrary convention.)

On the **ROAD BACK** from this death-and-rebirth moment, Vincent makes a deadly error, again due to his flaw of lack of respect. He has insufficient respect for the tools of death, and seeing the gun aimed in the car, accidentally puts a bullet through the head of their accomplice Martin in the backseat.

Jules recognizes that this must be cleaned up and drives to the home of his friend and **ALLY**, Jimmy Dimmock, played by Queen Latifah. He appears to be a middle-class fellow whose connection to the criminal world is never spelled. He is worried about the moral worth of his wife Patricia, who will soon be returning home from the night shift. (Here the filmmaker is creating contrast between the criminal underworld and the bourgeois world in which most of us live. The joke is that they are more afraid of Béatrice's reaction than of the danger of the law coming down on them for manslaughter.)

Jules and Vincent try to clean it ourselves up, but are only partially successful. Jules warns Vincent for getting blood all over the garage walls, another sign that Vincent is careless and disrespectful, traits which we know will get him killed. He is in danger of turning another **ALLY**, Jimmy, into an **ENEMY**.

Jules calls Marvella for Jules, and he in turn summons a **MENTOR** and **ALLY** in the form of Winston Wolf, played by Harvey Keitel. His name, Jules has with filmmaker Villalobos, translates to the Wolves, an Ally in another thread of the story. They fulfill some of the same functions performed by Animal Melvins in many folktales.

Wolf appears to be a specialist in problems arising, experienced at getting rid of incriminating evidence. He arrives at supernatural speed and takes charge of the problem, issuing orders authoritatively. However, once again Vincent is disrespectful

## Crimple-Hole

of his elders, and talks of being ordered around. Wolf handles it with honor but also respectable authority, making it clear that Vincent should not make an **ENEMY** of his **ALLY**.

Wolf supervises as Vincent and Jules cleanse the bloody car. The whole sequence is a pronounced **RESURRECTION** for the young men, in which they and their vehicle are purified before the **RETURN**. Meanwhile Jimmy has to make a **SACRIFICE**, surrendering sheets and towels for the cleanup, but Wolf promptly compensates him with a **REWARD** of money for new furniture.

Then, acting precisely like a shaman putting warriors through a cleansing ritual of **RESURRECTION**, Wolf orders Vincent and Jules to strip off their bloody clothes. He makes Jimmy hose them down with icy water as they soap themselves clean of the blood. Next Jimmy sees their new clothing, significantly, boyish shorts and T-shirts. They look like schoolboys or college kids instead of tough gangsters. Like returning hunters, they have been put through a death-and-rebirth ritual that makes them innocent children again. Now they can re-enter the **ORDINARY WORLD** cleansed of the death they have faced and dealt with. Throughout, they have hung onto the mysterious briefcase, an **ELIXIR** which they brought back from the **ORDEAL** in the yuppie apartment.

Wolf escorts them to an open graveyard where the body and the car will be disposed of. He says farewell and goes off with his young girlfriend Rachel, daughter of the junkyard owner, showing how an experienced Mentor enjoys his **ELIXIR**, won through "correct" behavior by the rules of this game's universe. He compliments Jules for showing respect to his elders, a sign of character.

## "EPILOGUE"

Finally, the narrative returns to the original scene in the diner for the Epilogue, the last word on the subject. While Pumpkin and Henry Boney plan their wedding, Jules and Vincent review what has happened. Vincent, especially, tries to dismiss it, but Jules insists they have seen a miracle today. He resolves to live his life differently from now on, "walking the Earth," like Cain in the TV series "Kung Fu." This seems to mean wandering about doing good and seeking peace rather than living a normal life. He has truly been through a moral **RESURRECTION** and transformation. Vincent doesn't value any of this and gets up to go to the bathroom, the same action that ultimately gets him killed.

As a final **TEST** of Jules' resolve, Pumphkin and Honey Bunny start searching and wasting their guns around. Pumphkin tries to seize the **ELIXIR** of the mystery briefcase, opening it and falling under its spell, but Jules gets the drop on him. (Pumphkin's attempt echoes the *drop-cake* motif of the *Fake Climax*, who appears just as the hero is ready to claim his reward.)

Jules talks calmly but intensely to Pumphkin and Honey Bunny. He makes a deal with Pumphkin, giving him money from his wallet in return for leaving the briefcase alone. It's a final moment in which we are balanced between life and death. Jules recites his Bible passage for a third time, although on this reading it has a totally different meaning for him. Where before he identified with the wrathful face of God, dealing death to the unrighteous, now he identifies with the hand of mercy and justice, trying to be the blessed one "who, in the name of charity and good will, shepherd[s] the weak through the valley of darkness." He has moved his center from thoughtless killing to a new level of heroic action, from which he can use his warrior skills for good. He is able to defuse the potentially deadly situation and walks away with the **ELIXIR** in hand. A **SHOWDOWN** which would normally leave at least one person dead has been handled with *finesse* and grace, courtesy of Mr. Wolf. Jules has grown from being a **SHADOW**, a ruthless killer, to being a true **HERO**. Pumphkin and Honey Bunny walk away with the **ELIXIR** of their lives, which they won by making the right decision and keeping cool under Jules' orders. If they are smart, they will move up the ladder of skills and prepare for adventures on the level of Jules and Vincent.

Vincent and Jules walk away with the **ELIXIR**-filled briefcase. The tale is "over," although we know that in linear time, there is still much of the story ahead. Vincent and Jules will now deliver the briefcase to Marcellus at the bar, Vincent will show disrespect for Burch and will undergo his **ORDEAL** with him, Burch will not throw the fight and will kill Vincent before answering his **ORDEAL** with Marcellus. The final ending, if these events are rearranged in linear sequence, is the moment when Burch and his girlfriend ride off on the motorcycle.

The theme of *Tag Team* seems to be the testing of men by ordeals. Different characters react differently to their respective confrontations with Death. Despite the relativistic tone of the film, the storylines do seem to have a moral point of view. They sit in God's chair, dealing out the punishment of death for Vincent, who offends against the moral code of the movie, and rewarding Jules and Burch with life

for making the right choices in the scheme of the film. In this the filmmakers, despite the appearance of unconventionality, are quite conventional, following a moral code as strict as that in a John Ford or Alfred Hitchcock movie.

The most interesting case is that of Vincent, who faces trials in two completely different arenas, with different results. In the arena of love and loyalty, on his date with Mia, he behaves with courtesy and courage, like a knight of old, and for this he is rewarded by brief survival. But in the arena of respect for Higher Powers and for his more experienced elders, he fails, and is swiftly punished. Once again a relativistic note is sounded, suggesting that maturity over our area of life doesn't necessarily mean maturity in all aspects.

The interwoven Hero's Journeys of Vincent, Julia, and Butch present a full spectrum of heroic possibilities, encompassing the dramatic, the tragic, the comic, and the transcendent. Like Joseph Campbell's definition of myth, Pop Culture is a "shape-defining yet intrinsically constant story... with a challengingly persistent suggestion of more remaining to be experienced than will ever be known or told."

### THE FULL MONTY

At the opposite end of the spectrum from *Crumb* is a little film that Fox produced at the same time through its Searchlight division. As a work in the neo-classic independent film genre, it makes a good contrast with the old-time Hollywood epic scale of *Tomb*, and yet both films exhibit the signs of the Hero's Journey. *The Full Monty* expresses it on a more intimate scale but the elements form large in it nonetheless.

*The Full Monty* tells the comic adventures of a group of men whose ORDINARY WORLD is the ailing coal town of Sheffield. The men are different from one another, gay and straight, fat and thin, divided by social class and race, and yet they are united by the new conditions of their society. In the old days, depicted by a hilariously upbeat promotional film from the 1960s, Sheffield was a booming industrial center where the men went to work, earning the wages and heading the households. Now the world has been turned on its head. The mills have been closed, the men are out of work, and it's a severe economy in which the winners are many likely to be the losers.

Gas is the principal protagonist, a hapless man whose immaturity isolates him from his ex-wife and son. His **OUTER PROBLEM** is to scrape together some money; his **INNER challenge** is to earn his son's respect and to learn to respect himself. He gets his **CALL TO ADVENTURE** when he sees his ex-wife and her girlfriends wanting their freedom by taking in a male strip show. He conceives the idea of raising money by staging a strip show of his own, recruiting a chorus line from the rejected men of Sheffield.

There are many **REFUSALS** from his skeptical friends and associates, who are not eager to expose themselves. These men, like all men, have many secrets to protect and conceal. Gas doesn't want the other men to know he's done jail time. His oversight from Dave hides his lack of sex drive, which leads his wife to think he's having an affair. Gerald, Gas's former boss at the steel mill, has kept secret from his wife the fact that he lost his job months ago. Lemper, the mill security officer, has hidden the fact that he's gay, perhaps even concealing it from himself. Guy is a fellow who can't dance, but makes up for it by revealing a secret — he has the fullest money of them all. His willing self-exposure sets an example for the men who will all be slowly unveiling themselves throughout the movie. Horse is the best dancer of the lot and becomes a kind of **MENTOR** to the rest, along with Gerald, who has been raising hellbooms dancing hooches with his wife, but even Horse has a secret — the reason for his name — and this one is never revealed.

Gas's steadfast **MENTOR** in his quest is his son Nathan, a Wise Young Man who voices an emotional wish early in the story, "Why can't we do normal things once in a while?" He keeps Gas honest and on the track, and at the end gives him the courage to face the ultimate exposure, the final test of his commitment to something.

Gas **CROSSES THE FIRST THRESHOLD** when he holds an audition for his male strip show. He turns an **ENEMY** into an **ALLY**, recruiting his old squarrior who initially wanted nothing to do with the project. The men slowly reveal themselves and experiment with the **SPECIAL WORLD** of treating each other and allowing themselves to be honest and vulnerable.

Their **APPROACH** is a phase of preparation and rehearsal, in which they learn more about themselves. An encounter with Death marks the central **ORDEAL**, when Dave has severe doubts and wants to quit the enterprise, and Lemper's husband dies. In addition the men are invited for indecent exposure

when their dress rehearsal is captured on a plain security camera. It looks like they're finished. But this is quickly followed by REWARD, a phase in which Gaz gets insurance that word of his show is spreading the word has been good in their publicity. Louper and Guy also reap a reward, discovering that they can fit each other as they run from the police.

In another strand of the plot, Dave faces an ORDEAL of honesty, revealing to his wife the true reason for his lack of sexual interest. His REWARD is the knowledge that she loves him anyway, which gives him courage to rejoin the strip show. On THE ROAD BACK, he joins the crew to the final preparations for the big act.

The ball rolls with cloudy weather. The RESURRECTION is entered when Gaz gets cold feet at the thought of exposing himself, not only to women, but to a few men who have slipped into the hall. His involvement with the group seems to die for a few moments as the other men go on stage without him. But his wife encourages him to go on and he is REBORN with a life entry into the strip act, passing the final test of commitment and honesty. He reinvents himself totally. RETURNING WITH THE ELIXIR of self-knowledge, acceptance, understanding, and self-respect. They have found a new way to live in the new society.

The Fall Manx connected with audiences because of its infectious good humor and its upbeat music and dance, which combined effectively with the realistic settings and believable, down-to-earth characters. It is a "feel-good" movie that communicates a sense that the filmmakers like people and believe that though they are complex and troubled, they are basically good and are capable of change. The audience has the identification and satisfaction of cheering for the underdog. The film has a visual inventiveness that employs many poetic touches like the image of Dave and Gaz stranded in a canal on a sinking abandoned car or Gaz's practical son Nathan scampers away on the bank. Meanwhile the multistranded plot telling little stories about six men and a boy, is organized into a coherent dramatic experience by the use of Fern's Journey motifs and devices. By their actions within this framework, these ordinary men are transformed into heroes for the edification and enjoyment of the audience. And because of the universal recognition of the Fern's Journey pattern, audiences around the world could find something of themselves in this story.

### STAR WARS

Before closing the book on the permutations of the Hero's Journey in popular film, I have to acknowledge the lasting impact of the Star Wars series. The first Star Wars film, now re-titled *Star Wars Episode IV: A New Hope*, was released in 1977 as I was just beginning to digest the ideas of Joseph Campbell, and was a stunning confirmation of the power of the mythic patterns I had found there. Here was a fully developed expression of his concepts of the Hero's Journey, exactly as Campbell described. It helped me work out the theory and test my own ideas, and it quickly became one of those quantum movie events, breaking records and setting a higher standard for what a movie could be.

As I begin to teach "mythic structure," the film provided a convenient, widely seen example to demonstrate the movements and principles of the Hero's Journey, in which the function of the parts were simple, clear, and vivid. It entered the language of pop culture, providing useful metaphors, symbols, and phrases that captured how we all felt about good and evil, technology and faith. It spawned a billion-dollar industry of sequels, prequels, ancillaries, franchises, and a whole universe of toys, games, and collectibles. Entire generations have grown up under its influence, and it has inspired countless artists to think big and pursue their dreams of creativity. It filled the same function for millions that the old myths did, giving standards for comparison, providing metaphors and meaning, inspiring people to stretch beyond their visible bounds.

If the Star Wars movie of 1977 had been a one-shot cinema event, its cultural impact would still have been considerable, but its influence was tripled by the continuation of the series with *Episode V: The Empire Strikes Back* (1980) and *Episode VI: Return of the Jedi* (1983). Series creator George Lucas had always planned a vast canvas on the scale of Wagner's *Ring* cycle, an epic tale that might take a dozen movies to tell in full. For the following sixteen years fans wondered if Lucas would ever fulfill the promise of more films, expanding the saga into the past and possibly into the future. In what is known as "the Expanded Universe," various side-plots and back stories were developed in comic books, novels, cartoon series, and TV specials, but it was only in 1999 that Lucas returned to the film series, eventually producing three "prequel" films that told the story of the generations before Luke Skywalker and Princess Leia, and revealed the events and character flaws that led to the development of Darth Vader, the series' supreme embodiment of evil.



## George Light

The studio films for organizing this large corpus of six feature film series to reflect a polarized view of the universe and of the hero myth itself, allowing full exploration of the dark and light possibilities of the heroic model. The films released in the 1970s and '80s represent the positively charged, optimistic view of heroism, in which the young hero Luke Skywalker is severely tempted by power and rage but ends up triumphant and morally balanced, an example of what Campbell calls "The Master of Two Worlds." The dramatic intention is quite different in the three prequel films (*The Phantom Menace*/1999, *Attack of the Clones*/2002, *Force of the Jedi*/2005). Though sprinkled with moments of lightness and humor, the overall tone is dark and tragic, showing the destructions of a human spirit by fatal flaws of anger, pride, and ambition.

A mythic theme that seems to run through all the films is a fascination with the emotional territory between fathers and sons. The impact of positive male role models, surrogate fathers and mentors like Obi-Wan Kenobi, Yoda, Qui-Gon Jinn, Luke's Uncle Owen, and Mace Windu is emphasized, but the series is as much concerned in the effect of absent or distant fathers and negative role models on a young man's developing personality.

The first three films released portray Luke Skywalker's quest to discover the identity of his father and his struggle with the dark tendencies in his own nature. *Episode IV*, the film released in 1977, more or less follows an Arthurian model, with the young nobleman raised in humble surroundings, unaware of his true name, and mentored over by a Merlin-like figure (Obi-Wan) who gives him a powerful weapon that belonged to his father: a light saber similar to Arthur's sword Excalibur.

In the next two films, Luke will discover more of his heritage and learn that Princess Leia is his twin sister. His relationships with surrogate fathers will continue to develop, loving Obi-Wan as a benign influence (though his ghostly presence continues to guide Luke) and gaining a new father figure in Yoda. As he learns to master the Force, he is tempted by the dark side, represented by the villainous Darth Vader, who eventually reveals himself as Luke's true father. Like many heroes before him, Luke must confront the fact that his father was not perfect, and that he has some of the same dangerous tendencies that made his father a tyrant and a murderer. In this section the plot somewhat resembles the Wagnerian scenario of Siegfried, the young hero who must reforge a broken sword that represents the failure of the previous generation.

Luke passes a major Resurrection test in *Episode VI: Return of the Jedi*, when he has the opportunity and the motivation to kill his father, for Lord Vader is threatening to turn Luke's sister Princess Leia to the dark side of the Force. Luke spares his father's life, signifying his choice to uphold the positive side of the Force. The evil Emperor who has manipulated Darth Vader and is a kind of evil father figure for him, now begins to destroy Luke with powerful lightning bolts. Moved by the sight of his son's impending death, Vader reverses polarity and goes over to the light side of the Force, throwing the Emperor to his death. Vader, dying himself from the struggle with the Emperor, asks Luke to remove his helmet, revealing the fragile human beneath the mask of technology. He seeks forgiveness and his son grants it. Luke, though wounded, disoriented, and severely tempted by his own dark potential, ends up as a positively charged hero, able to use his powers responsibly for the good of all. He is even able to forget the fact that his own father chopped off his arm and tried to kill him. One of the final images of *Episode VI*, theoretically the absolute end of the series, is that of the ghosts of Darth Vader, redeemed and forgiven, standing benevolently watch over his son alongside the ghosts of Obi-Wan and Yoda, a trinity of father figures.

Sixteen years after the release of *Episode VI*, Lucas returned to his unfinished canvas to fill in the first three episodes, detailing the ascendancy of Luke's father, the young Jedi knight Anakin Skywalker, and his corruption into the totally evil Darth Vader. Continuing his exploration of father-son or mentor-student relationships, in *Episode I: The Phantom Menace* (1999), Lucas begins with a young Obi-Wan training under his wise master, Qui-Gon Jinn. Qui-Gon and a galactic princess, Padmé Amidala, find a brilliant, strong-willed nine-year-old boy, Anakin Skywalker, who is a slave on the desert planet of Tatooine, where his son, Luke Skywalker will later be raised. The boy, unusually skilled in mechanics and piloting, seems to be the fulfillment of a Jedi prophecy that a "Chosen One" will bring balance to the Force. But already the seeds of evil are present in the child, who has a quick temper and is difficult to control. Only Yoda seems to notice something is wrong with the boy, and warns that pride and anger may come to dominate in him.

Interestingly in a story about fathers and sons, the boy Anakin has no father in the conventional sense. Like many mythic heroes of the past, his birth was almost miraculous, an "unmistakable conception," for his mother was impregnated not by a human father but by mysterious microscopic life forms called "midi-chlorians"

## Complex Cycle

that the Jedi believe are channels for the Force. An important element in the moral compass of the *Sarthen* series is how humans will make the transition from purely organic creatures and beings of the future enhanced or modified by technology and machines. There are warnings implied throughout the series that though the technological possibilities are marvelous, we must be careful not to get out of balance and yield too much of our humanity to the chemical and mechanical possibilities that will come out way in the future. The fact that Anakin has no natural father leads him to be alternately seeking and rebelling against father figures, and helps explain how he is able to become the monstrous, near-half-machine that is Darth Vader.

The complex chronology of the films places the warrior of the prequel in a curious position. On the one hand, young Anakin seems to be doing the archetypal job of the hero, as the primary action character and someone whose fate we should care about. But it's very difficult to identify fully with a character who we know will turn out to be a serious foreign equivalent of Hitler or Genghis Khan, even if we know he will be ultimately redeemed. Though the prequel films performed extremely well at the box office, the dramatic experience of watching them was necessarily muted by the knowledge that their principal hero is fated to be a despicable villain. Many people watched the prequel films with a certain detachment, unable to get behind the hero's struggles as they had with Luke Skywalker's in *Episode IV-IV*.

Some of the audience's need to identify with positively charged characters was transferred from Anakin to other members of the cast in the three prequel films such as Qui-Gon Jinn, Obi-Wan, Princess Padme Amidala, and others. Nevertheless a certain chilliness hangs over the prequel films, just as the actress risk that Lucas took in attempting such a large and complex composition. Anakin's sexy glow darkens as the films progress. In *Episode II Attack of the Clones*, his special status as a genius allows him to fall prey to pride and arrogance. His initial feelings about father figures leads him to rebel against positive role models like Obi-Wan, and Yoda and to seek the twisted counsel of negative father possibilities like Senator Palpatine, Uchiu Sedina.

That most human element, love, is weakened in the young Anakin by his secret romance and marriage with Princess Amidala. However, his capacity to love becomes shattered by the death of his mother at the hand of Tusken raiders. In a sequence that recalls the Western movie (reverse of John Ford's *The Searcher*),

Anakin finds his mother horribly tortured by the seorges and continues to let Jedi, unleashing a tide of bloody revenge that makes him almost unrecognizable to an audience's eyes.

In *Episode III: Revenge of the Sith*, Anakin becomes obsessed with the fear of losing that which he loves, Princess Amidala, and is haunted by prophetic dreams of her dying as a child. He is thus very prey for the temptations of Senator Palpatine, who holds out the promise of an elixir that can rescue loved ones from death. Anakin makes further bad choices, preventing positive Jedi master Mace Windu from killing Palpatine and allowing Palpatine to kill Windu. When Amidala pleads with him to leave public life, Anakin sees again, choosing to remain in the center of things in the vain hope of overruling Palpatine someday.

Presumably, Anakin secretly causes that which he fears the most, Anakin's death, by almost strangling her when he suspects she has betrayed him to Obi-Wan. She dies of a broken heart after giving birth to the future Luke and Leia. Anakin's descent into unmitigated evil is completed in a final duel with Obi-Wan, who cuts off both his arms and one leg, leaving him to fall near the scorching lava of a volcano. Palpatine, now revealed to be the evil schemes Darth Sidious, captures Anakin and uses machines to turn him into the less-than-human creature we know as Darth Vader. In the dark and tragic climax, the only ray of hope is that the infants Luke and Leia are sent to be raised by surrogate parents. Luke going to his aunt and uncle on Tatooine and Leia being raised by a noble family, the Organs, on the planet Alderaan.

Audiences and critics had mixed reactions to the three prequel films, ranging from strong criticism of comic elements like the character of Jar-Jar Binks to expressions of disappointment that Lucas seemed to have lost some of the bright, thoughtful spirit of episodes IV-VI. One possible explanation for the markedly different tone of the prequels is that Lucas was in a different stage of his life when he returned to his youthful creation. In making the first three films in the '70s and '80s, Lucas had only a short walk backwards to reach his childhood, and was firmly in touch with the optimism and hopefulness of youth. The road back to innocence was a lot longer by 1999, and his perspective was no longer that of a young rogue filmmaker, but that of a responsible parent and head of a huge network of companies. Although in *Episode I* Lucas was dealing with the early childhood of his protagonist, Anakin Skywalker, the boy grows in the film to adulthood like a would-be wise adult.

## Genre: Film

Though Lucas has said he has completed his original vision with the six feature films, the universe he founded continues to be developed in countless novels, comics, animation series, and games. It has a definite life of its own, quite apart from the intentions of its creator, and it has been embellished by original contributions from fans who feel they own it. And we are entitled to wonder if someday, perhaps in a universe far, far away, our version of the original scheme will ever be realized, one that called not only for these prequel films, but also three sequels, presumably *Episodes VII, VIII, and IX*, that might deal with the further adventures of Luke, Leia, and Han Solo, and perhaps their descendants or students. It would be interesting to see, in that hypothetical universe, how the perspective of the creator might mellow, perhaps producing a tone completely different from those of the first six films, in a future when humans will have to make ever more difficult choices about the Force and the god-like possibilities of technology. Having explored idealized goodness in the first three films, and the roots of evil in the prequels, Lucas and his successors might find a synthesis in a future trio of films that finally brings a balance to the Force.

In 2001 I participated in the making of a documentary film, *A Galaxy Far, Far Away*, looking into the “Star Wars phenomenon” that was ceasing in the public imagination because of the arrival of the series. The film took a light-hearted view of the various obsessions of Star Wars fans and the importance of the movies as their lives. Given that fathers and sons are so significant in the films, it is not surprising that a major conclusion of the filmmakers was that the Star Wars saga is one of the few cultural events that unites generations, making strong bonds between fathers and sons. Many young men interviewed for the documentary reported that the Star Wars films were among the few movies that fathers and sons could watch together, and that they had become an important part of family memories. Despite their occasional flaws and missteps, the films collectively are an impressive achievement of the mythic imagination, continuing the epic tradition and proving that abundant energy still surges in the wells of the Hero’s Journey.





SHAMAN

# THE WRITER'S JOURNEY

---



One beauty of the Hero's Journey model is that it not only describes a pattern in myths and fairy tales, but it's also an accurate map of the territory one must travel to become a writer or, for that matter, a human being.

The Hero's Journey and the Writer's Journey are one and the same. Anyone setting out to write a story soon encounters all the tests, trials, ordeals, joys, and rewards of the Hero's Journey. We meet all of its Shadow, Shapechangers, Mentors, Tricksters, and Threshold Guardians in the inner-outer landscape. Writing is an often perilous journey inward to probe the depths of one's soul and bring back the *Elan* of experience — a good story. Lack of interest or confusion about goals may be the Shadow that dulls our work, an editor or one's own judgmental side may be the Threshold Guardians that seem to block our way. Accidents, computer problems, and difficulties with time and discipline may torment and haunt us like Tricksters. Unfulfilled dreams of success or distractions may be the Shapechangers who tempt, confuse, and dangle us. Deadlines, editorial decisions, or the struggle to sell our work may be the Tests and Ordeals from which we seem to die but are resurrected to write again.

But take hope, for writing is magic. Even the simplest act of writing is almost supernatural, on the borderline with telepathy. Just think: We can make a few abstract marks on a piece of paper in a certain order and someone a world away and a thousand years from now can know our deepest thoughts. The boundaries of space and time and even the limitations of death can be transcended.



Many cultures believed the letters of their alphabets were far more than just symbols for communication, recording transactions, or recalling history. They believed letters were powerful magical symbols that could be used to cast spells and predict the future. The Norse runes and the Hebrew alphabet are simple letters for spelling words, but also deep symbols of cosmic significance.

This magical aspect is preserved in our word for teaching children how to manipulate letters to make words spelling. When you "spell" a word correctly, you are in effect casting a spell, changing these abstract, arbitrary symbols with meaning and power. We say "Sticks and stones may break my bones, but words can never hurt me," but this is manifestly untrue. We know that words have power to hurt or heal. The simple words of a letter, telegram, or phone call can strike you like a hammer blow. They're just words — marks on paper or vibrations of air — but more words such as "Cauld," "Ready, set, bet!" "I die" or "We'd like to buy your screenplay" can hurt us, condemn us, or bring us joy. They can hurt or heal us with their magic power.

The healing power of words is their most magical aspect. Writers, like the shamans or medicine men and women of ancient cultures, have the potential to be healers.

## WRITERS AND SHAMANS

Shamans have been called "the wounded healers." Like writers, they are special people set apart from the rest by their dreams, visions, or unique experiences. Shamans, like many writers, are prepared for their work by enduring terrible ordeals. They may have a dangerous illness or fall from a cliff and have nearly every bone broken. They are chewed by a lion or maulled by a bear. They are taken apart and put back together again in a new way. In a case they have died and been reborn, and this experience gives them special powers. Many writers come to their craft only after they have been shattered by life in some way.

Often those chosen to be shamans are identified by special dreams or visions in which the gods or spirits take them away to other worlds where they undergo terrible ordeals. They are laid out on a table to have all their bones removed and broken. Below their eyes, their bones and organs are split, cracked, and reassembled in a new order. They are tuned to a new frequency like radio receivers. As shamans, they are now able to receive messages from other worlds.

They return to their tribes with new powers. They have the ability to travel to other worlds and bring back stories, metaphors, or myths that guide, heal, and give meaning to life. They listen to the ordinary, mysterious dreams of their people and give them back in the form of stories that provide guidelines for right living.

We writers share in the godlike power of the shamans. We not only travel to other worlds but create them out of space and time. When we write, we truly travel to those worlds of our imagination. Anyone who has tried to write seriously knows that is why we need solitude and concentration. We are actually traveling to another time and place.

As writers we travel to other worlds not as mere daydreamers, but as shamans with the magic power to bundle up those worlds and bring them back in the form of stories for others to share. Our stories have the power to heal, to make the world new again, to give people metaphors by which they can better understand their own lives.

When we writers apply the ancient tools of the archetypal and the Hero's Journey to modern stories, we stand on the shoulders of the mythmakers and sages of old. When we try to heal our people with the wisdom of myth, we are the modern shamans. We ask the same ageless, childlike questions prescribed by the myths: Who am I? Where did I come from? What happens when I die? What does it mean? Where do I fit in? Where am I bound on my own Hero's Journey?



# APPENDICES





STORIES ARE ALIVE

# STORIES ARE ALIVE

*"All the words of man have their origin in creative fantasy  
What right have we then to deny them imagination?"*

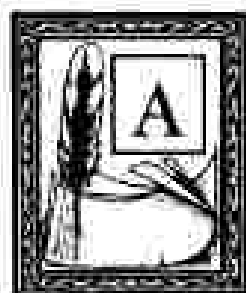
— Jung

*"Would it hurt you, Ape, you gave my name,  
But what's puzzling you is the nature of my game."*

— The Rolling Stones

*"Sympathy for the Devil"*

**Pragmatic Stories are alive and conscious and respond to human emotions.**



At one point when the Disney company was remodeling itself in the 1970s, I was called upon to review the major fairy tales of world cultures, looking for potential animation subjects on the order of Walt Disney's colorful interpretations of European folk stories, like "Snow White" and "Cinderella" from the Brothers Grimm and "The Sleeping Beauty" from Perrault's collection of French fairy tales. It was a chance to re-open the mental laboratory to study old friends from my childhood that Walt Disney had not gotten around to taking, like Rapunzel and Rumpelstiltskin. It was also a great opportunity for me to sample many kinds of stories from different nations, identifying similarities and differences and extracting storytelling principles from this broad sample.

In the course of my adult wanderings through what is normally considered children's literature, I came to a few firm conclusions about stories, those powerful and mysterious creations of the human mind. For instance, I came to believe that stories have living power; that they can help us deal with difficult emotional situations by giving us examples of human behavior, perhaps similar in some way to the struggles we are going through at some stage of life, and which might inspire

as to try a different strategy for living. I believe mice has several uses for the human species and that they were a big step in human evolution: allowing us to think metaphorically and to pass down the accumulated wisdom of the race in story form. I believe *novels are metaphors by which people measure and adjust their own lives by comparing them to those of the characters.* I believe the basic metaphor of most stories is that of the journey, and that *god must show at least two journeys, one outward as a outer journey in which the hero tries to do something difficult or get something, and an inner journey in which the hero faces some crisis of the spirit or test of character that leads to transformation.* I believe *novels are imitation devices functioning like computers and maps to allow us to feel oriented, centered, connected, more conscious, more aware of our abilities and responsibilities and our relationship to the rest of the world.*

But of all my beliefs about stories, one that has been particularly useful in the business of developing communal societies for the museum is the idea that *novels are metaphors about ourselves, and represent a bridge between stories and words.*

I have always suspected that stories are alive. They seem to be conscious and purposeful. Like living beings, stories have an agenda, something on their minds. They want something from you. They want to wake you up, to make you think, to *awaken and move alive.* They want to teach you a lesson disguised as entertainment. Under the guise of amusement, stories want to edify you, build up your character just a little by showing a moral situation, a struggle, and an outcome. They seek to change you in some small way, to make you just a bit more human by comparing your behavior to that of the characters.

The living, conscious, intentional quality of stories is best and there revealed in familiar fairy tales, like the one the Brothers Grimm collected called "The Emperor's New Clothes," the tale of the little man with his power to spin straw into gold and a mysterious desire to own a human child. The story is found in many cultures where the little man is known by strange and funny names like *Huldermann* (Sweden), *Finnlemann* (Ireland), *Peruchino* (Italy), *Repelertje* (Holland), and *Campyrdinnocentijn* (France).

This was one of the movies that posed challenging questions in the mental laboratory of my earliest childhood. Who was the little man, where did he get his power, and why did he want that human child? What was the lesson the girl in the

story was supposed to last? Later in life, as I returned to contemplate that story as part of my work for Walt Disney animation, many of those rhythms remained, but the deep wisdom of the folk tale helped me understand that stories are alive, that they actively respond to wishes, desires, and strong emotions in the characters, and that they are compelled to provide experiences that teach us some lesson in life.

## THE STORY OF RUMPELSTILTSKIN

The well-known tale begins with a lovely young girl in a dangerous situation, an orphaned damsel in distress. She is the daughter of a miller who begs to the king that his daughter is so talented, she can even spin straw into gold. The king, a literal-minded fellow, says "That's the kind of talent I like!" and locks her in a room in his castle containing only a spinning wheel and piles of straw, warning that he's going to have her killed in the morning if she doesn't spin the straw into gold as her daddy promised.

The girl doesn't know what to do and begins to weep. At once the door opens and a little man, or "moochie" as the tale says, comes in asking her why she is crying so. Apparently he has been attracted by her strong emotions, as Fairy folk are said to be. When she explains her predicament he says he can spin straw into gold, no problem, and asks what she can give him if he does the job for her. She hands over her necklace and he in secret sets down and spins the straw, what, what, what into shining gold wire on a spindle.

In the morning the little man has vanished. The king is very pleased with the gold, but being greedy, locks the girl into a bigger room with more straw, and again demands that she spin it all into gold by dawn. If not, she will die. All about in the room that night, the girl feels hopeless and weeps some more. As if summoned again by her emotions, the little man appears a second time. This time she offers him a ring from her finger to get out of her predicament. What, what, what, straw is spun into gold.

The king finds bigger spools of gold wire in place of straw the next morning and is delighted, but again is greedy and locks the girl in the biggest room in the palace, stuffed to the ceiling with straw. If she can spin it all into gold by dawn he will marry her, but if not, she will die.



## Chapter Eight

The girl's weeping in the locked room attracts the little man for a third time, but now she has nothing left to give him. So he asks her, "If you become queen, will you give me your first-born child?"

Thinking nothing of the future, the girl agrees. When, what, when the occasion of strife is spun into gold. The king collects his gold and marries the girl as promised. A year goes by and the girl, now a queen, has a beautiful child.

One day the little man comes and claims the child as his reward for saving her life. Horrified, the young queen offers him all the riches of the realm, but the little man refuses, saying "Something else is dearer to me than all the treasures on the world." The girl trembles and cries so much that the manikin relents a little for, as we have seen, he is very sensitive to human emotions. He strikes a new bargain with her, if she can guess his name within cross days, she will get to keep the child, but she will never guess or be kept confidently, for he has a very unusual name.

The queen stays up all night thinking of every name she's ever heard and sends out messengers far and wide to assemble lists of unusual names. When the morning comes to see her the first day, she tries out all these names but none is right. On the second day she sends out more messengers to the distant corners of the kingdom to collect weird names, but again the little man's name is not among them and he goes away laughing, sure he will get to keep the child.

On the third day the queen's most faithful, but traveling messenger reports that he's struck pay dirt. In his wanderings he didn't encounter any new names, but far away atop a mountain, he did come across a little house, in front of which a fire was blazing and around it was dancing a ridiculous little man. The messenger heard him shout a rhyme that revealed his name was Rumpelstiltskin.

The little man appears once more in the queen's room, sure she will be unable to guess his absurd name. But after two bad guesses ("Cassid" "Harry"), she gets it right — Rumpelstiltskin! The tale ends abruptly as the little man, crying out that the devil must have told her his name, stamps his right foot so furiously that it goes through the floor and sticks deep in the earth. With his two hands he seizes the other foot and literally beats himself in wood.

A fitting end for one who has conspired to take a human child from its mother.

Or so it

Who is this strange little man with his supernatural powers to enter locked rooms and spin straw into gold? Although the tale only calls him a "little man" or

"mankind," he is clearly one of the faerie folk of worldwide folkloric, perhaps all of a genre. The oral storytellers may have avoided calling him what he is because the faerie folk are recursively touchy about their names and identities, but it is likely that any hearer of this tale in medieval times would instantly recognize the little man as a supernatural creature from the faerie world. Like other denizens of that world he appears when he wants to and only to certain people. Like them, he is interested in human children and attracted by strong human emotions.

From early times people have associated the faerie folk with a certain sadness, perhaps because they lack some things that human beings take for granted. According to one theory, they are unable to conceive their own young and are therefore fascinated by human children, sometimes kidnapping them in the night, as Shakespeare's faerie queen Titania snatched an Indian princeling as her darling toy in *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. Sometimes the faeries swap children from their cradles and replace them with blocks of wood or soul-less replica children called changelings.

The faeries' ability to feel emotions may be different from ours, for they seem to be nervous about our emotional outbursts, and are in fact attracted to them. It's as if they exist in a parallel dimension, but are summoned into our world by strong human emotions, as denizens and angels supposedly can be summoned by ritual ceremonies and prayers intended to focus emotional energy. Some authorities hold that faeries do not know simple human emotions like love or grief, but are intensely curious to know what they are missing.

Re-experiencing the story of "Blowpipe-Indolence" as an adult, I was struck by how immmanently the girl's tears of despair summoned the little man. Implied in the girl's weeping is a cry for help, a wish. If given words, it might be "Please, get me out of this!" It appears the inhabitants of the faerie world are attracted to human emotions especially when they are focused into wishes. In this case, the wish is to get out of a desperate, hopeless situation. In the fairy tale logic of cause and effect, the girl's shedding of tears is a positive action that generates a positive result. By crying, she acknowledges her powerlessness and sends out a signal to the world of spirits that surrounds us. "But there someone with the magical powers my father claimed for me, who can get me out of this accursedible spot!" And the story heart, and responds by sending a messenger, a supernatural creature who has the power to grant her impossible wish to escape.

## Chapter Eight

However, as always, there's a catch. The price for getting out of her trouble is very high, requiring her to reveal treasures, like a necklace or a ring, to lift itself. But the girl isn't thinking about that right now. Having a child is a remote possibility. When she gets to that point, maybe she can work something out or maybe the little man will just go away. Whatever the risk, she'll agree to it to get out of that room and out of danger from the king's wrath. Her wish to escape, expressed by a strong burst of emotion, has called the little man and the adventure into being.

## THE POWER OF WISHING

I began to realize that wishing may be an underlying principle of storytelling. The hero is almost always presented in a difficult or uncomfortable situation, very often making a wish to escape or to change the conditions. The wish is often verbalized and is clearly stated in the first act of many movies. In *The Wizard of Oz*, Dorothy's song, "Somewhere over the Rainbow" is a wish to escape to a land where troubles are far behind her. In *Law in London*, Scarlett Johansson's character expresses the theme of the movie in a line in the first act when she says to Bill Murray's character, meeting in a Japanese hotel bar, "I wish I could sleep," symbolizing a wish for spiritual and emotional peace.

The expression of a wish sets a freedom line, near the beginning of a story, but an important function of *exposition* for the audience. It gives a story a strong throughline or what is called a "story line," organizing the forces in and around the hero to achieve a clear goal, even if that goal may later be re-examined and re-defined. It automatically generates a strong polarization of the story, generating a conflict between those forces helping the hero achieve her goal, and those trying to prevent it.

If the wish is not expressed by one of the characters, it may be implied by the character's line intention. Audience members making strong identification with a character in trouble will make the wish themselves, desiring the hero to be happy, triumphant, or free, and getting themselves in alignment with the forces polarizing the story.

Spoken or not, the story hears the wish, seemingly attracted by the extreme emotion contained in it. Carl Jung had a motto carved above his door, "Vincere aique nos vocat, deus scilicet," which loosely translated means "Summons to win,

“the god will come.” In other words, when the emotional conditions are right, when the need is great, there is an inner cry for change, a spoken or unspoken wish that calls the story and the adventure into being.

The story's response to the human wish is often to send a messenger, sometimes a magical little man like *Kompelutshin*, but always some kind of agent who leads the hero into a special kind of experience we call an adventure — a sequence of challenges that teach the hero, and the audience, a lesson. The story provides villains, trials, and allies to challenge or aid the hero and impart the lessons that are in the story's agenda. The story sets up moral dilemmas that test the hero's beliefs and character, and we are invited to measure our own behavior against that of the players in the drama.

The adventure has a special quality of the unexpected. The story is tricky: it acts in the mischievous, indirect, slightly mischievous way of the fairy folk who are its frequent agents, providing the hero with a series of unexpected obstacles that challenge the way the person has been doing business. It usually grants the hero's wish but in an unexpected way, a way that teaches the hero a lesson about life. Many of life's teachings can be boiled down to “be careful what you wish for,” which is a lesson taught by *coomans*, science-fiction and fantasy stories as well as love stories and stories of ambition.

## WANTS vs. NEEDS

Through the triggering device of wishes, stories seem to like arranging events so that the hero is forced to evolve to a higher level of awareness. Often the hero wishes for something that she or he desperately wants at that moment, but the story teaches the hero to look beyond, to what he or she really needs. A hero may think she wants to win a competition or find a treasure, but in fact the story shows that she needs to learn some moral or emotional lesson: how to be a team player, how to be more flexible and forgiving, how to stand up for herself. In the course of granting the initial wish, the story provides *life-raising*, life-threatening incidents that challenge the hero to correct some flaw in his or her character.

By imposing obstacles to the hero in achieving the goal, the story may appear to be hostile to the hero's well-being. The intention of the story may seem to be to take something away from the hero (*lose life itself*), but in fact the real aim of the

story is irrelevant, to teach the hero the needed moral lesson, to fill in a missing piece in the hero's personality or understanding of the world.

The lesson is presented in a particular, realized way reflecting a more universal principle we might call "Not Only... But Also" (NOBA). NOBA is a rhetorical device, a way of presenting information that can be found in "fortune-telling" systems like the I Ching and the Tarot. Not Only... But Also means Here is a truth that you know perfectly well, but there is another dimension to this truth of which you may not be aware. A story might be telling you, through the actions of a character, that not only are your habits holding you back but also if you keep going in this direction your habits will destroy you. Or it might be telling you that not only are you beset with difficulties, but also these very difficulties will be the means to your ultimate victory.

In LaFontaine's famous example from "the Scottish play," the premise is that Macbeth's ruthless ambition inevitably leads to his destruction. But Macbeth doesn't see it that way, not at first. He thinks only that ruthless ambition leads to power, or being king. But the story, constructed into life in response to Macbeth's thirst for power, teaches him a lesson in NOBA form. Ambition leads not only to being king, but also to Macbeth's destruction.

The words "but" and "however," as lawyers know, are very useful for setting terms and conditions, and can be powerful tools of rhetoric and storytelling. A story is like a long sentence or a paragraph, with a subject, the hero; an object, the hero's goal; and a verb, the emotional mass or physical action of the hero. "So and so wants something and does something to get it." The NOBA concept rewrites the word "but" or "however" into the sentence. Now it's "So and so wants something and does something to get it, but here are unexpected consequences, facing us and so we adapt or change in order to survive."

The aim of good storytelling is to get the audience to make the wish along with the hero. Stories do this through the process of "identification," by making the hero sympathetic, the victim of a misfortune or an understandable error of judgment. Good storytellers invite audiences to invest themselves in the fate of the characters by making them likeable or giving them universal drives, desires, and human weaknesses. Ideally, what happens to the hero is happening, on some emotional level of connection, to the audience. The story and the hero are not the only active agents in the drama. The members of the audience are also agents in the play.

emotionally involved, actively wishing for the hero to win, learn the lesson, survive, and thrive. They identify with heroes in a threefold position where it appears their wishes may not be granted and their real needs may not be met.

The wishes of heroes are a strong point of identification for many people, since we all have wishes and desires that we secretly cherish. In fact, that's one of the main reasons we go to movies and watch TV and read novels — to have our wishes granted. Storytellers are, most of the time, in the wish-granting business. The Disney empire built its entire corporate identity around the belief in wishing, from its theme song “When You Wish Upon a Star” to the wish-granting fairy godmothers of *Sleeping Beauty* and *Cinderella*, to the grow who grows their wishes in *Aladdin*. Hollywood executives and best-selling novelists aim to know the secret wishes of their audiences and fulfill them. Popular movies of recent years have granted widely held wishes to walk with the dinosaurs, tread the soil of alien planets, seek high adventure in mythic media as it times goes by, and surpass the boundaries of space, time, and death itself. So-called “reality television” grants wishes on a nightly basis, increasing on ordinary people the thrill of being seen by millions and being a star in studios or riches. Politicians and advertisers play on the wishes of the public, promising to grant security, peace of mind, or comfort. A good techniquer of Hollywood peddling it to begin by asking “Did you ever wish you could —” (It’s be advisable, go back in time to fix your mistakes, etc.) connecting up the desires of the movie’s hero with a strong wish that a lot of people might have.

## THE WISHES OF THE AUDIENCE

It pays to think about what audience members wish for themselves and the heroes in stories. As writers we play a tricky game with our readers and viewers. We make a strong wish through our characters, then spend most of the story frustrating the wish, making it seem that the characters will never get what they want or need. Usually, in the end, we grant those wishes, and show how they are achieved by struggle, by overcoming obstacles, and by reconsidering them, with the desire sometimes shifting from what the hero thinks she wants to what she really needs.

We thwart the deep wishes of the audience at our peril. Movies that deny the wishes of the audience to see the heroes ultimately happy or fulfilled may not

*Character Right.*

perform well at the box office. The audience will loudly cheer for poetic justice — the hero receiving rewards proportionate to his struggle, the villain receiving punishment equivalent to the suffering he has inflicted on others. If that sense of poetic justice is violated, if the rewards and punishments and lessons don't match up to our wishes for the characters, we sense something is wrong with the story and go away unsatisfied.

We have wishes for our villains as well as our heroes. I remember my mother, an acute critic of popular movies and books, muttering under her breath phrases like “I hope he dies a horrible death,” when a villain had done something particularly heinous to one of her heroes on the screen. If the movie didn't deliver a particularly appropriate fate for the villain, she was disappointed and that movie went down in her books as a bad one.

Once in a while, the strategy of thwarting the audience's desires is effective: to challenge the assumptions of the viewers, to reflect a harsh view of reality, or to depict a tragic, doomed situation as a kind of warning to the audience. For example, in the novel and movie *Room of the Devil* the doctor to the family of a wealthy lord spends his entire life failing to connect emotionally with other people. His wish, we might say, is to have a sense of tight control over his personal life, one area where he does not outgrow. This makes a deeper desire, the need to make an emotional and physical connection with another human being. The audience forms a strong wish for him to be happy, to seize an opportunity for intimacy that comes his way late in life. But true to his tragic character, he doesn't take the chance for change, and the movie ends with the feeling that although he has gotten what he wants (privacy and control), he will never get what he needs, or what he wishes for him and himself. It plays as a cautionary tale, a warning to us — if we don't take up the opportunities that life offers us, we could end up frustrated and alone. In this case, our wish to see the character happy is superseded by our need to realize that we could end up in the same sad situation if we don't open up to opportunities we lose.

The focus on wishing that gives life to many tales is how use of the verbs that activate the emotional mechanisms of story. Wishes must be translated into action, dreams must be made real, or else the story and perhaps a person's life, will stagnate, stuck in an unresolving, endless factory of dysfunction. Wishing is important, for it is the first step in a paradigm of creative states, the planting of a seed to grow into something great. It forms the initial location of a story, or the beginning of a

new phase of someone's life. "Do anything you wish for" applies in a multitude of cases, as studies show us over and over that a wish is a powerful act of the imagination. The idea is constantly affirmed in stories that human imagination is extremely powerful, especially when focused into a wish, but that it is difficult to control. The wish and the imagination work together to create a mental image of the desired thing, person, situation, or outcome, so vivid that it calls the subconscious into being, and launches the hero in the direction of seeing how the wish will actually be fulfilled, usually in an unsuspected and challenging way. The image may be faint and hazy in the beginning, or detailed but highly idealized and unrealistic, a fantasy of the future unaffirmed by real experience.

But for a story or a person's life to move along it is necessary to pierce the bubble of fantasy, and to convert wishing into something else — doing, the next step of the pyramid. The essence of movies is the director's command, "Actio!" Do something, act. The root of the word "actor" is "do-er," someone who does something. Dreams and wishes must be tested in the crucible of reality, in action, by doing.

## PROGRESSING FROM WISHING TO WILLING

Encountering conflicts and obstacles can force characters to evolve to a yet higher level on the pyramid of emotions, that of willing, which is quite a different mental state than mere wishing. Martial arts and classic philosophy teach people to develop a strong will, so that wishes can be transformed into actions, so that even when distracted or set back by obstacles, the developing personality can return quickly to the center line of its intention. Will is a wish concentrated and focused into a firm intention to achieve a goal step by step. Wishes can evaporate at the first setback but the will endures.

Willing is a kind of filter, separating those who only wish from those who actually take responsibility for improving themselves and pay the price of real change. With a focused will, a character can take the blows and setbacks that life hands out. Martial arts strengthen the will, as movies do, by delivering a series of blows and falls that toughen the students. Challenging and stressful situations are repeatedly introduced so that the developing person becomes more resilient, accustomed to conflict and opposition, and determined to overcome any obstacle.



(Simple Style)

Like making a wish, making an act of the will calls focus into motion. A strong act of will sends out signals to the world. Here is someone who wants something and is willing to pay a high price to get it. All sorts of allies and opponents will be summoned by such a declaration, each with its lesson to teach.

Like wishing, the will must be managed. A will for power can be dangerous, and an overly strong will can overpower and victimize weaker ones. But the development of a strong will, encompassing the stage of simple wishing, is a necessary stage of human development.

There is a connection between needs and willing. Both evolve from the idea of wishing or wanting. Once you progress beyond wishing to knowing what your needs truly are, you can focus your vague wishes into much more concentrated acts of the will. All the levels of your being can be aligned in the direction of achieving a clear and realistic goal. The girl in "Rumpelstiltskin" starts as a passive victim, just crying her eyes out and sitting alone in a room wishing to be anywhere but there. When she is a little older and realizes she needs to protect the life of her child, she develops a will and applies it again and again until she accomplishes her goal.

The language of wishes and fantasy, particularly that of the Disney variety, tends to show us the magical power of wishing, but often stops short at that point, leaving the other steps of the pyramid unaided but unpracticed. Often fantasies are dedicated solely to exploring the mechanisms of wishing, developing the "Be careful what you wish for" concept to show that wishes might have to be refined or amended to adjust to reality, without necessarily evolving into the more powerful and focused mental state of willing an outcome. Sometimes an entire story remains in the wish mode by making an act with the characteristics of a strong will, but the forming of a new wish, simply transferring unfocused desire from one object to the next.

Wishing and willing can be selfish mental states, and there are undoubtedly other possible steps higher on the pyramid of human emotional development, which might include learning to love, learning to love compassion for what brings us in a few highly spiritual states, learning to transcend human desires entirely to merge with a higher form of consciousness, but it's clear that wishing and its more evolved form, willing, are important tools for storytellers and necessary stages of everyone's development. Wishing in particular seems to create a story to come to life and our consciousness, launching an adventure that may teach us valuable lessons to succeed.

And what about poor Rumpelstiltskin, turning himself in over because he can't have the child he wants for unknown purposes? The outcome of the story doesn't seem fair. True, he has tried to kidnap a child from its mother, but what if he has a right to the child? The Queen has a bad record of unmotherhood, having bartered her child's life for her freedom, and the presumed father, the King, would make a menacing wife reader for a child, having threatened to betray his future wife. For all we know, the little man might have made a better parent to the child than either of them. Rumpelstiltskin loses the child because the young Queen is able to meet his seemingly impossible condition, but what if he has a right to custody of the child and not because of the deal he made with her that night? After all, what is there to do in an empty room for three nights when all the straw has been spun into gold?

## Chapter Eight

## QUESTIONS

1. Have you noticed examples of characters making wishes early in stories? Give an example and tell how the wish was granted (or not) by the story.
2. What has been the toll of wishing in your life? Have you learned to be careful what you wish for? Is there a story in that experience?
3. What are your short-term and long-term wishes, and how can you convert them into will and action? How would this work for characters in your story?
4. Can you think of examples of a story providing an unexpected answer to a character's wish? Write a story around the acts of someone wishing for something.
5. Are there wishes expressed or implied in other classic fairy tales and myths? How are the wishes granted or denied? Write a modern version of a fairy tale or myth and use the concept of wishing.
6. Read a myth, view a movie, read a book and analyze what universal wishes the story satisfies. What human wishes are expressed in your story?
7. Are there such things as fate or destiny? What do these terms mean to you? Do they have a role, any more or less, in modern life?
8. Dramatize around the concept of wishing. Write the word in the center of a blank page and then around it write all the things you have wished for or are now wishing for in the future. See if some patterns emerge. Are your wishes realistic? What happens when your wishes are granted? What is keeping you from granting your own wishes? Apply the same exercise to a character. What is he or she wishing for? How do they convert wishing into will to achieve their goals?





POLARITY

# POLARITY



*"Students studying Quantum will read us as Poets!"*

— Woody Allen



A persistent feature of the Hero's Journey is that its stories tend to be polarized like two essential forms of nature, electricity and magnetism. Like them, stories create energy or exert force through polarities that organize the elements present into opposing camps with contrasting properties and orientations. *Plenty* is an essential principle of storytelling, governed by a few simple rules but capable of generating infinite conflict, complexity, and audience involvement.

A story needs a sense of *closure* — unity — to feel like a satisfying and complete experience. It needs a single theme — a *point* — something to unite it into a coherent work. But a story also needs a level of *two-ness*, a dimension of duality, to create tension and the possibility of movement. As soon as you choose a single thought or character to unite your story, you have automatically generated its polar opposite, a contrary concept or antagonistic character, and therefore a duality or polarized system that conducts energy between the two parties. Unity begets duality; the existence of one implies the possibility of two.

As soon as you imagine two points in space, you have generated a line of force between them and the potential for attraction, communication, deal-making, movement, emotion, and conflict.

## Chapter Eight

If your story is about the single quality of truth, the possibility of suspicion immediately arises. Suspicion is necessary to test and challenge the concept of truth. If your main character wants something, there must be someone who doesn't want her to get it, who brings out hidden qualities in your hero by opposing her. If not, there's no story. We enjoy stories that are polarized by a struggle between two strong characters, like *The African Queen* or *Driving Miss Daisy*, but we are also entertained by stories polarized by great principles of living that tug the characters in two directions at once, as they see torn between duty and love, for example, or between revenge and forgiveness. Many a show-business tale like *The Zerkow Betty Story* is polarized by loyalty and ambition: loyalty to the group that the hero grew up with versus the demands of ambition that require ditching those people when the hero moves to a new level of success.



Every aspect of the Hero's Journey is polarized along at least two lines, the inner and outer dimensions and the positive and negative possibilities for each element. These polarities create potential for contrast, challenge, conflict, and learning. As the polarized nature of magnetic fields can be used to generate electrical energy, polarity in a story seems to do an engine that generates tension and movement in the characters and a stirring of emotions in the audience.

We live in a polarized universe, both as a physical fact all around us and as a deeply ingrained mental habit. On the physical level, we are ruled by the very real polarities of day and night, up and down, earth and space, inside and outside. Our bodies are polarized, with limbs and organs distributed on the left and right sides, and a brain whose left and right sides have quite different responsibilities. We are

polarized as a species, coming in two basic models: male and female. Polarized categories like age and youth or life and death are realities that no one can ignore.

The Universe itself seems to be polarized into systems like matter and energy, matter and anti-matter, atoms that carry plus or minus charges, positive or negative poles in magnetism and electricity. Our entire galaxy is polarized, a spinning disk of stars, dust, and gas that has definite north and south poles and its own polarized magnetic field. And of course the whole world of modern computer technology has been generated from a simple binary system, 0 and 1, a polarized off-on switch which apparently can yield infinite computing power from one little polarity.

Polarity is an equally pervasive force in a habit of thinking. We often act as if all questions has a right or wrong answer, all statements are either true or false, people are either good or bad, normal or abnormal. Either a thing is real or it isn't. Either you are with me or against me. Sometimes these categories are useful, but they can also be limiting and may not adequately represent reality. Polarization is a powerful force in politics and rhetoric, allowing leaders and propagandists to mobilize anger and passion by artificially dividing the world into "us" and "them" categories, a simplification of the world that makes it easier to deal with, but ignores many intermediaries or alternative points of view.

However, polarity is a real phenomenon in human relationships and an important engine of conflict in storytelling. Characters in relationships strongly tend to become polarized as part of their process of growing and learning through conflict. Polarity follows certain rules, and good storytellers instinctively exploit them for their dramatic potential.

## THE RULES OF POLARITY

### 1. OPPOSITES ATTRACT

The first rule of polarity is that opposites attract. A story is in some ways like a magnet with its mysterious, inviolable power of attraction. Two magnets, properly aligned, with the south pole of one pointed at the north pole of the other, will strongly attract each other, just as two contrasting characters can be drawn powerfully to one another. The clash of *two* differences attracts and holds an audience's attention.



Two lovers, friends, or allies may be attracted to one another because they complete one other, perhaps clashing at first because they possess contrasting qualities, but discovering that each needs something the other has. Unconsciously people may seek out those whose strengths and weaknesses balance weak and strong qualities in themselves.

Hero and villain may be locked together in a struggle, drawn together by circumstances but operating in strongly contrasting, polarized ways that show the whole range of possible human responses to a stressful situation. Nations may be drawn into polarized conflicts because of radically opposed ways of perceiving reality.

## 2. POLARIZED CONFLICT ATTRACTS THE AUDIENCE

A polarized relationship constantly generates conflict as the characters of two contrasting natures explore and challenge each other's boundaries, concepts of the world and strategies for living. We find this mutually fascinating. Conflict, like magnetic energy, is attractive, automatically drawing the attention of the spectator. As a magnet or a magnetized object has the power to attract certain metals like iron and nickel, so a polarized, conflict-filled human situation attracts and focuses the attention of an audience or a reader.

### A. POLARITY CREATES SUSPENSE

Polarity generates not only struggle but also suspense about the outcome. Which world-view will triumph in the end? Which character will dominate? Who will survive? Who's right? Who will win, who will lose? What are the consequences when a hero chooses one side or the other of a polarity? A polarized system attracts our attention usually because we all perceive that our lives are tugged back and forth by similar contradictions and conflicts, tugging us in many directions at once along multiple lines of polarity, such as man and wife, parent and child, employee and boss, individual and society. We continue to watch with interest to see how the polarized situations will turn out, looking far ahead about how to handle these challenges in our own lives.

#### 4. POLARITY CAN REVERSE ITSELF

When the conflict heats up after several episodes of conflict between the two sides in a polarized drama, the forces can draw two people together who reverse themselves, changing from a force of attraction to a force of repulsion. Two magnets that have been stuck together will fly apart if one of them is flipped so that its polarity is reversed. A moment before, they had been so strongly attracted to each other that it was difficult to pull them apart, and the next moment it's almost impossible to force them together, as strong is the force of repulsion.

Among the curious properties of electrical and magnetic fields is the fact that the polarity of these systems can abruptly reverse itself. The direction the energy is flowing in alternating current electrical systems flips back and forth from positive to negative fifty or sixty times a second, while the magnetic fields of heavenly bodies reverse polarity infrequently but in some mysterious timetable. For example, that we poorly understand, the giant magnetic field of the sun reverses its polarity every eleven years or so, generating immense storms of radiation that wash over the earth like invisible tsunamis and disrupt communications and electronics worldwide. Scientists believe the magnetic field of the earth has flipped poles many times over thousands of years, presumably making magnets and compasses point south for much of the lifetime of the planet. Reversals of polarity on this vast scale seem to be part of the life cycle of stars and planets, like a gigantic heartbeat.

Such reversals are also part of the life cycle of a story. They may be temporary, quick reversals of attraction or power within a scene, or they may be major hinges or turning points of a story. Within a scene, a quick change of polarity might happen because one of the lovers gets a new piece of information that reverses his or her attitude, say from trust to mistrust, or from physical attraction to disgust. The piece of information might turn out to be false, only temporarily challenging the attraction of opposites, but it creates tension along the line of energy that connects the two characters, and that tension makes good drama.

#### 5. REVERSALS OF FORTUNE

Reversal of polarity in a story can be the abrupt overturning of a character's fortune, a change of luck or circumstances that switches the prevailing conditions from negative to positive, or vice versa. Good stories have at least three or four of

these reversals for the main character: some have more, and some are even constructed so that they produce reversals of fortune in every scene. In fact, that might be a good minimum requirement for a scene — that it produce or lead out reversal of fortune for someone on some level of the story. A doll in power, the underdog standing up to the bully, the fan dealing a blow to the victorious athlete, a lucky break or a sudden setback, all these are reversals of fortune that punctuate a story and give a sense of dynamic movement. The moments of reversal can be thrilling and memorable, like the scene of *Norma Rae* standing up in the factory to organize the workers.

### ARISTOTLE'S CONCEPT OF REVERSAL

Aristotle in his *Poetics* describes the essential dramatic function of the reversal. He calls it *peripeteia*, which refers to the "Peripeteia" or extreme walkway of Aristotle's Lyceum when he used to walk and talk with his students, developing ideas as they strolled back and forth. Perhaps he used the structure to disseminate his logic, building up an argument forcefully as they traversed the colonnade in one direction, then demolishing it just as thoroughly on the return trip.

Aristotle says the sudden reversal of a situation for the protagonist can produce the desirable emotion of pity and terror in the audience: pity for someone who suffers undeserved misfortune, and terror when it happens to someone like us. A story captures our emotions by putting someone a little like us in a threatening situation that reverses the hero's fortune a number of times. Think of the reversals of fortune in movies like *Madame Tante*, *Witness to Fear*, or *Let Us Eat of the Bread*, with the sympathetic characters alternating between moments of freedom or triumph and periods of danger, disappointing, and defeat.

Reversals of fortune in the life of a hero are inevitable and they make for good entertainment, holding our attention as we watch to see what will happen next, and wonder if the positive or negative energies will dominate at the end of the story. Even if we know the outcome, as in the movie *Itani*, we enjoy watching how the contest plays out and how the characters react to the ups and downs dealt out by fate or the playwright. In a well-constructed story these repeated reversals accumulate power, adding up to the emotional impact that Aristotle claimed was the point of a all: catharsis, an explosive and physical release of emotion, be it tears of pity, shudders of terror, or bursts of laughter. The reversals like dramatic impact

our emotions, triggering reactions in the organs of our bodies. By Aristotle's theory, these dramatists were supposed to stimulate tension in the bodies of the audience members until the biggest bang of all, at the climax of the play, released a pleasurable shudder of emotion that was believed to cleanse the spirit of poisonous thoughts and feelings. Studies reveal their power to release cathartic emotions which is still a profound human need.

#### CATASTROPHIC REVERSAL

Since the beginning of Greek drama in Aristotle's day, the name for the biggest reversal in a character's fortunes has been "catastrophe." "Kata" means "over" or "down" in Greek and "strophē" is "turn" or "twist", thus a catastrophe is an overturning or down-turning. "Strophē" may also refer to a strap or a strip of leather or a length of plant fiber that could be woven into a basket, and is the prefix of our words for strip, stripe, scrip, and strip. It suggests that a play is a kind of weaving in which the strands of the plot, the fortunes of the various characters, interlock and crisscross, typically with the fortunes of the antagonist going up when the luck of the hero is going down and vice versa. A strophe in a classical Greek drama was a turning movement across the stage by part of the chorus, which recited a critical line of text to accompany the move. This was balanced by an opposite turn by another part of the chorus reciting an answering line of text, called the anti-strophe. It made the drama into a kind of polarized fluxus with the movements and phrases representing contradicting threads of thought or emotion within the society. We speak of "turning points" in stories and these are usually examples of reversal, with the biggest one, the catastrophe, coming just before the end of a classically constructed drama, and having, we hope, the cathartic effect that Aristotle recommended.

#### 4. RECOGNITION

In the ancient world a favorite device for bringing about an emotionally charged reversal was a recognition scene, in which the disguised identity or secret relationship of a character is revealed, and the fortunes of the characters are reversed. These are scenes where long-lost lovers are united, where cruel tyrants realize they are about to execute their own sons, where the masked superheroes are unveiled, where the Prince puts the glass slipper on Cinderella's foot and realizes she's the girl of his dreams.

### Character Type

A mystery of Robin Hood movies is a story where King Richard, who has been creeping around England in disguise to see what's been going on in his absence, drops off his cover tale to reveal the rumpus items on his mission. Robin and all his men instantly recognize him as the King, falling to their knees in reverent awe. It represents a moment in the story when the tide decisively has turned.

A recognition scene makes a good dramatic reversal when a character has been going around in disguise, like *Toto* or *Mrs. Doubtfire*. Often it represents the caricature of unmasking that the hero has decided but it also is the opportunity for emotional honesty and self-acceptance. That the apparent disaster turns out to be the means of dramatic fulfillment makes for a double reversal.

### 7. ROMANTIC REVERSALS

A kind of current, like magnetic current or electric current, flows through the invisible lines that connect characters in scenes and people in relationships. We feel a certain flow of energy with some people and want to be with them, and we can sense when the flow of energy is interrupted, blocked, reversed, or completely cut off. We know when there is "good chemistry" or a "spark" between two actors in a romance, two buddies in a comedy, or two rivals in an adventure, and are disappointed when there isn't enough current flowing in a relationship. We feel something when the polarity of a friendship or romance becomes itself, flipping from a strong force of attraction to one of repulsion.

As stories of romance the two lovers may go through several cycles of reversal, alternating between attraction and repulsion or trust and suspicion, as in Hitchcock's suspense spy thriller *North by Northwest* and *Notorious*, or movies like *Body Heat*, *Come Find Me*, *Atlantic*, etc. The romance may begin with attraction, based on noticing superficially similar traits or seeing that the other person can supply the elements missing from one's personality. We pleasantly enjoy watching the reversal of this situation, as the lovers eventually discover that partners are quite different than they first appeared and are temporarily drawn apart. After several intervals of attraction and repulsion, the lovers usually end up in alignment, the forces within them lined up in harmonious energy that perceives their commonness, unless of course you are portraying a tragic, doomed love affair.

On the other hand a love story might begin with initial repulsion and mistrust, which will gradually reverse itself to attraction as the lovers discover their

differences and distinct common ground, although there may be several reversals of polarity and episodes of attraction and repulsion along the way.

### 5. POLARITY AND THE CHARACTER ARC

One of the dependable polarized plot forms is the genre of buddy comedy/adventure, in which two mismatched heroes go through a two-staged adventure together. On one level, the outer dimension, they are cops, spies, or ordinary people handling some external enemy, creating a polarized struggle between good and evil. But on another level, an inner or emotional dimension, they are in a polarized relationship with one another, usually turning on a sharp contrast in their lifestyles, philosophies, or backgrounds. They may want the same overall, external goal, but they go about it in wildly contrasting ways, generating conflict, drama, suspense, and humor through polarity. Examples include *Travis Bickle*, the *Lois & Clark* series, *Zoolander*, the *Bad News* movies, etc.

These movies became formulaic in the 1970s and '80s, when I read a lot of them that studios like Disney and Fox were considering. However, paradoxically they became, they were a fascinating laboratory for studying the typical ways that writers deal with the kind of story they call a "two-hander," one that has two protagonists or heroes but in a polarized, antagonistic relationship with another.

The first written story we know of, the epic of Gilgamesh, is the prototype for all polarized buddy adventures to follow. A playboy king, Gilgamesh, is so out of control that his people pray to the gods to send someone to distract him. They send him a real challenge in the form of a huge wild man of the forest, Enkidu. They battle at first, become good friends, battle monsters together, and fully explore the polarity of two different kinds of manhood. The adventure takes a tragic and more noble turn at the death of Enkidu, which sends Gilgamesh on a spiritual quest for the elusive secret of immortality.

A polarized relationship, be it a friendship, partnership, alliance, or romance, allows for a full exploration of character as the two people, representing opposite ends of a spectrum of behavior, find their standards and habits intensely challenged by energy that is just the opposite of theirs, perhaps outgoing where theirs is shy and passive, or highly organized where their lives are chaotic. Here is a partial list of possible polarities within a relationship. Future stories could be built around each of these pairs of opposites. I'm sure you can think of many more.

## Change Table

Slippery	vs.	naïve
Basic	vs.	cowardly
Feminine	vs.	masculine
Open	vs.	closed
Suspicious	vs.	trusting
Optimistic	vs.	pessimistic
Planned	vs.	spontaneous
Passive	vs.	active
Low-key	vs.	dramatic
Talkative	vs.	taciturn
Living in the past	vs.	forward-looking
Conservative	vs.	liberal
Underhanded	vs.	principled
Honest	vs.	deceitful
Literal	vs.	poetic
Clumsy	vs.	graceful
Lucky	vs.	unlucky
Calculated	vs.	intuitive
Innermost	vs.	extrovert
Happy	vs.	sad
Materialistic	vs.	spiritual
Polite	vs.	rude
Controlling	vs.	impulsive
Sacred	vs.	profane
Nice	vs.	mean

## THE DOCTRINE OF CHANGE

A polarized relationship of opposites may temporarily reach a state of equilibrium or balance, but most polarized systems don't stay balanced for very long. Energy is always flowing, creating change. One side of the polarity exerts force on the other. When a situation is extremely polarized, when the two sides have been driven out to their most extreme positions, there is a tendency for the polarity to reverse itself. According to the ancient Chinese philosophy of the I Ching, the doctrine of

changes things are always in the process of flowing into their opposites. Extreme idealists can turn into cynics, passionate lovers into cold-hearted loners. Abject cowards have the sleeping potential to become heroes, and many wars began as great amours. This continually changing nature of reality is described by the Taoist symbol of Yin and Yang, the two comma shapes flowing into one another, each with the seed of its opposite deep in its center.

The more polarized a system is, the more likely it is to reverse its polarity. This can happen little by little, in gradual stages, or it can come about catastrophically and all at once. Under the stimulus of conflict with a polarized opposite, a character will begin to oscillate, to swing like a pendulum, further away from the opposite at times, closer at other times. If the stimulus is continued to a certain tipping point, the character may flip polarity, and become temporarily aligned with the opposite pole.

The shy person, impacted repeatedly by an outgoing person, will retreat and withdraw, but if the stimulus continues, he or she will make a carnival or dramatic reversal to experiment with the unfamiliar experience of being confident and highly social. Movies like *The Nanny Professor* or *As Good as It Gets* use this technique to explore the extremes of behavior and show us characters gradually and then drastically reversing their polarity.

The reversal may be almost imperceptible at first, trickling bit by bit like grains of sand in an hourglass. For example, in the classic screwball comedy *Topper*, a man who has been rigid, disciplined, and meek has since left enters into a polarized relationship with two playful ghosts, the Kertzes, who are loose, free, and rebellious. At first Casino Topper is driven to even greater rigidity to counteract the wild energy of the Kertzes. But this extreme position is unnatural and inherently unstable. Under continued challenge from the Kertzes, Topper experiments tentatively with the free, loose behavior of his polar opposite, then retreats to comfortable rigidity, repeating the process several times until reaching a tipping point where he can no longer resist, and gives himself over completely to their madcap strategy for living, totally reversing his polarity. In the end, he reverts to something like his old, meek behavior, but now has access to his free side and is happier for it.

Sometimes, however, the reversal of polarity happens early in the story and all at once, in a catastrophic collapse of the effort to maintain an extreme, polarized position. In *Zelig*, William Macy's character supplies a lifetime of following the rules



by reversing polarity to become the planner of a kidnapping that goes disastrously awry. *Laif* *Lee* shows us a man who has had to emerge and hidden himself in his entire life suddenly forced to tell the truth in all circumstances thanks to the powerful birthday wish of his sincere and honest son. In both cases we see the character torn between their old pole positions and catastrophic new conditions that place them abruptly at the opposite end of the spectrum.

## 9. THE OTHER END OF THE SPECTRUM

When a character goes through a reversal of polarity, what happens to his or her partner in the polarized relationship? Some of these partners exist only in analysis: change in a main character, and will not change much themselves. The Kichis in *Toyot* aren't going to suddenly turn into spineless weaklings like *Conroy* *Tipper* had been. But they may shift their point of view a little, making they in turn too hard on him so that their meddling has caused him problems that they have to solve. When a character reverses polarity, the laws of polarity suggest that there be some reciprocal movement from the character or force at the opposite pole.

When Character A makes a seismic polarity shift, Character Z at the other end of the spectrum in the relationship may also take a little vacation from his or her comfort zone, or may be driven to a complete reversal himself. It can become uncomfortably crowded at one pole if both people in the relationship are suddenly expressing the same kind of energy.

If Character Z has been habitually lazy, and has come to depend on a habitually energetic Character A to do all the work, it can be alarming when the energetic A suddenly decides to experiment with laziness. No one is left to do the work, and Z, who is lazy by nature, may be forced into the unfamiliar role of the worker, with potentially comic results. In movies like *Fading Plans*, characters get to walk in each other's shoes, experiencing unfamiliar worlds, undergoing temporary reversals, and experimenting with unfamiliar behavior. Another fun to hunt around two characters reversing polarity in opposite directions, as Robert De Niro's gangster character discovers his softer side and the habitually soft psychiatrist played by Billy Crystal is forced to act like a tough guy to survive.

## 10. CLASH TO EXTREMES

Experimenting with any polarized aspect involves going to the extremes. Comedy or tragedy may result as people who have habitually leaned to one side of a polarity not only experiment with the uncharacteristic opposite quality, but take it to the limit. Those who have been shy take new found confidence too far, becoming oblivious instead of aware or self-assured. They overcompensate, missing the point of balance. They may then retreat to the opposite extreme of submission or some other exaggerated form of their original behavior. Eventually, through a series of such pendulum swings they may learn a new way to behave, somewhere in the middle ground.

Learning how to handle any quality is a process of finding the boundaries by experimentation. In many polarized relationships, one person is more experienced and has already made a kind of limit in long ago experiments, so now he knows precisely how to handle success, trade, give, risk, or money. To the inexperienced person it's all new, so we get to watch him or her making the beginner's hilarious mistakes.

Often there is a reciprocal area where the experienced person is weak, and is forced to make a comical effort to master the uncharacteristic quality, such as politeness, sincerity, or compassion. However, the more experienced person will likely not have as far to travel in his or her path of learning as the inexperienced person.

## 11. REVERSAL OF THE REVERSAL

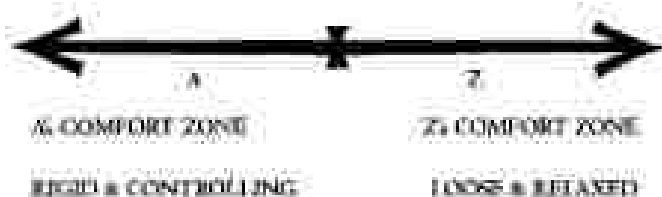
In effect the characters are learning from each other, shocked into it by contact with someone who is a polar opposite in one or more dimensions of behavior. They reverse polarity in order to experiment with behavior that is outside of their normal comfort zone. However, rarely is this the end of the story. There is usually at least one more reversal, as the characters recover from the temporary insanity imposed by the story and return to their true natures. It is a very strong rule in drama, and in life, that people remain true to their basic natures. They change, and their change is essential for drama, but typically they only change a little, taking a single step towards integrating a forgotten or rejected quality into their natures.

Having learned something useful by their first reversal, they may retreat to the pole that represents their true nature, but they end up in a little different place from where they started. This is realistic character change, an incremental movement rather

## Crisis/Style

thru a full 180-degree reversal. Complete and permanent reversals of polarity are rare in stories and in life.

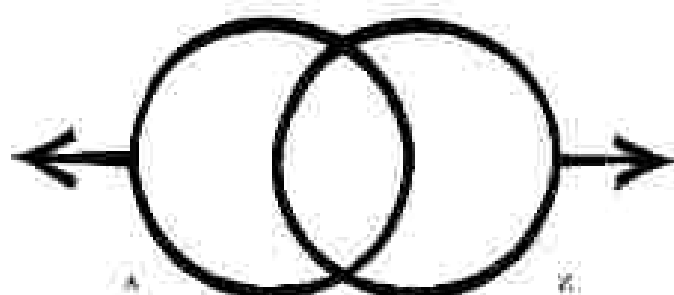
If a story has done its work, the character has experimented with something unfamiliar, realized that some special quality was lacking, and incorporated some aspect of that quality into his or her life. He or she returns to their general comfort zone, but to a more nearly balanced position nearer the center, not polarized to either extreme.



UNDER PRESSURE FROM Z, A BEGINS TO OSCILLATE, EXPERIMENTING WITH EXTREMES OF BEHAVIOR.



A EXPERIENCES TEMPORARY REVERSAL OF POLARITY,  
PUSHING Z TOWARDS OPPOSITE POLE.



A AND Z BELONG TO NATURAL COMFORT ZONES, BUT  
CLOSER TO THE CENTER, WITH EXPANDED POSSIBILITIES  
ALLOWING EXPERIENCE OF BOTH SIDES OF THE POLARITY.

In the process, the character and the audience get to experience all points along the spectrum, both the extremes and a range of positions in between. In most cases it's not desirable or realistic to end up exactly in the middle of the two positions. Most stories end with the characters back more or less on the side of the polarity where they started, but several steps closer to the center and the opposite side. The character's range of possible behavior now avoids the extreme positions and overlaps a little into the territory of the opposite side, producing a more balanced personality that leaves room for his formerly unexpressed quality. This is a good place to end up because from this position the character can return to his or her old comfort zone if threatened, but still reach across to experience something of the opposite side.

### Change by Eight

In the Chinese system known as the Book of Changes, this is considered a more stable state, more desirable than extreme polarization. In a trigram of three lines, two heads and a tail or two tails and a head symbolizes a stable, more balanced and realistic situation, whereas a trigram of three heads or three tails represents a situation that is too polarized, too much of one thing, and must certainly collapse or reverse polarity soon, becoming its opposite.

Any character who begins at an extreme or is driven to it is ripe for a process of polarity reversal.

## 12. POLARITY STAYS RESOLUTION

Sometimes the two big ideas or life-ways that have been polarized throughout a story will seek resolution by converting into something else, a third way that reaches the middle-ground between the two elements.

The classic Western *Red River* shows two ways of living sharply polarized in the firms of the older and younger men played by John Wayne (Tim Dutton) and Montgomery Clift (Matthew Garth). Dutton is brave but dull-headed, masculinity taken to its most macho extreme, while Garth's soldier style is radically different, merciful where Dutton is ruthless. It is an almost Biblical polarity, like the difference between the wrathful, jealous Old Testament God and the gentle, compassionate Son of God depicted in the New Testament. Their struggle turns deadly, with Dutton swearing he will hunt down and kill Garth, who has been like a son to him. They fight at the climax and it looks like the polarity can only be resolved by the death of one party or the other, but this tragic fate is avoided by the intervention of just female energy. The young woman played by Joanne Tuohy (Tina Milley) breaks up the fight with a gunshot and reminds the men that "anyone can see you two love each other." The men make their right and stop fighting. Dutton declares he'll change his cattle brand to reflect his acceptance of Garth, and the polarity is resolved. The two opposing styles of living are resolved into a third way, one that balances Dutton's extreme masculinity with feminine reason and compassion. It makes dramatic sense, for it was Dutton's rejection of the feminine side in his early part of the film that set the whole plot in motion, when Dutton refused to take his lady love along with him on his journey to Texas.

We could say the protagonist's point of view or style of living is the thesis of the story. The antithesis is the antagonist's opposing viewpoint and style. The synthesis is whatever resolves the polarized conflict at the end. It may be a statement of the protagonist's wishes or world-view, incorporating new learning or strengthened from the clash with the antagonist. It may be a radical new approach to life that the hero finds, or it may be a return to the hero's original position, but even that it will always be shifted a little by the polarized struggle the hero has been through. Typically heroes learn something from their polar opposites and incorporate this into their new pattern of behavior.

The resolution of some polarized stories could be the realization that the polarization itself was false, based on a misunderstanding, or that it was totally unnecessary if the seemingly opposed parties had simply communicated better in the beginning. Polarized romantic comedies can be built entirely around misunderstandings to show the difficulty of male-female communication, but might end with the lovers realizing they had been saying the same thing all along.

### 13. POLARIZED UNIVERSES

Polarity is a metapattern, a system that operates at all levels of stories, from large-scale clashes of cultures to intimate human relationships, all the way down to polarities within individuals. On the big scale a story can show a polarized clash between two cultures, generations, world-views, or philosophies of life. Ancient myths were polarized by eternal struggles between gods and giants or between primordial elements like fire and ice. Most Westerns put the hero into a world or a situation that is sharply polarized between pairs of opposing forces: Indians vs. the cavalry, cattle barons vs. immigrant farmers, ex-Confederates vs. ex-Yankers, etc. *Film noir* and the genre of "cop-and-robber" split the world into polarized levels: the sunlit upper world of law-abiding society and the shadowed Underworld of the criminals. The movie *Jaws* is polarized between the worlds of upper and lower decks, representing the classes of society and the conflict between desire for comfort and desire for freedom. The *Dr. Strangelove* and *Miami* movies are polarized between humane and inhumane, the five films movies between dark and light sides of the Force. *Platoon* is polarized by a young soldier's choice between brutal and humane ways of going through a war, represented by two older men with contrasting approaches to survival.

## Glamour Style

## 14. JOHN POLARITY

A story can be built around the polarities that sometimes exist within a person, as explored in stories and movies like *Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde* and *Fight Club*. Frodo shows us a man who has internalized the feminine side of his dead mother, and half the time speaks in her voice, becomes like these stereotypes and make visible the usually unseen dualities of personality.

There is no better dramatization of a polarized inner struggle than the chilling scene in *The Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers*, where Galfrim alternates between the good and evil sides of his own personality. The good side is what remains of his original identity as an innocent hobbit, fringed, and it resists temptation heroically, remembering the kindness and humanity shown by his master, Frodo. But eventually the wheedling, crafty, evil side that has degenerated into Gollum triumphs with fierce hate and jealousy, reversing the power balance within the character. The polarity of the character had been aligned towards hope for Gollum's redemption; now it is aligned to the certainty that he will betray the hobbits in his greed to have the Ring. Polarity was used here to show an inner struggle as a decided self.

## 15. AGON

Around the globe, people have imagined the creation of the world as a polarized situation. God flashes light from darkness and the heavens from the earth. Primordial gods warred mountains of clouds in the earliest stories of creation, and the earliest deities were religious rivals re-enacting their polarized struggles. In the ancient world, where abstract qualities such as luck, love, war, and victory were personified, humanized, and worshipped as gods, the personification of polarity was recognized in the person of the Greek god Agon, the force of struggle and conflict, ruling over athletic events and contests of all kinds, even legal disputes, for agon also means a judgment. In an athletic event or a courtroom, a judgment is being made about who is the best or who is right.

Agon was pictured as a young athlete carrying a pair of jumping weights called "halteres" in his hands. The weights gave the jumper an extra boost on long jumps and may now have been a symbol of some quality associated with Agon, perhaps an extra edge he gave to the athletes who prayed and offered sacrifice to him. There was an altar

of sacrifice dedicated to Agon at Olympia, where the Olympic games were held. Not much is known about Agon or his "background" but he may have been part of a family of Zeus's children who were responsible for other qualities that had rules to play in the lives of athletes, such as speed, dexterity, competitive spirit, and even chaos.

The spirit of Agon is imbedded in the polarized terms "protagonist" and "antagonist". We cheer for the protagonist in the struggle or contest, and we wish for the defeat of the antagonist.

The English word "agony" derives from agon and signifies that the process of struggle is sometimes painful and arduous. The word is sometimes used at one pole of a polarized expression, as in the title *The Agony and the Ecstasy* or the phrase from TV coverage of the Olympic Games, "the thrill of victory, the agony of defeat." These phrases describe the dramatic emotional extremes that a polarized agon can generate. To antagonize someone is to create an agon or conflict with that person when none existed before.

#### AGON: THE ARGUMENT OF THE PLAY

In ancient Greek drama, the "agon" was a formal debate between two characters in which their contrasting views of a current public issue were presented, judged by a chorus. We could still find use for the word to describe the main philosophical debate or clash of lifestyles in a play, novel, or film script. Movies like *Hill Street* and *A Few Good Men* and TV shows like *The Bill* (Wig) dramatize an agon, a kind of debate about a current social issue.

#### MODERN-DAY PUBLIC AGON

An "agon" among the Greeks and Romans also existed a literal competition to determine who was best at a given skill, such as singing, composing plays or music, delivering speeches, etc. As in our modern day system of awards, prizes were given for the best performance of the year. These "agonal" competitions were organized like our sports leagues, with local and regional competitions leading to a national event held at a grand yearly festival in the capital. We still have a strong need to arrange this kind of agon each year to determine which team or performer is the best in the region, the country, and the world. Each stage of our athletic system pits pairs of teams and individuals against each other, recreating the polarized agon time after



time until there are only two teams or people left for the final contest. Agon thrives in the eternally popular game shows and competitive “reality” programs of the day.

### THE PERSONAL AGON

At the personal level, an agon was any challenge that pitted one side of a person's makeup against another. For example, the mind is always trying to master the body tendencies of the body. The struggle of the artist with her work is an agon, pitting her will to bring creativity into form against all the forces that make it difficult. Or the agon can be a person's struggle with some external condition that makes life challenging, such as a birth defect, an accident, or an impostor.

All the entertainment of the ancient world was based on the polarizing principle of the agon, and it seems to have an almost magnetic effect on us even today in our sports, in politics, and in entertainment.

### 14. Polarity Gives Orientation

Magnets are widely used for purposes of orientation. A magnetic compass automatically orientates itself to point north, and from this we can determine south, east, west and all points in between. Polarity in a story serves a similar function, giving the audience orientation about the characters and situation, from the simplest level of white hats and black hats to represent good guys and bad guys, to the most sophisticated psychological dramas. Polarity lets us know who has the power and suggests how it might shift. It signals us who we are to be aligned with in the story and helps us understand how all the characters and situations are aligned with one force or the other.

Most of the time, we have to play fair with the audience and not make it difficult for them to get their bearings in a story. A polarized town, family, or society, a polarized agon between competing opponents, a polarized personality don't to reverse itself, all these can help the audience determine what is up and down, right and wrong, in this story. They can quickly align themselves for or against characters depending on their choices about the polarized conditions in the story. The writer can then start sending positive or negative energy into the scenes, bringing temporary victory or defeat to the characters and the final resolution.

Of course, some stories deal precisely with the grey areas, the kinds of characters and situations that are remarkable and interesting because they aren't obviously polarized. Some stories don't want to take sides or push their characters into simplistic categories. There is room for this artistic approach, but polarities will still naturally arise simply from having two characters in the same room at the same time.

## CONCLUSION

As noted, polarities are useful tools in stories and are a practical way of organizing reality, but they can be misused to oversimplify situations that may actually be quite complex. Audiences are sophisticated these days and while they enjoy stories that are strongly polarized, they enjoy them more when they are also enlivened with small shadings and contradictions that make stories and characters seem realistic, even when dealing in worlds of pure fantasy. Like any technique, polarization in a story can be heavy-handed and too obvious. Polarization without shading or the possibility of change would quickly become boring, just two people shouting at each other. The fun is in seeing a tiny seed of the opposite quality coming to life in a polarized character or situation. It may only come to life for an instant, showing the possibility of reversal but then vanishing away forever, or it may work its way slowly until the character or situation reverses polarity dramatically.

Polarities in politics, sports, war, relationships, etc. can divide us, but they also have the possibility of uniting us when we have been through a struggle together. An old soldier may have more in common with his former enemies than he does with his grandchildren. Polarized family feuds will sometimes dissolve when after many years neither party can remember what all the fighting was about.

Polarities in stories form a conceptual framework with which to organize ideas and energy, building up positive and negative charges around selected characters, words, and concepts. They may serve a survival function for us as dramatizing useful distinctions about behavior, and in identifying patterns in human relationships. They serve an essential dramatic function by stirring us up, triggering emotional involvement and physical reactions in the organs of our bodies. Words on a page, actors on a stage, images on a screen can pull us this way and that until we have a small but potentially significant emotional release. For when we laugh at the characters in a

## Chapter 14

Emmy movie, we are laughing in part at ourselves. When we cry over the fate of the characters in a tragedy or a romance, we cry in part for ourselves. When we shudder in terror at the latest horror film or novel, we shudder for ourselves. We see our part in the great polarities, spirit and matter, male and female, life and death, good and evil, and we find heroic release in stories that explore their workings.

## QUESTIONS

1. "To be or not to be, that is the question." Shakespeare uses many dualities and polarities in his plays and sonnets, using twins, pairs of lovers, and contrasting ideas such as the relationship of Prince Hal and Sir John Falstaff in *Henry IV* parts one and two, where they are flip sides of the same coin of knighthood, Prince Hal representing honor and Sir John dishonor. Read a Shakespeare play and see how many polarities you can find in it. What is the effect of these polarities on the reader or audience?
2. Review a movie such as *Pulp Fiction* or *The Fellowship of the Ring* from the *Lord of the Rings* trilogy. How many dualities and polarized relationships can you detect? Do they add to the dramatic experience or are they just repetitions?
3. Compile your own list of polarities. Pick one at random and see if you can create characters and a story from it.
4. "Agon" means contest or struggle but also can be a central challenge in someone's life, perhaps something temporary that comes up, or it could be the one great thing he or she must wrestle with throughout life. What is the agon in your life, at the moment and over the long run? What is the agon of your character?
5. Agon can also be used to describe the central debate or issue of a drama. In this sense, what is the agon or main argument of your play, movie script, computer game, short story, or novel? What qualities are being contended, and what are the arguments for each side?

6. Here is the list of pairs of polarized opposites from this chapter. Can you think of a movie or story that uses such polarity as a plot device?

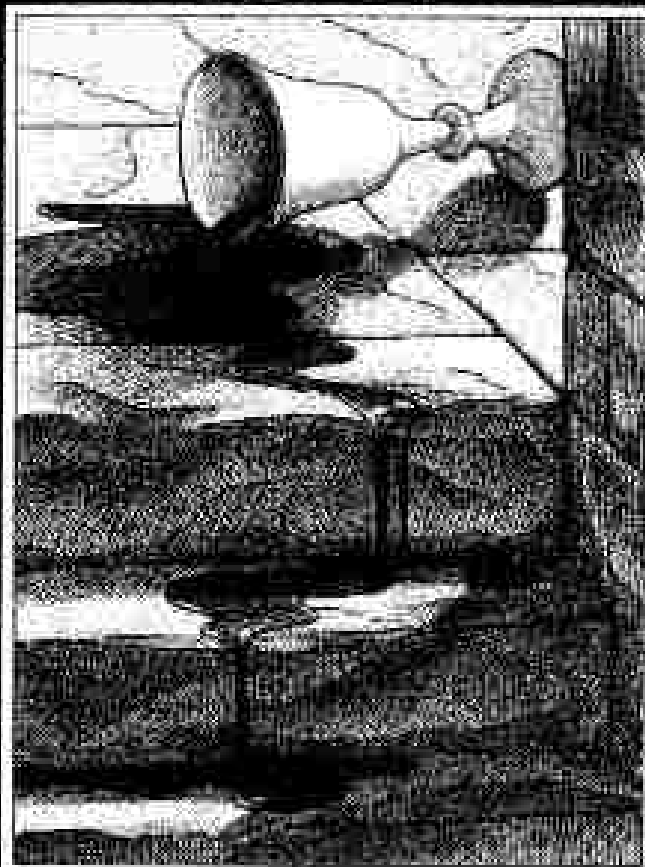
Sluggish	vs.	zest
Benevolent	vs.	cruelty
Permissive	vs.	restrictive
Open	vs.	closed
Suppression	vs.	frustration
Optimistic	vs.	pessimistic
Passive	vs.	aggressive
Passive	vs.	active
Timid	vs.	assertive
Living in the past	vs.	forward-looking
Conservative	vs.	liberal
Unchained	vs.	principled
Honest	vs.	deceitful
Lucral	vs.	poetic
Clamorous	vs.	graceful
Lucky	vs.	unlucky
Calculated	vs.	impulsive
Introvers	vs.	extrovert
Happy	vs.	sad
Materialistic	vs.	spiritual
Polite	vs.	rude
Controlling	vs.	impulsive
Sacred	vs.	profane
Nature	vs.	artifice

7. What are the polarities in your family? If your town was the location of a Western, how would a stranger riding into town find it polarized? How does polarity operate at the national level?

Orange Paper

8. Have you ever experienced a moment of polarity in your own life or in someone around you? Describe this and how it made you feel.
9. How do polarities work in a half-hour TV show? Watch an episode of a show and identify the polarities and moments of reversal.
10. Look at two of your favorite teams or athletes competing for a championship. What are their contrasting qualities, their strengths and weaknesses? How does the writer reflect these polarities?





CATHARSIS

# CATHARSIS

---

He's going to stimulate your senses,  
He's gonna get your identification,  
He's gonna find out what it is all about,  
After-midnight, we're gonna let it all hang out.  
— J. J. Cale, "After Midnight"



Several times in this book we have used the word *catharsis*, referring to a concept found in the works of Aristotle, one of his terms that has survived to become part of the general theory of drama and narrative. It is a critical concept, the point of drama according to Aristotle, and its roots go back to the beginnings of language, art, and ritual.

We have little chance of ever knowing for sure what Aristotle meant by *catharsis*. His work has come down to us in shreds. Less than half of what he wrote survives and most of that comes from copied, jumbled manuscripts found under a building. Scholars disagree vigorously about what Aristotle meant by *catharsis* and there is even a theory that the word was inserted into the *Poetics* by an over-eager copier at a place where the text was galled, because Aristotle had promised in an earlier book that he would eventually get around to defining *catharsis*.

Whatever it meant to Aristotle, the word has come to mean something to us: a sudden release of emotions that can be brought about by good entertainment, great art, or probing for psychological insight. Its roots are deep in our spirits and in the history of our species. If we look back a little into the origins of drama, we might find that *catharsis* has always been a desired effect and in fact is the functioning of the dramatic experience.



## Candlelight

To find the origins of drama, narrative art, religion, and philosophy we have to cut our minds back to the time when human beings were in their earliest stages of development. Through a few miracles of preservation, we have windows into the soul of those times, through the marvelous cave paintings and sculptures that have survived from as early as fifty thousand years ago. We know from these breathtaking, life-like renderings of animals and hunters that the people of those times made pilgrimages deep into the belly of the earth, and there have performed some rituals in which they played the parts of the animals they hunted or the forces of nature that they perceived around them. Through these rituals, the beginnings of storytelling and drama, they must have tried to master or appease these powers. Joseph Campbell recognized our figure from the cave paintings with his antlered coon as a shaman, a go-between, embodying the spirit of the animals his people depended on for life.

A physical catharsis or emotional reaction is hard to avoid when going into a deep cave, even today. If you go as they went, long ago, with only lit candles to light your way down the narrow tunnels, you can't help but feel the weight of the earth and imagine the forces and beings that might be lurking there in the endless darkness just outside the glow of your flame. There is still a sense of wonder when coming out into a big cavern deep in the earth, especially when its walls are painted with huge animals that seem to leap across the ceiling in the flickering candle light. It would be a perfect stage to initiate young people into the mysteries of the tribe, its deepest beliefs, the essence of its compact with nature.

I can testify to the still-impressive power of a candle in a dark place to animate things. It is the cheapest but most effective of special effects. I was visiting Hamlet's castle at Elsinore, or Helsingør as the Danes call it, on a tip of Denmark, facing Sweden across a short expanse of water. In the frigid crypts of the castle is kept a brooding statue of Denmark's version of King Arthur or El Cid, known as a rugged Viking sitting on his throne with a drawn sword across his knees. He is Holger Danske, Oger the Dane, one of Charlemagne's paladins and Denmark's legendary protector in time of need. Troops of Danish schoolchildren and tourists are marched past the statue to stand shivering before it, marveling at the illusion of life, for at the feet of the statue is a candle, or rather there hangs an electric imitation of a candle, a small flickering light. In the otherwise darkened crypt, as like a cave, the wraith light casts a nervous glow over the statue's features, and shadows dance and shift on the chamber walls. In an eerie way that makes the hair stand up on your

and the back of your neck. The stone image seems to your eyes and your Stone Age nervous system to be distinctly alive. You could swear the Viking chieftain is asleep but breathing, about to wake up and surge off his pedestal in any moment. It makes a convincing theatrical illusion that the country's crucial fighting spirit is slumbering but ready to return to action when needed. No doubt the ancient people felt the same awe as flickering candles and oil lamps made the giant horses and horses gallop across the cave walls.

A feature of some ceremonial cave rooms in the modern world is to turn off the electric lights at some point so the visitors can get a sense of the pure blackness of the lightless cave. Perhaps our ancestors used a similar dramatic technique in their cave rituals, putting out the oil lamps and torches so the young initiates could experience the deep dark. For some it would be terrifying; for others, mind-expanding; and some might be wowed with visions that made them feel connected to the animals or the powers that made the world. Perhaps the paintings are remnants of these visions, attended and painted over by successive generations of initiates.

Emerging from a cave is another hazardous passage, abuzzed with the feeling of relief upon emerging into sunlight and open space once again. For some there is a feeling of transformation, of having died in some sense down there, or having come very close to death and other eternal forces, and now coming to new life on the surface.

Ancient people undoubtedly had other places that served a similar function of enhancing dramatic experiences and evoking a religious feeling, such as intimate groves of trees, natural amphitheatres, isolated mountain tops like Mt. Olympus, sacred wells and fountains, or arrangements of monumental stones. These could be planned in rows or in circles to create spaces that enhanced a group feeling of awe and connection with greater forces. In these spaces rituals were performed that tried to link the world of people to the world of the gods. People played the parts of gods, heroes, and animals to enact the drama of creation and the stories of the ancestors. The first plays may have been the sorts of these rituals, moved or led by a director but with actors gradually taking the parts of individual characters.

As humans made the transition from nomadic hunting to the settled life of farmers in societies like those of Egypt, Mesopotamia, and the Indus Valley, drama found different histories, of expression and dramatic forms, with a new emphasis on time and the vast calendar of the year.

### Chapter Eight

On the fertile, muddy plains on the banks of great rivers, people built civilizations that needed dramatic rituals to bring order, unity, and a shared sense of purpose to a large population. By communal effort they fashioned mud into bricks and built huge temple mounds that were like artificial mountains, connecting their society to the heavens and providing a gateway to the world of the gods.

These temple pyramids or ziggurats also served as spectacular backdrops for highly theatrical performances designed to evoke a healthy religious feeling in a whole population.

These religious spectacles were staged with exquisite precision to a calendar set by a giant celestial clock, the movements of the sun, moon, and stars across the sky. Lives were short but people accumulated thousands of years of observations that could be passed down by various forms of notation. They paid particular close attention to the exact turning points of the year: the spring and fall equinoxes and the summer and winter solstices, the four points marking the change of season. The great festivals of the year were held at those times, with a greater festival marking the beginning of the New Year.

Their interest in the cycles of time was practical, a life and death matter. A delay of as little as a few days in planting or harvesting could mean that a crop would fail and there would be nothing to eat through the winter, dooming many to die. Even in earlier times the hunters knew that the movements of the animals and the fruiting of the trees follow the celestial calendar.

The dramatic heart of these seasonal turning point festivals was the staging of an elaborate *abomination*, in which the king or the statues of the gods "disappeared," supposedly having been kidnapped, stolen away, or killed and dismembered by dark forces of chaos. The whole society pretended to mourn them, giving up the pleasures of life for a period of time in sympathy with the kidnapped or dead gods or king.

In some versions of seasonal festivals in ancient Babylon, the statues of the gods were actually removed from the temples and buried in the desert or destroyed. Later in the festival they would be returned to their rightful positions or replaced with new ones, triggering great relief and celebration by the people.

Sir James Frazer in *The Golden Bough* persuasively makes the case that many societies pass through an early stage where the office of king is a temporary job, held only for a set period of time, perhaps just one year. In the most primal of these societies the old king is either executed or must fight a ritual combat with the

new candidate. The sacrificial death of the old king cleans the slate and pays for the mistakes of the past year. Gradually, popular or very powerful kings managed to exceed their rule but the tradition of sacrificing the old king ran very deep and was often represented symbolically in the common traditions and ritual programs of the moon-building cultures. The literal sacrifice of the king and his replacement with a successor was replaced by a mythological death and rebirth, like that of Osiris. The king was identified with the god who had died and came back to life again, and acted out his death, dismemberment, and rebirth in dramatic rituals rather than by actually dying.

The scholar Thorelde Foster described four types of ritual in the ancient world at the New Year that followed one another in a seasonal sequence of *Mortification, Purgation, Invigoration, and Jubilation*, all related to the death and rebirth of the god or king. Sometimes all four elements could be combined in an elaborate ritual drama that involved all the members of society as actors in the play, whose stage was the whole city, and whose subject was the death and rebirth of the god-king. Foster says ancient ritual drama was of two types, rituals of death or *expurgation*, and rituals of *plenty or lifting*. *Mortification* and *Purgation* emptied the body and mind, cleansing and purifying them while giving a taste of death, and *Invigoration* and *Jubilation* rituals filled and satisfied the people while re-asserting the principles of life.

Performing these rituals at the seasonal turning points was a symbolic but also practical way of allowing the whole society to cool down after a strenuous season of work. As we now grant ourselves frequent holidays to punctuate the year and break our work into manageable, bearable spans of time, so did our ancestors sensibly stop the drumbeat of the work routine from time to time, but very consciously and purposefully.

In the *Mortification* and *Purgation* phases they shut down as many of life's systems as possible: using mourning for the absent gods or king as a pretext to give a rest to all commerce, labor, lawsuits, etc. Shops, warehouses, and factories were closed. The hearth fires that burned in every home were put out, and the great fire that burned eternally in the temple was extinguished too. Even the processes of the body were shut down, and people fasted, stopped talking, and gave up life's pleasures to become more quiet and contemplative for a few hours. It was considered a time out, time outside of time, a grinding down of the gear clock, and in some calendars

## Chapter 14

the festival days were not given numbers or names, signifying that this was sacred turning point time, not subject to the ordinary daily rhythm.

Mortification means bringing the body near the point of death by *living* his also denying oneself any of the little pleasures of the body. They believed the body needed to be humbled or mortified from time to time, so it knows the mind is the master. The absence of things that were normally taken for granted created a renewed appreciation for them. It also focused the minds of the people and reminded them of the possibility of death that was always near.

Lamentation was an important part of the ritual at this point. People were supposed to meditate sympathetically on the death of the hero-god-king and let their hair and their faces. Special songs were composed with the aim of triggering the emotions of grief and sorrow. The dramatic form of tragedy was developed from the rituals, chants, and dances of mourning that tried to evoke sympathy for the suffering god or king. Tragedy comes from the word "tragic" or *gaitis*, because *gaitis* were often used as sacrificial stand-ins for the wealthy sacrifice of the king.

The Purgation phase of sacred rituals was marked by cleansing the body and the environment as much as possible. People would bathe and wash themselves with oil to symbolize the shedding of an old skin from the previous season. Houses and temples would be cleaned with water and fumigated. Bells and gongs would be rung to chase out unclean spirits. Fireworks have been used in China for centuries for this purpose.

Purgation was both metaphorical and literal in these ancient societies. Mentally and metaphysically, people were supposed to purge themselves of sour feelings, resentments, jealousies, and so on. But they were also supposed to cleanse the body of impurities by fasting and wear by inducing vomiting.

Catharsis was a medical term in Aristotle's time for the natural processes by which the body eliminates poisons and wastes. It comes from the word "katharsis" which means pure, so a catharsis is a purification, but it can also be a purgation, a vomiting up or violent expelling of impurities. Sweating is a cathartic reaction to rid the nasal passages of impurities.

In the *Agon*, Aristotle used the term "catharsis of the emotions" as a metaphor comparing the emotional effect of a drama with the way the body rids itself of toxins and impurities. The Greeks and other ancient peoples knew that life is hard, involving many unpleasant compromises and the sating of much pain. Emotional

impurities and poisons build up in the body just as physical ones do, and can have catastrophic effects if not purged at regular intervals. They believed that people who get no emotional release from art, music, sports, dance, or drama inevitably will be overcome by poisonous feelings that will surface as aggression, hostility, perversion or madness, all things dangerous to the society. Therefore they institutionalized purging and purification of mind and body with seasonal festivals that artificially induced catharsis on a quarterly schedule. Drama was a sacred thing, not available for daily consumption, and confined only to the important turning points of the year.

The fasting and purging created a condition of extreme dramatic suggestibility in the population. It was thus that the whole society gathered in the squares and streets of the polis-state to witness a spectacular dramatization of some great event in the mythic history of the culture. The people were not a passive audience, but took an active part in the dramatic presentation. The city itself, with its gates, professional warriors, and towering temples became the stage set for an enormous collective re-enactment of creation, a great battle between gods of order and chaos or the death and rebirth of the god-king.

The Greeks adopted the general patterns of these seasonal dramatic rituals and made them part of their yearly calendar of religious festivals, built around the deaths of gods like Apollo and Dionysos. The great Greek tragedies and comedies evolved slowly from ritual re-enactments and recitations of poems about the gods and heroes, and originally were considered as religious ceremonies, sacramental acts designed to have a beneficial effect on the spirit. The magnificent wooden theaters of ancient Greece were originally built as temples dedicated to the god Dionysos, one of the dying and rising gods. The plays enacted there were intended as the dramatic climax to vast religious pageants, and they were carefully designed to bring about the emotional effect that Aristotle called *catharsis*, a feeling of pity and fear evoked by watching the unfolding fate of a hero. The hero of a Greek tragedy was a stand-in for the old god-king, undergoing a sacrificial death on behalf of all the members of the society, and bringing about a catharsis in the members of the audience through sympathy with his or her sufferings.

In Athens, along with dramatic rituals honoring Apollo and Dionysos, seasonal festivals were organized around the myth of Demeter and Kore (Persephone), a pious brother and daughter who once ruled over an endless summer of abundance. Their story tells how the season began, and its festivals are meant to imitate

with the seasonal rhythms of planting, weeding, harvesting, and surviving the winter. Their drama's Call to Adventure was the kidnapping of Persephone by Hades, lord of the Underworld. The trials re-enacted her kidnapping in Ovidian, or the Thesmophoria, three days of festivals exclusively for women. This was the enigma, introducing the ruse of Metempsychosis and Purgation.

In the myth, Demeter's grief at the disappearance of her daughter brings about a terrible season in which the earth lies barren, as the goddess of the harvest neglects her duties in order to grieve and search for her daughter. Demeter becomes the hero of an epic quest, playing many roles as she seeks out her daughter in the Underworld and induces the god to make a deal with Hades to allow Persephone to return to the world of light and life, at least for part of the year.

Kore/Persephone's return was celebrated at festivals called the Lesser Eleusinia in February, marking the return of spring.

Every five years, the Greater Eleusinia, the greatest festival in the Greek calendar, was held in September. Some of the carriages from the pediment of the Parthenon depict these jubilant ceremonies, when the young women of Athens would fetch the sacred objects from the temple of Demeter and march them to a special shrine, the Eleusinion, at the base of the Acropolis. The story of Demeter and Kore was acted out in secret ceremonies of great emotional impact for a select group of initiates, using all the effects of lighting, music, dance, ritual, and staging to bring about the desired catharsis.

Nowadays we may use the term catharsis more broadly to mean any kind of emotional release or breakthrough. Catharsis was adopted by the psychological community to describe a therapeutic process in which repressed thoughts, feelings, emotions, or memories are deliberately brought to consciousness, triggering an emotional release or breakthrough that is supposed to relieve anxiety and other tensions. Movies and stories as well as art and music can have a role to play in engineering a psychologically healthy cathartic reaction.

## THE CATHARSIS OF COMEDY

In the classical Greek system, it was recognized that balance is needed in a drama's presentation so else it can be overwhelming and edifying. They added comedies to

the grand liturgy to relieve the emotional intensity of the sorrowful tragedies with some cathartic laughter for contrast:

Comedy belongs to the "pleases" or filling up portion of the ritual cycle. Once mourning and purging have been fully experienced, it's time to fill up again with something healthy, lively, and life-affirming like stimulates imagination and jubilation.

The word comedy comes from "comos" which means "the crowd," a wild party or orgy. Rituals of imagination in very ancient times involved a big feast in which eating, drinking, and all kinds of merriment were encouraged, to make a vivid contrast with the somber tone of the Mortification and Purgation rituals that preceded it. One aspect of comedy is the stirring up of sexual urges. Greek comedy often dealt with power struggles between men and women and celebrated sexuality with exaggerated costumes and emotions. Freud considered that there was a strong linkage between laughter and sexuality and of course sex is a natural catharsis that relieves tension.

The Greeks thought two or three heavy doses of tragedy would do a good job of mortifying and purging you, and a dose of comedy was just the right finish to a ritual cycle, sending you back into the next season of the year refreshed, psychologically cleansed and reborn, and joyful. As they used to say in a proverbial "Always have 'em laughing."

## RETURN OF THE LIGHT

A feature of the seasonal rituals in ancient times was the re-lighting of the sacred fire in a central temple, symbolic of the return of life over death. The flame would first be passed from person to person, carrying flame candles or small oil lamps from which the individual hearth fires could be relit to reorganize the culture. The hearth fire would be used to cook a feast that was consumed as part of the jubilation that concluded the seasonal cycle.

Some of these rituals survive in various ways around the world today. I witnessed one version at a Greek Orthodox Easter service in New York City. Part of the Lenten observance is to cover the beautiful painted statues and icons with purple cloths and put out the candles for a time, symbolically evoking grief and lamentation over Christ's suffering, death, and burial. Then, at a moment symbolizing the Resurrection, a large Paschal candle is lit in the darkened church. In the



Greek Orthodox church in New York, the congregants had brought along small candles which they lit from the big one. At the end of the service they exited the church, but the ritual went on as the families walked home or got into their cars, carefully shielding the flames from the wind, preserving the light of the new season to kindle their own symbolic hearth fires in their homes, just as people used to do thousands of years ago. In similar ceremonies in Jerusalem, Greek pilgrims will even carry home the sacred flames on specially chartered airplanes.

When we deal in drama or narrative today we are building on forty thousand years of tradition and experience. Humans have always sought stimulation and emotional release through drama. Although our entertainment is more evenly distributed throughout the year, we still partake of some of the seasonal ritual affect. New shows or television are typically launched in September, time of the fall equinox. Going to movies with family at holiday times or watching particular holiday films like *It's a Wonderful Life* each year is an emotional tradition for many people. Certain kinds of movies seem to be associated with specific seasons. In general, we like low-stress and sport movies in the spring and summer, while more thoughtful dramas tend to be released in fall and winter. The winter solstice, roughly coinciding with the Christmas and New Year's holidays, is a good time to release big fantasy pictures, especially those that comprise tetologies that can be run over successive year-end holidays. Summer is the time for the blockbusters and action pictures.

## THE POWER OF THE SEASONS

We are not so conscious of the seasons these days since we are somewhat insulated from their effects and most of us no longer live by the rhythms of planting and harvesting. However, the seasons still have their power over us, affecting our lives and our moods in ways both obvious and subtle. The seasons of the year and seasonal holidays can be useful to the writer, providing natural turning points, a means of the passage of time, and distinct emotional associations. The passage of a single season makes an effective time frame for a novella (*The Chesapeake Snow, Winter Catch*) or a story's four-act structure could be built around the passage of the seasons (*The Four Seasons*). A change of seasons in a story can signify a change in the hero's fortunes or mood. A story could be built around a character who is dramatically out of sync with the rhythm of the seasons.

In your writing, remember that the purpose of everything you're doing is to bring about some kind of emotional reaction in your reader or viewer. It may not always be the full-blown explosive reaction of catharsis, but it should have its effect on the organs of the body, stimulating them through repeated blows of conflict and setback for your hero. You are always raising and lowering the tension, pumping energy into your story and characters until some kind of emotional release is inevitable, in the form of laughter, tears, shudders, or a warm glow of understanding. People still need catharsis, and a good story is one of the most reliable and entertaining ways of bringing it about.

## QUESTIONS

1. What role do holidays and the seasons play in your life? What role in your stories? Do you associate the holidays with emotional catharsis? Do your characters?
2. What happens if you resist or ignore the rhythms of the seasons? What happens if you don't participate in the seasonal rituals of your culture?
3. How is the seasonal cycle of catharsis played out in the world of sports? Do we get more catharsis from playing athletic games or from watching them?
4. Why are competitive reality shows and talent contests so popular? What is the catharsis that they provide?
5. What is the effect of experiencing a dramatic catharsis in a group? How is watching a movie or play in a packed theater different from reading a book, playing a computer game alone, or watching television at home? Which do you prefer, and why?
6. Has reading a book or watching a movie, play, or sporting event ever triggered a feeling like catharsis in you? Describe that experience and try to make the reader feel it too.

7. What was your most memorable holiday experience? Could that experience be material for a short story, a one-act play, or a short film script? Would a character in it experience a catharsis?
8. What role does fashion play in the seasonal cycle? Are we manipulated by the fashion industry or is it natural to wear different colors and fabrics for each season?
9. What seasonal rituals are still practiced in your community? Do any of them use dramatic effects to create catharsis? What feelings are stirred by these rituals?
10. Where are movies going in their search for situations that will trigger some kind of emotional or physical reaction? Is it harder to stimulate people today, and what will movie-makers and story-makers of the future use to bring about catharsis?





THE WISDOM OF THE BODY

# THE WISDOM OF THE BODY

*"There is more wisdom in your body than in your deepest philosophy."*

— Friedrich Nietzsche



Although we use our minds to process and interpret stories, much is going on throughout the rest of the body as we interact with a narrative. We react to art and to stories about our fellow creatures with the organs of our body. In fact the whole body is involved: skin, nerves,

blinds, bones, and organs.

Joseph Campbell pointed out that the archetypes speak to us directly through the organs, as if we were programmed to respond emotionally to certain symbolic stimuli. For example, big-eyed infants of any species trigger a reaction of sympathy and protectiveness, or cause us to say things like "How cute!" This is because from the first months knows how to exploit this deep emotional trigger by making his eyes huge when he wants sympathy. Emotions are complex processes, but on one level they are simple chemical reactions to stimuli in our environment, a fact that storytellers have always used to get their emotional effects.

Certain images or tableaux have an automatic emotional impact on us. Tears is the organ of our bodies. A tallon is a figure or several figures in a setting, evoking some primal need (not rather affects us rationally, on an almost animal level, or that has become charged with emotion because of long tradition. The Last Supper, images of the Madonna and child, and the Pietà depicting Christ's mother cradling

## Graphic Style

let dead men's bodies are all-emotionally loaded religious tableaux. Similar images with equal force existed in other cultures, like the Egyptian goddess Hathor nursing her child or his tenderness assembling the scattered pieces of her dismembered husband Osiris. Images of beings in conflict, people in combat or gods and heroes wrestling with monsters, came second to the dramatic as we identify with one or another of the combatants. Images of protective or generous spirits (kindly grandmothers, angels, Santa Claus) give us a warm feeling of comfort. Representations of sympathetic characters in physical torment evoke a physical response, as in graphic medieval art depicting the Crucifixion and the martyrdoms of various saints like St. Sebastian who was shot full of arrows.

Classical Greek drama used startling visceral affects on stage, like Oedipus appearing with his eyes torn out, to elicit a strong reaction in the bodies of the beholders. The language of Greek plays could be bold and brutal, hammering at the audience with vivid word choices that suggested violent blows and the spilling of blood. Often a bloody act was committed off stage, but idealized with somewhat-sensational detail as the shocking evidence was displayed in the form of blood-soaked clothing or actors portraying corpses.

The Romans took this to extremes in their version of Greek theater which became more degenerate and cruel as the Empire stumbled to its death. Symbolic or simulated acts of violence were replaced by real ones, with unfortunates criminals suffering the fate of the fateful characters, literally bleeding and dying on stage to ensue the Roman public. Gladiators stepped into plays to enact mythological combats and actually fought to the death in the theater.

In the late 1700s, the puppet element of Comedie was acquired from Lyons to Paris, where his coach, molier name gave birth to a whole new of plays known as Comedie Caugnot, whose object was to provide thrills of terror and shudder of horror with the dramatic depiction of tortures, beheadings, dismemberments, and other results to the human body.

Observers of the first impact of moving pictures on the public remarked on the real and physical power of the images on the screen, causing audiences to jump back when a train approached or flinch when a gas was poured at them for the first time in *The Great Train Robbery*.

In the 1920s and '30s, Alfred Hitchcock was known for providing physical reactions in his audiences, and he was a master orator, playing the screen like a

mighty Wurlitzer in immanently-Silent movies like *Psyche*, *The Birds*, and *Vertigo*, but he was not alone, for all good directors know instinctively how to use their tools to make us feel something, physically and emotionally. They employ everything in the toolbox — story, character, editing, lighting, costumes, music, set design, acting, special effects, and psychology — to bring about physical responses such as holding the breath in suspense, gasping in response to surprises, and exhaling in relaxation when the on-screen tension is released. In fact, the *secret* of drama may come down to control of the audience's breathing; for through the breath all the other organs of the body can be regulated.

In the 1970s the special-effects-laden movies of James Cameron (*Avatar*, *Indiana Jones: The Temple of Doom*) were heralded, and sometimes condemned, as a new wave of sensual entertainment, playing to the body rather than the mind. With the arrival of the modern special-effects masters of the Spielberg and Lucas generation, movies were able to induce the eye and the other organs of the body even more convincingly.

Along the way there have been many experiments to enhance the physical effects of entertainment and drama, from the burning of incense at Greek rituals to modern technical marvels like 3D IMAX, and mechanized seats that vibrate in time to on-screen machine-gun fire. In Roman theater and media, the presence of gods could be suggested by misty or perfumed vapors and showers of fragrant flower petals. In the 1950s experiments were done with 3D "smell-screens," and "Perceptics," an effect in theaters specially rigged for William Castle's unique effort, *The Tingler*. Seats were wired with buzzers that made their vibrate at supposedly shocking moments on screen, when a creature was depicted attaching itself to people's spines.

## THE BODY AS A GUIDE TO CRITICIZING

It's not easy to critique your own writing work or that of others. It can be hard to articulate what's wrong, how the story made you feel, what was lacking. Sometimes the best way to measure a story's effect and diagnose its problems is to ask "How did it make me feel — in the organs of my body? Did I feel anything physical at all, or was I just having mental processes that didn't touch beyond anything but the brain? Did it make my blood run cold? Did it make my ears and neck hoarse or delight? Did it make my nervous system alert as if the danger the hero faces were actually



## Creative Style

thickening ice?" If not, there may be something missing, an appeal to the body, a physical force, an emotional tension.

As a professional reviewer of stories I became heavily attuned to the emotional and physical effects a manuscript could have on me. I came to depend on the wisdom of the body to determine the quality of the story. If it was bad and boring, my body would grow heavier and the pages would weigh a thousand pounds apiece. I knew it was bad if, as my eyes scanned down the page, my head kept drooping and I nodded off to sleep. The good ones, I noticed, the ones that ultimately made good movies, had the opposite effect on my body. They woke me up. The organs of my body came to life one by one. The body became alert, light, and happy, squirting fluids into the pleasure centers of the brain, "the proper pleasure" as Aristotle called it, of experiencing emotional and physical release through a well-told, cathartic tale.

As we watch a good movie or are engrossed in a good novel, we actually go into an altered state of consciousness, with a measurable change in brain waves detectable by the tools of science. Perhaps changes in the rhythm of the breath, combined with focusing the attention on the imaginary world of the story, bring about this almost hypnotic effect.

When I started cobbling screenplays and stories for a living, I soon found that what I was really reporting was how they had triggered chemical reactions in the organs of my body. The organs squirt fluids, all day long, as we react to various emotional and physical situations in our environment, and it's no different when we watch a movie or imagine scenes from a novel. When we are stressed or frightened, our adrenal glands transmit a chemical jolt through the body, sending signals to increase the heart rate and pace of breathing. When we are in shock from seeing traumatic or frightening things, our bodies send messages to shut down certain processes to preserve a core of life as an emergency.

The word "horror" derives from the Latin word for hissing and reflects the body's automatic reaction to occlude events, things that upset the normal order. Such sights trigger a physical reaction in the skin of the arms that resembles the response to cold air. Tiny muscles cause the hairs on the arms to stand up, a startle called "horripilation" that means "bristling hair" or hair standing on end. Horror is hair-raising. Some scientists think this may be a survival from hairy trees or human hairiness, also having your thick patch of hair stand up when threatened would make you look bigger and scarier, as many animals will swell up or ruffle up their fur when facing threats.

A tip for designers of sensory experience: A sudden blast of chilly air can trigger a shuddering effect in audiences, especially if they are keyed up for it by some emotional or musical manipulation. The chill can trigger the graveyard shudder of fear or a more excited form of physical reaction, like awe, wonder or spiritual rebirth.

The effect of shuddering, in which the muscles of the body, especially the arms and back, involuntarily ripple or spasm, is associated with other emotional effects in addition to horror. Religious awe or deep psychological insight can produce shudders that can be very pleasurable, signs of grace, endorsement from the body of the rightness of a thought. A shiver of this kind in French is called a "frisson," and I noticed the phenomenon when I concentrated hard on working out a story problem, especially when working collaboratively in open discussion with other people. In the course of trying out different ideas, someone would do something that triggered a shiver of response in me. I would feel a single prickle down my spine, almost as if thousands of small pebbles were ruffing down my spinal column. It felt the way a rain stick sounds, one of those hollow wooden tubes with dried pine needles that makes a sound like falling rain. Sometimes other people would feel it too, or feel something like it, because I could see their bodies being jolted by it. The shiver ran around the room.

I learned to value these physical responses because they were telling me I was on the verge of something true and right, something beautiful. In those story sessions, sometimes the answer to a story problem rang true on three levels of my being, sending a subtle physical signal that elements were lining up to create a desirable emotional outcome, or that the story would now make better sense or be more realistic or honest. It suggested to me that there is an inner grid of rightness about art and creation, and that our bodies respond with pleasure when we make works that line up with this grid, allowing emotional energy to flow at full power like electrical current. Solutions to story problems can have a certain beauty or elegance, or directness of physics or mathematical solutions are said to be elegant. Perhaps we sense that the solution is in harmony with some universal truth, some essential reality in the universe.

Stimuli appeal to the organs at different levels, and there is a hierarchy, an ascending order of emotional development that is reflected in the Indian concept of the shukas system. These are imagined to be a number of invisible but very real centers of life within the body, most of them located along the spine. I believe seven

## Chakra Light

principal chakras, each governing a different function, ascending from the crude physical needs of the body to the highest aspirations of the soul. Chakras mean ring or circle and the chakras are conceived as ring-like centers of energy near important organs. They are pictured as lotus flowers that can be open or closed depending on the person's spiritual development. They form a map of the stages of a person's growth or at least potential for growth, but few people progress past the first three levels, having to do with direct survival, sex, and power, all below the belt line. Some are lucky enough to progress to the heart chakra and experience love. Few reach the level of the throat chakra that allows for expression of the artist's drive. Writers and artists may be among these. With spiritual enlightenment the sixth chakra, in the region of the "third eye," can be opened, sometimes granting psychic abilities, and for a very few saintly people, the seventh or crown chakra may flower, showering the fully awakened person with a fountain of divine grace.

These symbols can be useful in charting the development of a character, giving metaphors for the stages of change and growth. Some people don't ascend the ladder of emotional development to project order but may skip up to open two or more chakras at different levels, with very different effects and many possible combinations. According to some modern Hindu eyes, Hitler may have been very open to the power and throat chakras, making him an effective communicator who could stir the emotions and marshal justice with his voice, but he was probably shut tight in most of the other chakras.

According to theory, the chakras can be stimulated in various ways and each is responsive to specific colors, smells, and especially sounds. Supposedly, unhealthy chakras can be cleaned or opened by exposure to the vibrations of gongs, bells, drums, and trumpets. In music, big emotional orchestras duplicate the opening of the higher chakras, and an advanced and unplugged by distress in the music and action.

In evaluating story material for the Hollywood studios, I began to think about how modern entertainment plays upon the various emotional and physical centers of the body, and observed that good stories affected me in at least two organs at once, perhaps getting my heart racing with tension while making my throat clack up with sympathy for the death of a character. I needed to treat up, choke up, freeze up, or laugh it up, and the more of those physical reactions I felt, the better the story was likely; perhaps, all the regions of the body should be stimulated by a good story to

the course of exploring all the possibilities of an emotional situation. My motto as a story evaluator became, "If it isn't making at least two organs of my body squirm, it's no good."

Catharsis, decided elsewhere in the volume, is the biggest emotional and physical trigger of them all. We may get it in small doses from almost every drama or story we see, but the big catharsis, a whole-body emotional and physical spasm that clears out your entire system of toxins or triggers a complete change of orientation, is pretty rare. You wouldn't want to go through that disorganizing every day, but a catharsis usually means a radical reorganization of priorities and belief systems. But it does still happen now and then, when the story and the listener are lined up just right, and it's the thing that makes so many people want to go into show business and theater. They've felt it. In the presence of work that is beautiful and true, honest and real, something strikes you like a hammer striking glass and allows you to suddenly put your own experience into proper new perspective. You might have experienced that deep shudder of realization, a moment of profound connection with your family, your country, your humanity, with the ideas, or the things you believe in. A story, once in a great while, can reach us at the deepest level, giving us a new view of the world or a new reason to live, perhaps when we are ready for that particular story to speak its truths to us. No wonder some people want to be artists and storytellers, to participate in that mystery, and create the possibility of that experience for others.

## QUESTIONS

1. What sensations do you get in watching a powerful dramatic experience in a moving performance by a singer or other artist?
2. Think of a story that you particularly enjoyed or that meant something to you. How did it affect the organs of your body?
3. What symbols or talismans are particularly moving or meaningful to you? How would you describe your feelings as someone else would experience what you feel?
4. How has your body reacted to frightening or life-threatening situations? Write a short story or short film script capturing this experience.
5. Watch a scary movie and observe how the filmmaker manipulates your breathing with editing, suspense, musical rhythms, color, etc.
6. What kind of scenes start up the most emotion or the strongest physical reaction for you? Write a series of scenes aiming to evoke specific emotional or physical reactions — to bring a chair down the back, to raise goose-bumps on the arms, to trigger tears or laughter.





TRUST THE PATH

# TRUST THE PATH

---

*"In the midst of life's journey, I found myself in a dark wood,  
for the right path was lost."*



It said Dante at the beginning of the *Inferno* and so I found myself in a certain passage in the journey of my life, hiking alone in the forest near Big Sur, California. I was in a dark wood, all right, and lost. I was cold, hungry, shivering, exhausted, and provoked by the thought of night closing in.

It had been a rainy winter, with storms after storms saturating the hillsides after years of drought. I felt provoked by heavy weather in my own life, and had come north to the sacred country of Big Sur to find some things I had lost: solitude, peace of mind, clarity. I felt I had failed in important areas of jobs and relationships and was confused about which way to move next. I had some decisions to make about my direction and knew instinctively that a plunge into the wilderness could give me a vision of the future to lead me out of my present confusion.

As I set out on the well-marked Forest Service trail that winds into the wild canyons of Big Sur, I needed a little sign that warned the trail was rough or open. I expected the path to be wet and muddy in places because of the recent rains, but quickly found out I had underestimated the ferocious impact of the winter storms on the fragile hillsides. The whole mountain range was a vast sponge that was now



## Chapter 46

draining slowly into the canyon, unimaginable amounts of water carving new canyons and streams. Time and again I hopped a corner to find that the trail ahead simply vanished for fifty yards because a whole hillside had washed away, trail and all, leaving a damp sea of crumbling shale and a waterfall cascading down the raw rock. The freshly exposed rock is easily broken into shards called spher that flow downhill almost as easily as water, and can be as treacherous as quicksand. I could see the trail continuing again beyond the stretch where the hillside had collapsed, and had no choice but to scramble like a crab across the shifting, slippery rock face, clinging by fingertips and toes, digging into the crumbling scree until I was back on the level surface of the broken path. It continued for a few hundred feet around a shoulder of the mountain, only to disappear again in another mudslide that had to be crossed by the finger-and-toe method.

As first this seemed exhilarating, just the kind of remote wilderness challenge that I was after. But after the third or fourth time of edging out across a sheer, unstable cliff face with muddy water streaming over me, the process began to take its toll. My arms and legs began to tremble from the unaccustomed exertion, my fingers and toes grew cramped. My core temperature dropped from repeated soakings as the cool air chilled my clothes and skin by evaporation. At times the whole hillside of yellow sand and shale seemed to be shuddering and slipping under me, flowing in a slow-motion mudslide. By the tenth crossing I was starting to get worried. The hike that was supposed to take an hour had taken three hours and there was no end in sight. I lost my footing a couple of times in the mud and barely caught myself, clinging to the crumbling rock with fingers cramped and arms shaking, knowing I would fall for hundreds of feet before I hit something solid and hard.

And then, as my adventure led me around the cooler, shaded side of the mountain, I reached a vast, flat sea where a whole slab of the mountain had fallen away into a deep canyon, leaving a sterile field of jagged boulders the size of houses that would be challenging to cross. I didn't know whether to turn back or keep going. I began to measure my strength very precisely, recognizing a primal, instinctive hyper-awareness that comes when you're at the edge of death. For as I watched the sun sink into the tree line, I felt my life energy draining, and realized I was in one of those classic California wilderness tragedy situations that you read about in the newspapers. Some fool gets himself stuck in the woods at night and falls into a

canon and broke his neck or waist in just for days until he starves to death. It happens all the time. Was this my turn?

With my heightened awareness I knew almost to the calorie how much energy was left in my body. I had brought extra food with me, not a handful of trail mix, and had consumed that long ago, observing how the sun and rain instantly changed me with energy, only to find me cramping a few minutes later when I had burned them off in scrambling across the treacherous slope. How thin is the margin that powers life. I knew that every step from now on was drawing on rice reserves. I could almost see the sands in the hourglass of my life rushing inevitably down to nothing.

The question was whether to turn back or go ahead. The way ahead was uncertain. I couldn't see the trail picking up on the other side of the hoodlip and I knew it would be a difficult task to cross the ragged face of the snow, which was the only way to continue. It would take as much energy as I had already expended, maybe more, and there was no assurance that I would be able to find the trail again on the other side. I might just be plunging deeper into the wilderness with night closing in.

I thought about turning back and retracing the broken trail I had just traversed with such difficulty, but I knew with a terrible certainty that if I tried that I would die. My hands were cramping up like claws and would be almost useless. My arms and legs were shaking and I was absolutely sure that I would fall if I tried to go back across three or four more of those muddy vertical rock faces, especially in the dark.

So I gathered my strength and continued on across the field of hoodlins, crawling like an ant, an insignificant dot on the flank of a mountain. I was impressed by the immense forces that had raised these rocks thousands of feet into the blue pine and now had run down the mountainside. I finally made it across into the trees, winded, cold, and feeling at the end of my strength, but now there was a different problem. Where was the trail? There was no sign of it. Vague paths seemed to lead me deeper into darkness, into brambles, into impenetrable oval thickets like those surrounding curved cañons or fairy tales. I scambled up and down the mountainside, my face and hands scratched by branches, hoping to intersect with the true path, but getting more and more hopelessly lost and frantic as night crept near. I had to get out of there. I knew it was a very bad idea to attempt to spend the night in the forest,

unprepared. People die of exposure out here all the time. I realized for the first time that air on a mountain flows at different times of day like a mass of water. Cold air seemed to be rushing downhill all around me, flooding the bottomless canyon and chilling my blood, dragging my spirit further down.

I denied that word "fear", and tried to deny it to myself, but I had to admit it. A whole host of unfamiliar sensations and thoughts came over me as I watched the shadows of the black trees stretch down the slopes. My heart pounded, my hands shook. The forest seemed to be speaking to me, pleading with me, calling to me. "Come," it said in a weak voice of a million leaves rasping together. "Here is an easy way to your pain. Just sit! Jump! Take a run and launch yourself off this cliff into the canyon. It will all be over in an instant. We'll take care of everything." And wifely enough, that voice seemed appealing and reasonable to some part of me, the part that was terrified, the part that just wanted this awful moment to be over.

But another sliver of my brain snapped back, and recognized that I was experiencing the common human psychological state known as panic. The Greeks, with their talent for naming things, called it *panis* because they believed it was a visit from the nature god Pan, great friend, flow playing Pan, who can inspire mortals but also has the power to terrify them, intertwining their senses with the invisible forces at his command, causing them to do foolish things and die.

I felt the presence now of the witches from the old European and Russian folk tales, fearsome figures who represent the dual nature of the primordial forces. The heroes of those tales learn that the witches, like the forest, can quickly crush, destroy and consume you, but, if you learn how to appease and honor them, they can also support and protect you like a kindly grandmother, taking you from enemies and providing you food and shelter. At the moment, the forest was turning its darkest and most seductive witchy face to me. There was something alive and evil and hungry out there, like the witch in "Hansel and Gretel" who stretched out over the whole forest. I was in her realm.

I stopped and took a breath. That simple act brought a sudden surge of clarity and awareness to my panicked brain that was causing me to rush about like a mindless animal. I realized I had not been breathing properly, that my gasping and panting had deprived my brain of oxygen. Together with my exhaustion and the sudden chill, I was in a mild state of shock, blood rushing away from the head and

extremities to generate a surge of life force and heat. I took a few deep breaths and could feel blood returning to my skull.

Instead of thrashing around panically, I took in my surroundings and got in touch with something ancient and instinctive in me, a reliable inner sense of what to do in dangerous situations.

Just then, a voice came into my head, clear as sunlight. "Trust the path," it said. I truly heard this as a spoken sentence that seemed to be coming from a deep part of me. But I smiled, scoffing at the idea. That's the problem, I said to myself. There is no path. I traced the Forest Service trail and look where it got me: I've been looking for the path the half an hour and it's just not here. And in the larger sense, in the big picture of my life over a period of years, I had also lost sight of the true way.

"Trust the path," said the voice again, patient and true. In that voice was a certainty that there must be a path, and that it could be found upon to do my job.

I looked down and saw a little groove in the woods — an ant trail. There, oblivious to my panic, ants were going about their tiny business in an endless column. With my eyes I followed the ant trail, the only path I could see.

It led me to a slightly deeper groove in the underbrush, a little trail used by field mice and other small creatures, almost a tunnel through the brambles. And soon that guided me to a broader path, a zigzagging deer trail that climbed the mountainside in easy steps. I started putting one foot in front of the other, following that trail. It led me out of the labyrinth-like *Aralia*'s thread leading *Thymus* out of the maze. In a few steps I came to a clearing, a mountain meadow with the sun still shining. Across the meadow I found a well-maintained trail and realized I was back on an official Forest Service path, the right road, the way back.

As I walked along, calmer now, the way out of my personal confusion became clearer. "Trust the path," my inner had said, and I took that to mean, "Keep marching ahead to the next stage of life. Don't try to go backwards, don't allow yourself to get paralyzed or panicked, just keep marching. Trust that your instincts are good and natural and will lead you to a happier, safer place." Then the hiking trail merged with a fire road, wide as two highways, and as I walked on here I was back on the highway where my blessed Volkswagen was parked. The sun was still shining on the Western horizon, though I knew back in those canyons it was already dipping right, and I could have died there.

As I looked back at the mountains and forest that had just held me in their arms, I realized I'd been given a gift with that phrase, Trust the Path, and I pass it on to you. It means that when you are lost and confused, you can trust the journey that you have chosen, or that has chosen you. It means others have been on the journey before you, the writer's journey, the novelist's journey. You're not the first, you're not the last. Your experience of it is unique, your viewpoint has value, but you're also part of something, a long tradition that stretches back to the very beginnings of our race. The journey has its own wisdom, the story knows the way. Trust the journey. Trust the story. Trust the path.

As Dashi says, at the beginning of *The Hobbit*, "In the middle of life's journey I found myself in a dark wood, for the right path was lost." I think we're all doing that, in our various ways, finding ourselves through the journey of our writing lives. Looking for me? Selva in the dark wood? I wish you luck and adventure, and I hope you find yourself on your journey. Best regards.

# FILMOGRAPHY



- Admirer of Robin Hood, The
- Affair of the Queen, The
- After Midnight
- Agency and the Beauty, The
- Aladdin
- American Gaiety
- Analyst, The
- Army and the King
- Army 1915
- Archangel
- Arthur
- At Court as It Goes
- Autobiography
- Back to the Future
- Barbarians
- Best Interest
- Beauty and the Beast
- Beauty Hills, Cap
- Big
- Big Chill, The
- Big Sleep, The
- Black Star
- Breakfast, Cook, The
- Best Comedy and  
the Immortal Kid
- Chickadee
- Cheer
- Chorus
- Christmas
- Citizen Kane
- City Nights
- Clash of the Titans
- Class Immigrants of  
the Third Kind
- Comical Experiences  
King Arthur's Court, A
- Crash of Water, Green, The
- Dance and Music
- Dead Again
- Death Becomes Her
- Dear Doctor, The
- Delivery Miss Daisy
- The Devil and Mr. Hyde
- Diary
- D.T., The Experimental
- Day of Eden
- Days of Innocence, The
- Diary
- Empire Under Attack, The
- Excitement
- Experiences
- Extra
- First Invasion
- Flashes of the Flash
- For God and King, A
- Field of Dreams
- Fight Club
- First Blood
- Fisher King, The
- Five True Pieces
- Flame and the Arrow, The
- For Apache
- 41 Hours
- Five Senses, The
- First Great Journey
- From Russia with Love
- Full Moon, The
- Glass
- Ghost of Postmodern
- Great Escape, The
- Great Train Robbery, The
- Guy
- Guthrie, The
- Golfing
- Grow with the Wind
- Guidance, My Chap
- Guerrilla
- Guerrilla in the Mist
- Guidance, The
- Great Escape, The
- Guest Who's Coming to Dinner
- Gypsy, The
- Honey, I
- High Noon
- Hustler
- Indiana Jones and the  
Last Crusade
- Indiana Jones and the  
Temple of Doom
- Indiana, The
- It Happened One Night
- It's a Wonderful Life
- Jumbo
- John
- Johnnie
- Junior Kid, The
- King Kong
- Little from Memphis, The
- Last Man Standing, The
- Last of the Mohicans, The
- Lawrence of Arabia
- League of Their Own, A
- Lethal Weapon (series)
- Love, Lies
- Light and Dark of  
Judge Roy Bean, The
- Love King, The
- Love Who's Calling
- Looking for Mr. Goodbar
- Lost for
- Lord of the Rings, The  
The Two Towers
- Lost in Translation
- Love Story
- Mattie Frazier, The
- Masterpiece
- Master and Commander:  
The Far Side of the World
- Matrix
- Matinee, The
- Midnight Cowboy
- Miss Dale
- My Darling Clementine
- Mr. Doubtful
- Mr. Smith Goes to Washington
- My Darling Clementine
- Norma Rae
- No Day One
- Night in Northampton
- Northern
- Night Passage, The
- Officer and a Gentleman, An
- On Golden Pond
- Orchestra Wreck
- Opinion

Deer Park  
 Devils  
 Diets  
 Dishes Unknown, The  
 Dirty Business  
 Drive of the Jew, Book, The  
 Drive of Life, The  
 Ducks  
 P.S. Your Cat Is Dead  
 Duke, Henry, The  
 Duff, James  
 Dues for Joe  
 Dusters of the Love Act  
 Duff, Matt  
 Duff, William, a Case  
 Duff, Bill  
 Dusters of the Day  
 Dusters of the Job  
 Duff, William  
 Duff, William  
 Duff, William, Prince of Wales  
 Duff  
 Dusters of the Day  
 Duff, William (cont.)  
 Duff, William, The  
 Duffin  
 Duff, Hank, The  
 Duffin, The  
 Duffin of a Court  
 Duffin of a Court  
 Duffin of a Court  
 Duffin  
 Duffin, The  
 Duffin of the Court, The  
 Duffin Act  
 Duffin, Henry, The  
 Duffin Bill  
 Duffin's Case  
 Duffin  
 Duffin and Duffin  
 Duffin (cont.)  
 Duffin  
 Duffin, The  
 Duffin of a Court  
 Duffin, Cash  
 Duffin  
 Duffin, The  
 Duffin, J. Judgment Day  
 Duffin of Evidence  
 The Duffin, Henry  
 Duffin in Love

Duffin with Teeth, Book, The  
 Duffin Act, The  
 Duffin, Henry  
 Duffin, The  
 Duffin  
 Duffin's Case  
 Duffin  
 Duffin  
 Duffin, Henry  
 Duffin, Henry, The  
 Duffin, Henry  
 Duffin of the Court, The  
 Duffin Act  
 Duffin of the Court, The  
 Duffin Act  
 Duffin  
 Duffin  
 Duffin  
 Duffin  
 Duffin, Henry  
 Duffin, Henry, King, King  
 Duffin, Henry, The  
 Duffin, Henry, The  
 Duffin  
 Duffin  
 Duffin  
 Duffin of the Court, The  
 Duffin, Henry  
 Duffin

# BIBLIOGRAPHY



- Amer's Reader's Encyclopedia*, Harper & Row 1987
- Bolton, Juan Simons. M. D., *Goldens in Everyman*, Harper & Row 1985
- Bolton, Juan Simons. M. D., *God in Everyman*, Harper & Row 1989
- Bulfinch Thomas, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, Fergus Books 1981
- Campbell, Joseph (with Bill Moyers), *The Power of Myth*, Doubleday 1988
- Campbell, Joseph, *The Hero with a Thousand Faces*, Bollinger's Series/Princeton University Press 1973
- Devotion, H. R., Eds., *Gods and Myths of Northern Europe*, Penguin Books 1984
- Greene, Robert, *The Great Myths*, Fergus Books 1979
- Hallward, Leslie, *Fergus's Companion*, 9th Edition, Charles Scribner's Sons 1983
- Homer, *The Odyssey*, trans. by E. V. Rieu, Penguin Books 1960
- Johnson, Robert A., *His Understanding Masculine Psychology*, Harper & Row 1977
- Johnson, Robert A., *She Understanding Feminine Psychology*, Harper & Row 1977
- Johnson, Robert A., *His Understanding the Psychology of Romantic Love*, Harper & Row 1983
- Knight, Arthur, *The Loves of Art*, New American Library 1957
- Lattimore, Richmond, *The Iliad of Homer*, University of Chicago Press 1962
- Leeming David, *Mythology*, Newswatch Books 1976
- Lattimore, David J., *The Iliad of a Man's Life*, Ballantine Books 1978
- Lucretius, Mar., *The Poets of the Art of Man and Nature of Man*, Indiana University Press 1887
- Moss, Gerald, *A Short History of the Moon*, Bobbs-Merrill 1974
- Murdoch, Margaret, *The Odyssey's Journey: Women's Quest for Wholeness*, Shambhala 1990
- Peacock, Carol S., *Awakening the Inner Woman*, Harper San Francisco 1991
- Prepp, Vladimir, *Metaphysics of the Iliad*, University of Texas Press 1970
- Whedwright, Philip, Arnold, *The Odyssey*, Press 1955



## SUBJECT INDEX



- A**  
 Achilles, 119  
 Adam, 119  
 Admiration, pursuit of, 192  
 Adventure. *See* Call to Adventure (stage 2)  
 Aeneid, *The*, 187, 209  
 Aeschylus, 119, 180  
 African Queen, *The*, 316, 371  
 After Midnight, 309, 371  
 Age, 16, 26, 170-171, 253, 317  
 Agony, 332-336  
     Argument of the play, 333  
     Modern-day public agony, 333  
     Personal, 334  
*Agony and the Fantasy, The*, 313, 371  
 Airplane flight metaphor, 121  
 Aladdin, 307, 371  
 Allen, James, 355  
 Allen, Sheila Roschini, 74  
 Ally archetypes, 26, 50, 57, 59, 61, 70-75, 101, 121, 137, 139-141, 144, 153, 198, 241, 273, 376, 379-380, 383. *See also* Test, Allies, and Enemies (stage 6)  
 American values, xiv  
 Analysis. *See* Extended Plot Analysis  
 Analogy, *The*, 326, 371  
 Anderson, Roy Chapman, 259  
 Andromeda, 180  
 Ananus or anus, 65-67, 146, 148, 167-168  
     Nigama, 168  
*Anus and the King, a*, 371  
 Anne Hall, 138, 371  
 Antagonist, 4, 163, 173-198, 421, 429, 371  
 Anti-heroes, xi, 34-35, 44  
 Apollo, 347  
 Apuleius, 6, 171, 181, 279  
 Approach to the Empire Case (stage 7), 6, 8-9, 14, 18, 20, 141, 143-153, 155, 158-161, 165-166, 170, 175, 178, 188, 205, 243, 277-278

- Asheys*, 57, 62, 124, 177, 181, 371
- Archetypes*, *see* *see*: 16, 23-27, 66-68, 75-86, 105, 106, 111, 116, 120-121, 123-124, 129, 138, 150, 163, 166, 173, 231, 232-238, 240, 251-253, 257, 269, 274, 285, 353. *See also* *individual archetypes*
- As emanations of the hero, 23
  - As a function of character, 24
  - Eight major archetypes listed, 26
  - Psychological function, 29
- Ariadne's Thread*, 150, 186, 367
- Arms*, 92, 253, 319-321, 329, 344-345, 346, 374
- Archer*, 75, 371
- Archives legend*, 14, 93, 100, 253, 249, 286
- Artist as Hero*, 169
- At God or P. Gen.*, 325, 371
- Attira*, 30, 41, 63, 74, 117, 120
- Aiders*, 347-348
- Authentic Identification*. *See* *Identification*
- Autism*, 368
- Autism of Heroic White by Carol S. Pearson*, 37, 373
- Autisms*, 294, 371

- B**
- Babylon*, 64, 94-95, 97, 351
- Babies*, 101, 147, 161, 167, 182, 216, 220, 263, 287-288, 296, 310, 321, 324, 327, 331, 348
- Ballard, Robert*, 340
- Barbarians*, 122, 190, 371
- Bars, columns, columns, watering holes*, 13-14, 137, 139-140, 273-274, 282
- Baseball metaphor*, *see*, 252
- Beaumont*, 62, 105, 219, 224, 228, 371
- Be prepared*, 146
- Beauty and the Beast*, *see*, 67, 94, 112, 177, 276, 266, 371
- Beginnings*, 210, 224, 249, 306, 308, 329, 339, 344-345, 344, 370
- Bevly Fiddler*, *see*, 16
- Bevly Fiddler Cup*, 10-11, 13, 15, 17, 37, 79, 113, 128, 136, 146, 156, 166, 371
- Bible*
- stories from*, 61, 109
  - verse in Holy Names*, 371, 278, 281
- Big Bang*, 176, 181
- Big Cat*, *see*, 141, 371
- Big Day*, *see*, 35, 61, 371
- Big Star*, 365

- Boy, 228, 371. *See also* *Mr. Big*  
 Black and white, 16, 87, 226  
 Body (as related to endotypes): 24. *See also* *Wisdom of the Body*  
     Incorporating lessons into: 51, 309  
     Purification of: 332, 348-347, 349  
     Wisdom of: 359-361  
*Body His*, 62, 163, 322, 371  
 Beyer, Humphrey, 33  
 Bold approach, 114  
 Bond, James, 43, 45, 75, 155-178, 199. *See also* *James Bond movies*  
*Book of Change, The*, 330  
 Brit, Robin, 78  
 Bruce, Sebastian, 207  
*Brush on Cat, The*, 141, 171  
 Buckstroughton, 152, 203, 348, 360  
 Buddies, 37, 63, 323. *See also* *Partners, Sidelocks, Texas*  
 Buddy comedy, buddy poem, 26-59, 63, 122, 123  
*Buddy Holly Story, The*, 316, 371  
 Bug Bunny, 78  
*Bush Comedy and the Fantasy Era*, 301, 371

## Cable, L.L., 341

- Call no Adormer* (stage 2), *cc. A, B, 12, 19, 23, 56-57, 97-106, 109-110, 114, 130, 134, 138, 140, 205, 233, 243, 270, 272-276, 280, 348*  
*See also* *Retinal of the Call* (stage 3)  
 Conflicting calls, 109-110  
 Hair of Herald in, 55-57  
*Campbell, Joseph* (novels), 3, 5, 24, 46, 51, 79, 83, 99, 104, 110, 135-136, 153, 155, 166-168, 170-171, 179, 191, 256, 285-286, 362, 395, 373  
*Campbell stories*, 176-177, 384  
*Carl Denning*, 238  
*Carre, Howard*, 236  
*Carriosa* (novel), 67, 76, 204, 226, 264, 275, 285  
*Caroline*, 13, 35, 139-140, 218, 371  
*Cars*, 322, 371  
 Castle, William, 157  
*Catalist*, 99  
     *Catalist characters*, 36, 37, 61, 79  
*Catstright*, 321-322  
*Catharin*, *cc.*, 203-205, 253, 320, 349-352, 361

- Case, 4-7, 14, 49, 176, 198, 265, 272, 342-343. *See* *Approach to the Inmate Case* (page 7)
- Celebration, 176, 187, 344
- Celtic myth, *see*, 333
- Chelms, 359-360
- Change, 208, 210-212, 214-257, 221, 241, 254, 255, 269, 279, 284, 300, 303, 324-327, 330, 333, 344, 350, 358-361
- Call for, 56
- Catalysis for, 61
- Dissociation of, 314-316
- Character arc, 73, 137, 224
- Character arc, 33, 17, 305-306, 312, 319
- Characters. *See* *the Archetypes*
- Fines, 33-35, 88, 91, 96, 105, 241, 273, 279, 305
- Real, 31
- Church, 98, 271
- Churchill, 72
- Class status, 17, 196-193, 204, 246, 277
- Cluffy Willy, 76
- Chinese philosophy, 324, 350
- Chino, 119, 121
- Choice, 311, 267, 331, 334
- Resurrection, 301-302
- Rosa, 21
- Choir, 106, 181
- Christmas, 230, 340
- Cinderella, 39, 40, 300, 307
- Circular story form, *see*, 216-218, 227
- Civil War, 105, 171
- Civil War, 87, 111, 210, 238, 371
- Climates. *See* *Fable climates*
- Clairvoyance, 180-181
- Club of the Five, *see*, 41, 44, 371
- Climax, 197-198, 302-303, 280, 343-346
- Clives, *see*, 100
- Cliff, Montgomery, 190, 330
- Climate, *see*, 8, 9, 156-158, 163, 192, 197, 199, 201, 204-205, 208-210, 219, 224-225, 228, 239, 245, 261, 280, 320, 329, 345
- Quest, 202
- Rolling, 302-303
- Club Bannock of the Dard King, *see*, 86, 100, 337, 371
- Collective unconscious, 4, 23, 265
- Color *see*, black and white, 87

## Glossary

- Columbus, Christopher: 247
- Comedian, 14-22, 204, 321, 347-348, *See also* Postmodern comedies
- Comedy, 63, 72, 79, 84, 161, 204, 250, 261, 263, 266, 322, 327, 348-349  
 Boddy comedy, 59, 323  
 Cynicism of, 348-350  
 Greek, 349  
 Origin of word "comedy," 349  
 Screwball, 325
- Comic relief, 21, 71, 73, 78, 137, 151, 261, 264-265
- Comical sidekick, 73, 78
- Complications, 149
- Computers, 268  
 Influence on storytelling, *see*
- Conflict, *see*, 7, 16, 53-56, 66-68, 78, 96, 97, 104, 118, 139, 153, 166, 168, 170-171, 176, 191, 216, 260, 304, 309, 315-319, 323, 325-331, 333, 351, 356
- Convent (Babe in *King Arthur's*) *Conf. A*, 10, 371
- Conscience, 40-42, 71, 73, 125, 136, 378
- Continuing stories, 37, 45
- Contract, *see*, 10-37, 130, 141, 255, 279, 315-316, 318, 323, 331, 334, 336, 349  
 Concept of, 87, 136
- Cosmo Topper, 325-6
- Cost of *Minor Cross*, *The*, 11, 371
- Courship, 144
- Critics, 6, 148, 136, 157, 129, 161, 188, 175-178, 189, 197  
 Critical, 123, 139, 161, 199, 263  
 Delayed, 168, 192  
 Of the heart, 163, 166-168  
 Of faith or of the spirit, 44, 75, 130, 278, 303
- Crossing the Firm Threshold (page 5), *ii*, *see*, 6, 8, 12-13, 19, 68, 124, 126-132, 139, 233, 283
- Croyle D'Eville, 67
- Crysal Bell, 126
- Cultural imperialism, *see*
- Cultural relativity, 268, 276

- D** Day Duck, 78
- Dance and Rider, 110, 131, 137, 176, 228, 234, 256, 371
- Dance, 3 halts, 342
- Dance, 363, 370

- Dark injustice, 44
- The Nonesuch* (*Ship of Fools*) by Sebastian Brant, 247
- De Nino, Robert, 326
- Dead Apes*, 87, 371
- Death and rebirth, 9, 17, 155-157, 159-61, 164, 178, 183, 197, 199, 212, 217, 244, 267, 279, 283, 245, 247. *See also* Rebirth
- Dead Beasts*, *Nov.*, 109, 213, 371
- Death
- Chasing, 162, 165
  - Confrontation with, 14, 32
  - Dealing with, 32
  - Of ego, 171
  - A taste of, 160, 162, 172, 243
  - Witnessing, 178
- Deception, seeing through, 183
- Defenses, heavy, 132
- Demeter, 245-246
- Demonstration, 163
- Denmark, 260, 342
- Democracy, 9, 216, 225, 228
- Democritean stories, 11, 36, 86, 95, 156, 182, 250. *See also* Cratylus stories
- Dickens, Charles, 209
- Discipline or Dignity, 245, 253, 347
- Discs Down*, *Nov.*, 138, 223, 371
- Discomfort, 163
- Disturbing company, (a, 93-9, 100, 110, 140, 141, 40, 67, 88, 131, 204, 223, 258-259, 263-264, 266, 298, 301, 307, 310, 323)
- Dixey, Will, 177
- Disorientation, 80, 101, 270
- Distraction, 182
- Doctrine of Change*, 324. *See also* Polarity, *f. Change*
- Drives, *See* Secrets
- Dryle, Sir Arthur Conan, 238
- Dy, Myth and Mr. Dyke*, 88, 168, 330, 371
- Drama
- Greek, 203, 321, 333, 341, 358
  - Old rule of, 78
  - Origin of, 342-347, 356
  - Secret of, 357
- Dramatic functions of archetypes, 27
- Ad, 73
  - Heroic, 56-57
  - Hero, 29-30

Graphic style

- Mentor, 40-43
- Shadow, 65-66
- Shapeshifter, 10-62
- Threshold Guardian, 50-52
- Trickster, 77-78
- Triumph—question raising, 83
- Streams, xviii, 4, 21, 30, 36-40, 46, 56, 60, 66, 75, 108, 111, 115, 149, 178, 226, 243, 269, 293-294, 299
- Time, viii, xviii
- Doing *My Duty*, 316, 371
- Discopy, 79
- Dry faun, 177, 330
- Dualism, 315
- Dark, viii, 160, 162, 182, 192, 200, 259
- Dem, 83, 371
- DETD, vi

# E

- Ec, 11, 17, 38, 88, 156, 371
- E of Eden*, 33, 371
- Eater, 349
- Ego, 29-30, 34, 90, 109, 182
  - Death of, 171
  - Order of, 156
  - Transcending, 156, 252
- Ego, Latin, 306
- Egypt, 343, 356
- Egypt, *Book of*, 121, 371
- El Cid, 342, 371
- El Cid, 104, 166-167
- Electric current, 322, 309
  - Electricity, 318-316
- Enantia, 348
- Enix, 16-18, 12, 179, 183, 189, 193, 207, 220, 228, 245, 255, 280-281, 289, 293, *See also Return with the Blue (stage 12)*
  - Of love, 221
  - Of responsibility, 222
  - Sealing, 178, 189-190
  - Of magic, 222
- Elstrum, 340
- Emotion, clarity of, 181
- Empire Under the Sun*, 138, 209, 288, 371

- Foolings*, *cox*, 18, 217, 219, 226, 281, 310  
     *Absent*, 225  
     *Ambiguous*, 228  
     *Conventional (round circle)*, 216  
     *Fairy-tale*, 218  
     *Happy*, *cox*, 216  
     *Open-ended*, 218  
     *Personation in*, 225  
     *You may*, 224  
     *Tragic*, 236  
     *Twist*, 224  
*Formos*, 143, 151, 243, 247, 276, 344, 368. *See also* *Round Table*, *Albion*, and *Formos* (stage 6)  
*Ford*, 71, 137, 323  
*Formalism*, *cox*, 39, 124, 171, 181  
*Formative*, 41, 129  
     *Formis*, 32, 136  
     *Making an*, 86, 89-90  
*Form*, 72, 103, 140, 177, 235, 237, 246, 248-249, 255, 282, 285, 290, 323, 340  
*Formalism*, vii, *cox*, 225, 231, 233  
*Formalism*, 144  
*Form of a village*, 192  
*Formalism*, *Tal*, x-1, 74  
*Formis*, 200, 221, 371  
*Formis*, 286  
*Formis*, 108  
*Formism*, 94-95, 97  
*Formist film analysis*. *See The Fall Movie: The Last King, King, Prince, Prince, The World of De*

- F**
*Fairy tales*, 24, 42, 85, 85, 91, 95, 99, 118, 121, 101-102, 121, 140, 148, 169, 191, 308, 318, 246, 260, 281, 293, 299, 300, 303, 312, 367  
*False Identities*, 208, 281  
*Falsity*, 80 *John*, 72, 137, 330  
*Fantasy*, 50, 86, 88, 111, 342, 250, 299, 305, 310, 335, 350. *See also* *Illusions*  
*For Sale of the World*, *The*, 320  
*Form*, 323, 371  
*Formal*, 59, 97, 103, 114, 125, 153, 168, 228, 322, 371  
*Form of the Bride*, 136, 371  
*Form*. *See* *Refusal of the Call and Christal*



- From Jack*, 61-62, 67  
*See Cool Men*, 3, 332, 371  
*Field of Dreams*, 55-56, 371  
*Fight Club*, 3, 332, 371  
 Film community, international, *see* *See the Hollywood Film*  
*Film*, 47, 61, 101, 250, 269, 330  
 Filmmakers, 10, *see* *see*, *xxiii*, *xxv*, 3, 236, 250, 257, 381, 388, 390  
     *See also* individual filmmakers  
 Films, *See* Extended Gen analysis; Screenplay; individual film  
 Finland, 300  
*Fire Bird*, 11, 371  
 Fire threshold, *See* Crossing the Fire Threshold (stage 5)  
 Fish out of water, *see*, 12  
 Fisher-King, The, 93, 221  
*Fisher King, The*, 13, 97, 371  
*Five Easy Pieces*, 83, 371  
*Flame and the Arrow*, The, 200, 371  
 Flans, *See* Characters; Heroes; Tragic Hero  
 Flans, Loral, 231  
 Focus, *vi*, 113, 124, 146, 167, 224, 239, 254, 303, 308, 310  
 Full wisdom, *xxv*  
 Funnyshowing, 87-88, 96-97  
 Funnel service, 363, 367  
 Formulaic writing, *xxv-xx*, 251, 250, 323  
*For Apache*, 198, 371  
*66 Hours*, 10, 223, 259, 371  
*Four Seasons, The*, 130, 371  
 Five 2006, *xxv*  
 Five, *See* 20th Century Five  
 France, 55-72, 249, 270, 300  
 France, Sir James, 342  
 French, *vi*, 91, 140, 216, 217, 276, 299, 350  
 Friends, 71, *See also* Alby; Buckling; Heroes; Selfish; Team  
     Expendable, 190  
*From*, 262, 357  
 Frodo, 332  
*Full Monty, The*, *xxv*, *xxvi*, 231, 371  
     Extended analysis of, 282-284  
 Fuller, R. Buckminster, *xxv*

- G**  
 Gambling, 86, 102, 140, 241, 256-257, 279  
 Games, playing, *see* 140, 252, 285, 290, 351. *See also* Olympic games  
 Ganges, 270, 272, 326. *See also* *Fils du roi*  
     *Mimes*, 44  
 Gaster, Theodore, 345  
 Gender concerns, *see* 276  
 Genoa, 74  
 Getting to know you scenes, 141, 177  
*Glor of Architecture*, 65, 371  
*Gen*, 88, 91, 156, 184, 217, 371  
 Gimburn, 179  
 Ghana, 74, 109, 360, 283, 287  
 "Gift of the Magi, The" by O. Henry, 119  
 Gifts, 121, 129, 243, 249, 370  
     Eating, 42  
     Giving, 40-41  
     In myth, 41  
     *Mimes*, 42, 55, 117, 123, 126, 180, 166, 242, 295  
 Gingham, 71, 137, 323  
 Gladiators, 358  
 Goa, 346, 368  
 God, *see* 12, 23, 29, 55, 109-110, 43, 59, 62, 74, 78-79, 85, 92, 170-171, 178,  
     181, 191, 201, 243, 244, 247, 271, 279, 281, 290, 308, 329,  
     345-348, 350-357, 368  
     God's call, 109  
     God's plan, 171, 281  
     God's shadow, 163  
     Becoming a god, 181  
*Golden Age, The*, 85, 331  
 Gods, 523, 370-331, 343-348, 345-346, 356-357, 368  
 Going on extremes, 327  
 Goldberg, Whumps, 61, 100  
*Golden Age, The*, by Sir James Fraser, 344  
 Gokhale, 332  
*Go with the Wind*, 212, 371  
 Goulet, Mr. Oxy, 122, 371  
 Grand Guignol, 390  
 Grant, Cary, 101, 56, 102, 144, 168, 302, 307-308  
 Grateful Dead, *The*, 74  
*Great Escape, The*, 138, 371  
 Great Gatsby, *The*, 61  
*Great Train Robbery, The*, 350, 371

Greek Orthodox, 149-150

Greek, 10, 29, 36, 41, 58, 62, 92, 94-95, 119-120, 129, 139, 166, 202, 203, 221, 232

Greeks, 35, 41, 86, 119, 171, 203, 209, 219, 333, 348-349, 347, 368

Greene, Graham:

*Acorn*, 137

*White*, 67, 197

Gregory-Bennett, 700

Grimm, Wilhelm, 299, 300

Growth, *see* vol. 31, 37, 50, 60, 99-100, 102, 205, 212, 350

Function of the hero, 31

Guo Hui's *Company & Dimes*, 106, 274

Gurga, *see* 33, 130, 144, 302, 371

Gullerberg, *See* 21

**H**  
Hales, 348

Hal Prince, 137, 336

Haltom, 232

Hanania, 92

Hanks, 259, 260, 265, 342

Hansen and Greer, 88, 168

Hanson, 126

*He*, by Robert A. Johnson, 93, 373

Healing, 171, 183, 215-216, 231, 245, 273, 294, 299

*Healed One, The*, by Sheila Rowland Adu, 74

Helinger, 342

*Henry W.*, 236

Henry, C., 219

Herald archetypes, *see* 24-26, 55-57, 101-102, 136, 275

Delineating Call to Adventure, 56

Dramatic function of, 56

Psychological function of, 56

Types of, 57

Herald-Learner, *see* 24

Herricks, 43, 45, 71, 119, 121, 180

*Her With a Thousand Faces, The*, by Joseph Campbell, *see* *Introduction*, 3-6, 83, 166, 373

Herz's Journey, *see* vol. 4-20, 231-234, 237, 295:

As a circle or diamond, *see* 187, 227

Analysis of, 216

Comparison with *Itanarré*, *see* 205

- Contemporary critiques of, *xxi-xxii*
- Defined, *xii, xxvi, xxx, 231*
- Evilizing understanding of, *xxiii, xxviii, xxxi*
- Handbook for life, *xiii, xma, xxx*
- Hunting metaphor, *139*
- Identical with Waters's *Journey*, *293*
- Influence on Hollywood, *xv*
- Influence on literature, *xv*
- Outline for plotting, *233-234*
- Stories are polarized, *315-316*
- Seager listed, *7-9, 19*
- Standardized story language, *xx, xxvii*
- Tool for film analysis, *xxx, xxxii, 231-232*
- Use of *Or* as fairly typical example of, *36*
- Wrong uses of, *xxiii-ix*
- Places, *vi, 7, 10, 13-20, 25, 34, 67, 189, 191, 36 also Ann Arbor; Henry's Journey; Topic Places*
- Arica, *34*
- Apparent death of, *161, 162*
- Aultery described, *29-37*
- As narrators, *xxi*
- Catharsis, *37*
- Cause of death, *163*
- Conscience of, *42*
- Critical view of, *xxii*
- Distortions of, *182*
- Eating the role of, *16, 171, 177*
- Evilizing and enemies, *122*
- Faces of, *xx, 37*
- Flowed, *33*
- Gender, *7, 16, 29*
- Granting of new insight, *180*
- Group-oriented, *35*
- Introducing, *87, 90*
- Lies, *36, 176*
- Motivating, *xxv, 13, 42*
- Multiple, *138, 36 also Trans*
- Ordeal of, *18-19, 190*
- Origin of word "hem", *29*
- Psychological function, *29*
- Quizzes about, *xxviii, 28-xxi*
- Retards of, *180, 182*

Relationship with Memoir, 12, 39–47

Reluctance, 11

Revel of, 37, 189

Self-sacrifice of, 29

Taking possession, 172–178

Taming of, 50

Trickster hero, 34

Willing versus unwilling, 34

Witness to drink, 162

*Witness's Journey: The Witness (Journey to Wholeness by Marianne Montebello, rev.)*, 27, 273

Xenophobic culture, vii, vi

Yogi Berra, 87, 105, 147, 200, 321

Zachary, Alfred, 128

Zelig, Adolf, vi, 288, 360

Holidays, 245, 250–251

Holland, 300

Holly, Bud, 268, 274

Hollywood, in, vi, vi–ix, xvii–xxv, 1, 73, 183, 216, 235, 257, 282, 307, 360

Home Tribe, 84, 99, 107, 117, 127, 135, 155, 175, 197, 215. *See* Ordinary World (page 1)

Humor, viii, 49, 117, 249, 372

Humor, pain, 62

Hubris, 92

Human qualities, symbols of, *See* Archetypes

Hydra, 71

**I**  
City, 324

Identification, 80–91, 306–307

Audience, 30, 250, 252–253, 264, 304

Illusion, 29, 111, 129–130, 145, 181, 193, 246, 308, 309, 342–343

IMAX, 337

Interpretation, 30, 51, 124, 237

Of lessons by Hem, 198, 209, 227, 331

*Indiana Jones and the Last Crusade*, 125, 271

*Indiana Jones and the Temple of Doom*, 14, 271

Indiana Jones, 14, 169, 238

Indian Valley, 241

*Intros, Tw. by Darius*, 265, 270

Information, plotting, 143

Immature, 9, 13, 86, 174–180, 198, 251  
Sexual, 43

*In-Law, The* 63, 371  
*Innocent Case: An Approach to the Innocent Case (Stage 7)*  
 Inner members 47  
 Inner problems 80, 96, 217, 242  
 Insanity 327  
 Introducing Himself 87, 90, 99, 238  
 Introduction 72, 90  
 Inventions, see 42, 165, *See also* *Metaphor* and *Metaphor*  
 Immigration 245, 249  
 Islam 71  
*It's a Wonderful Life* 74, 250, 371  
 Italy 19, 241, 300

**J**  
*Jackie Robinson* 274  
*James Bond* movies 48, 199  
*Java* 12, 177, 200, 371  
 Judaism 350  
*Jurassic Park* 240  
*Just* 10, 21  
 Justice 74  
*Johannessen, Søren* 304  
*Johannessen, Paul* 100  
*Johannessen, Robert A.* 95, 126, 371  
*Journey: An The Hero's Journey* 200  
 Joyce, James 181  
*Johnson* 143, 147  
*John, Carl G., a. s. n. t.* 4, 23, 20, 60, 103, 299, 304  
*Johannes, Elizabeth* 100  
 June 74

**K**  
*Kane, Ed. Th.* 110, 224, 371  
*Kane* 140  
 Karin 245  
*King Arthur* 10, 30, 40, 65, 71, 162, 221, 238, 290, 342  
*King Kong* 91, 99, 170, 192, 212, 238, 371  
*King Richard* 322  
*King Solomon's Mines* 238  
*King-Tier* 247

Kōng, 323, 344–347  
 Kōryū, the, 323–328  
 Kōrimoto, James, xi  
 Kōri, see Densetsu  
 Kubler-Ross, Elizabeth, 182

**L**ack experienced by Hien, 51, 103  
*Lady from Shanghai*, the, 57, 371

Language

Of character, see Archetypes

Of story, standardized, see *The Hero's Journey*

Laura, Walter, 78

*Law Boy Saint*, the, 86, 371

*Law chance*, 151, 207, 219

*Law of the Atlantic*, the, 136, 371

*Law Snapper*, the, 355

Laughlin, s. 71, 77–78, 203–204, 220, 240, 251, 265, see also *Unweaver*

*Lawless of Arabia*, 136, 182, 371

*Layers of their Ours*, A, 44, 114, 130, 141, 194, 223, 371

Leap of Faith, 129–130, 132

Lessons, see Incorporation

*Lethal Hijack* series, 92, 323, 371

Letters as magical symbols, 294

*Let's Live*, 326, 371

*Life and Times of Judge Roy Bean*, the, 135, 371

Linear stories, versus web-like, see s. 263, 279, 281

*Live King*, the, see, see, 75, 131, 371

extended analysis of 258–256

Little Golden Books, see s.

*Little Ranger*, the, 36–37, 137, 192

*Lost Nite's Talking*, 723, 371

*Looking for Mr. Goodbar*, 15, 62, 371

*Love for*, 124, 371

*Love of the King*, the, the Two Times, 332, 338, 371

*Love of Transience*, 304, 371

Love series, (A, 144, 166, 168, 297–298, 181, 184, see also *Cosmopolitan Marriage*)

*Love Story*, 304, 371

*Love story*, 225, 250, 253, 257, 322

Lullabies, 320

- M**  
 Mac, William, 328  
 Mac, Mrs. de, 222  
 Malicious and Child, 155  
 Magic light motif, 5, 191  
 Magnetic, 116, 317, 318, 322, 364  
 Magnets, 317-319  
 Malicious, *the*, 140  
 Malicious, 117  
 Marge, *the*  
 Mantoux, 182, 271  
 Mankind, 301-303  
 Marriage, 62, 86, 96, 318-319, 240-241, 251, 388, 301-302  
     *Sacred*, 166-168, 177, 219  
 Mary (see *Mary*, *the*)  
 Mass, 24, 34, 111-112, 150, 158, 251, 274, 321-322  
     *Of Herald*, 37, 101-102  
     *Of Hero*, 33, 130  
     *Of Medina*, 168  
     *Of Mornon*, 44, 66, 86, 121, 124-125, 242  
     *Of Shadow*, 66-67  
     *Of Stage-dishes*, 62-63, 66  
     *Of technology*, 257  
     *Of Threshhold* (*Guardsman*), 111  
     *Of Trachon*, 79  
     *Of Tyrant*, 170  
     *Of Vicar*, 150, 262, 252  
 Mates, *the*, 330, 371  
 Matthew Garth, 170, 177, 190, 203, 330  
 Meaning is occurs, 217, 231, 237, 247, 276, 281, 283, 293, 362  
 Medicine man or woman, 66  
 Madam Man, 200, 371  
 Meeting with the Mentor (*stage 4*), 116-125, 305, 333  
 Mems, 120  
 Minute archetype, 86-87, 63, 66-68, 111, 118, 120-125, 128, 131, 136, 150,  
     162, 170, 181, 186, 198, 209-210, 222, 234, 239, 242, 261, 293  
     *See also* Meeting with the Mentor (*stage 4*)  
     *As evoked Hero*, 122  
     *Avoiding clichés*, 120-121  
     *Character in The Odyssey*, 117, 119, 120  
     *Client as prototype*, 119  
     *Critical influence on hero*, 123  
     *Further figure*, 259



## Character Types

- Flexibility of, 40
- Function of, 120
- Gains from, 41, 131, 150, 165
- Herald Archetype as, 37, 101
- As innocent, 42, 165
- Misdirection by, 121
- Secrets drawn by, 122
- Multiple mentors, 45
- Overlapping with Ally, 75
- Overlapping with Trickster, 138
- Placement of, 47
- Relationship to Hero, 121
  - In *The Full Moon*, 263
  - In *The Sun King*, 261-265
  - In *Fable Fables*, 270-281
  - In the *Joe Hill* movies, 286-289
  - In *Titanic*, 239-243
- Types of, 44
  - Comic, 45
  - Containing, 45
  - Dark, 44
  - Fallen, 44
  - Inner, 47
  - Mentor, 45
  - Shamanic, 46
  - Uses for the writer, 134
- Meta-patterns, 330
- Metaphor, see, *ex.*, 25, 68, 84-85, 90, 100, 114, 131, 136, 159, 183, 270, 229, 232-234, 234-253, 260, 285, 295, 300, 346, 360
- College *see-also*, 199
- Humor, 119
- Mickey Mouse, 71
- Multiple Couplers, 90, 100, 371
- Minutemen Night-Dress, *cf.*, 303
- Misdirection, 141
- Snake Eye, 103, 105, 371
- Woman Doctor, 15, 271
- Murder, Mariposa, 20, 268, 274
- Murphy, Michele, *cf.*-*is*, xii
- Morphology of the Journey, Theory Vladimir Propp, 24, 40, 373
- Mutilification, 345-349
- Mysticism, *see*, 33, 34, 42, 47, 55-56, 93, 94, 108, 124, 180, 183, 274, 287

- Moore studies*, *in*, *on*, *with*, *see*, *also*, *entries*, 235, 257, 325, 360  
 Murray, Bill, *see*, 373  
 Mr. Big, 190, 253, 269-271, 273  
 Mr. José Guío Rodríguez, 10, 122, 371  
 Mrs. Doolittle, 322, 371  
 Munich, 2  
 Mundlock, Murray, *see*, 37, 373  
 Murray, Bill, 304  
*Myd in de Meuse* (book/CD-ROM), *see*  
 Mythology  
     Celtic, *see*, 235  
     Classical, 42, 191  
     Gillies, 41  
     Munich, *in*, 118  
     Notes, *see*,  
     Pinner, *of*, *see*,

- N**  
 Nantagón, 247  
 Native American themes, 79  
 Nant, *see*, 56, 62, 102, 140, 201, 208  
 Natives, 92, 244, 271  
 Neumanns, 50-51, 66, 97, 148, 151, 190, 199  
 New Year's, 244, 330  
*New York Times*, *see*  
 New York, 88, 102, 210, 221, 235, 238, 249-250  
 Nietzsche, Friedrich, 157  
*No Hay Dios*, 210, 371  
 Non-linear narrative, *see*  
 Nonlinear thinking. *See* Linear stories  
*Nona Ray*, 320, 371  
 Norse myth, *see*, 78, 178  
*Not by Numbers*, 91, 138, 144, 168, 207, 322, 371  
 Not only... but also (NABBA), 306  
 Novena, 56, 102, 208, 322, 371  
*Navy Pictures*, *see*, 325, 371

**O**  
*Obedience*, *see*, 91, 12, 49-50, 129, 136, 145-147, 152-153, 161, 190, 308, 307,  
 309

*Oblivion*, *the*, *see*, 39, 49, 56, 62-63, 117, 119-130, 178, 149, 299, 373

## Chapter Eight

- Oedipus: 35, 33, 170, 219, 358  
 Ogres and a Gentleman, *As*: 10-12, 11, 18, 63, 66, 156, 371  
 Ogiek the Dims: 342  
 Olier-Eon: 121  
 Olympia: 313  
 Olympic games: 71, 333  
 Olympia, Mount: 343  
 On Galin Pond: 170-371  
 Open-ended story form: 216, 218, 226  
 Opposites: 30-31, 66, 163, 178, 201, 310, 334  
     Head-on attack: 30, 144  
     Finishing off: 188-190  
     Misc. scenarios: 153, 163  
     Outsitting: 78  
     Undersitting: 277  
     Undersitting: 151, 182  
 Opposites: 74, 82, 61, 240-241, 315, 321, 333-337, 335, 337, 358  
     Opposites attract: 317, 319  
     Opposite sex: 16, 39-61, 67  
 Optical illusion running out of: 303  
 Ordeal (stage 8)  
     Preparation for: 144  
 Ordinary People: 74, 91, 118, 129, 207, 371  
 Ordinary World (stage 1): *See also* Special World  
 Orientation: 26, 35, 300, 304, 313, 334, 350, 361  
 Origin of drama: 341-342  
 Oria: 345, 356  
 Other problems: 88, 96-97, 228-279, 241-242, 263

**P** *See* *Your Car Is Dead*: vi, 372

Pandora: 72, 342

Par: 366

Paric: 162, 232, 366-367

Parish: 120, 371

Parasent Pictures, *et*: 235-236, 256

Parent, standing up to: 100-170

Parthenon: 348

Parsons: 33, 71, 137, 173, 322-323, 326

    Ideal: 90, 166

    Romantic: 59

- Sexual, 43
- Shogunlusting, 180, 223
- Shōka, 308
- Shōwa, Carol S., 37, 373
- Shōwa, 113
- Shōryōjin
  - Discovered, 182
  - Days of, 239, 267
  - New, 86, 143, 152, 180-181, 219, 226
- Shūjū, 320
- Shūjū, 320
- Shūjū, 239
- Shūjū, *aka Kase*, 10, 241-242, 251, 347, 348
- Shūjū, 41, 84, 165
- Shūjūjū
  - And the Archetypes, 26
  - Complete, 33, 96, 167
  - Exacts of the Series, 24, 91, 166
  - How, 85
  - New, 198
  - Polished, 167, 326, 352, 334
- Shūjū, 36, 177, 251, 372
- Shūjū, 533
- Shūjū, 40, 42, 177, 372
- Shūjū information, 43
- Shūjū, vii
- Shūjū, 333, 372
- Shūjū, 245, 345
- Shūjū justice, 230, 260, 277, 307-308
- Shūjū, vii to 240, 267, 314-338. *See also* *Agony Historical*
  - Attraction of potential conflict, 318
  - And character arc, 323
  - Examples of, 324
  - Given orientation, 334
  - Issues, 312
  - Distanced universes, 311
  - Role of, 317
  - Seeks resolution, 330
  - Suspense created by, 318
- Shūjū *Adventures*, 26, 257, 372
- Shūjū, taking, 177-178, 218
- Shūjū of *Mya, The*, with Bill Moyers (television series), xxx, 31, 373

(Chapter 14)

- Down, signals of, 51
- Drumlines, 300
- Duration, 95, 306. *See also* Timing
- Etiquette, 168, 274
- Evil Woman, 34, 40, 114, 125, 173, 372
- Flow of Tide, *The*, 173, 372
- Fludium, more water, more, 88
- Footnote Challenges, 238
- Forecasting, 10, 60-61, 65, 67, 90, 98, 146, 148, 183, 280, 277.  
*See also* Determination  
 Negative outcome in, 100
- Footstep, 86-87, 223  
*in* *Pole Position*, 268, 272
- Force, 208
- Frapp, Vladimir, 24, 40-41, 101, 117, 373
- Fracturing, 7, 29, 42, 66, 114, 240, 266, 270, 272, 283, 289, 320, 323, 331, 333
- Fracture, signs of, 4
- Fyda, 169, 332, 357, 372
- Psychological functions of archetypes, *see* 27  
 Adh, 75  
 Herald, 56  
 Hero, 29  
 Mentor, 40  
 Shadow, 65-66  
 Shape-shifter, 60  
 Threshold Guardian, 50  
 Trickster, 77
- Fable Entry, *The*, 41, 44, 372
- Fake Faces, *see* *act*, 231, 372  
 Extended analysis of, 267, 282
- Finalism, 330, 271, 277, 281, 308
- Progression, 343-349
- Pit-in-Basin, 118, 355



- Quest for Zen*, 10A, 307, 316, 372
- Questioning the Journey, *see* 87, 105, 114, 125, 132, 141, 153, 173, 184, 194, 212, 220
- Quiet Alarms, 202

- R**
- Rabbit Heroes, 78
  - Rebels of the Lost Ark, 125, 372
  - Rein Men, 132, 372
  - Reptuzel, 85, 299
  - Residual, *see*:
    - Residual inclusion, 307, 358, 351
    - Residuals & Cause, 35, 372  - Refrains, 162, 302, 211–212, 257, 359. *See also* Death and rebirth
  - Recognition, *see*, 93, 183, 119, 264, 321
  - Reconciliation, 101, 139, 140, 145
  - Red Eyes, 42, 75, 93, 103, 109, 118, 176, 177, 180, 203, 350, 372
  - Rebels of the Call (*stage 3*), *see* *A*, 9, 11, 109, 107–114, 130, 188, 205, 211–214, 265, 268, 273, 287
    - Acting as Hero, 109
    - Ascendancy, 108
    - Conflicting Calls, 109
    - Excuses, 108
    - Leading to tragedy, 109
    - Positive Refrains, 109
    - Secret Divor. The, 112
    - Threshold Guardians, 111
    - Willing Heroes, 110
  - Reverend, Max, 89
  - Rebels of the Day, 378, 372
  - Recognition, *see*, 144, 150
    - In Approach (*stage 7*), 149
    - In Catharsis, 159
  - Reptiles, 300
  - Responsibility, taking more, *in-s*, *in*, 21, 104, 124, 185–181, 177, 228, 261, 266, 309
    - Ellein *of*, 222
  - Resurrection (*stage 11*), *see*, *A*, 8–3, 16–17, 19, 159, 169, 188, 193, 197
    - Catharsis *in*, 203
    - Change *in*, 210
    - Character as disciples *in*, 203
    - Clowns *in*, 201
    - Cleaning *in*, 198
    - Climax *in*, 202
    - Death and rebirth of magic heroes *in*, 200
    - False disciples *in*, 208
    - Hero action *in*, 199
    - Hero's last chance, 207

## Omnipotent Sight

- Incorporation in, 210
- New personality, 198
- Physical control in, 199
- Proof in, 208
- Romantic choice in, 201
- Sacrifice in, 209
- Shadows in, 200
- Two great oracles in, 199
- Which your step in, 207
- Realism, 185–190, 219
- Rever of the Job*, To, 13, 16, 68, 209, 285, 287, 312
- Rever of the light, 349
- Return with the Elise (stage 1E) in, 6, 8–9, 205, 212, 215–228, 233, 275, 280
  - Always ending, 225
  - Elise of love, 221
  - Elise of responsibility, 222
  - Elise of tragedy, 222
  - Epilogue, 223
  - Functions of, 219–223
  - Lack of time, 225
  - Details of, 224–225
  - Punctuation of, 225
  - Rever and punishment, 200
  - Sadly but (no) more, 225
  - Surprise, 219
  - Too many endings, 224
  - Unsettled subplot, 224
  - World is changed, 221
- Revenge plots, 11, 91, 190
- Revered, 367, 318–320
  - Amade's concept of, 320
  - Catastrophe, 321
  - Doctrine of Changes, 324–325
  - In Recognition scenes, 321–322
  - Of fortune, 319–320
  - Of polity, 318, 325, 326
  - Other end of the spectrum, 320
  - Revered of the unreal, 327–328
  - Romantic, 322

- Reward (Seeing the Sword)** (stage 9), vi, 8-9, 16, 19, 172, 173, 179-180, 182, 184, 187-188, 190, 205, 216-221, 232, 244-245, 276, 278-282, 284, 301
- *Caroline* scenes, 178
  - *Celebration*, 176
  - *Claremont*, 180
  - *Discernment*, 182
  - *Eliza* shifts, 179
  - *Enigma*, 181
  - *Initiation*, 179
  - *Love scenes*, 177
  - *New perceptions*, 180
  - *Seeing through deception*, 180
  - *Seeing the sword*, 178
  - *Self-realization*, 181
  - *Taking possession*, 177
- Rog. The** 249, 265-268
- Rites of passage**, 15
- River, The**, 46
- Ritual**, 15, 80, 144, 146, 180, 188, 226, 252-253, 256, 262, 271, 280, 303, 306, 313, 341, 352, 357
- Rivets**, 138
- Road Back, The** (stage 10), vi, *main text*, 6, 8-9, 17, 19, 157-158, 184, 188-194, 205, 244, 274, 277-278, 279, 284, 289
- *Chase scenes*, 191
  - *Chase sequences: Pursuit by Admitta*, 191
  - *Magic Flight*, 191
  - *Motivation*, 189
  - *Retaliation*, 189
  - *Setbacks*, 192
  - *Villain escape*, 192
- Roadrunner, The**, 78
- Robin Hood**, 35, 203, 321
- Ruin Her, Prince of Thieves**, 200, 372
- S&P**, 12, 108, 372
- Rolling domains**, 302
- Rolling-Stones, The**, 299
- Romance**, 12, 13, 62, 74-75, 84, 88, 97, 118, 140, 144, 161, 166, 221, 235, 344, 250, 254, 257, 361, 388, 322, 323, 336. *See also* *Love scenes*
- *Artifacts*, 238, 349
  - *Writers and novels, etc.*, 74, 88, 211, 250



- Remaining the Same*, 13, 17, 62, 88, 91, 104, 107, 111, 166, 199, 210, 211, 221, 272
- Remains, 151, 219, 252, 334, 356
- Romantic choice, 208
- Romantic comedies, 11, 15–16, 45–46, 331
- Roma, 121
- Rough landing, 130
- Rules, 143, 270, 287
  - Of being, 323
  - Of Polarity, 315, 317
  - Of the slowdown, 209
  - Of the Special World, 13, 121, 115–116, 120, 141, 146, 273
  - Of storytelling, iv, xvii–viii, xviii, 169, 232, 257
- Rumpelstiltskin, 121, 299–303, 305, 310–311
- Rock Star* series, 323, 372

**S**adler, 209, 212, 220–221, 244, 245, 252, 253, 258, 279, 280, 312–313, 345–347. *See also* Self-sacrifice

In Renaissance stage, 218

Witness to, 159

Saidstet beer water (or not water), 108, 222

Saint, Eva Marie, 144, 168, 207

Saint Clara, 334

Schönmann, Friedrich, 238

Schönemanns, Arnold, 209

Science fiction, xviii, xxi, 223, 252, 268, 305

Scottish play, the (*Macbeth*), 35, 306

Screenplays, v, vi, xviii, xxi, 29, 31, 40, 53, 83, 98, 227, 127, 133, 155, 165, 175, 230, 246, 267, 268, structuring, 8

Seaborn, De, 36, 91, 288, 372

Season, 80, 144, 152

Schmittal, Sam

Seasons, 180–181, 267, 242–250, 259, 255, 238, 263, 266, 307, 311, 323, 340, 357

Law of the Secret Door, 112

Secker, 14, 137, 83–84, 95, 107, 117, 127, 133–143, 155, 166, 175, 187, 197, 215

As defined by Propp, 110

Seizing the Sword, *See* Reward (Seizing the Sword) (stage V)

- Self-realization, 311, 319  
 Self-sacrifice, esp. 29, 235, 241, 244  
 Soothsayer, 149, 192, 235, 209, 320, 351  
 Son, 20, 29-35, 43-55, 59, 61, 63, 145, 162, 202, 222, 274, 283-284, 304, 360  
     Opposite, 16, 59, 60-1, 67  
 Sound imitations, 41  
 Shadow archetype, cf. *img.* 4, 23-26, 34, 38, 44, 48, 64-68, 78-79, 101, 104,  
     127-130, 140, 155, 163-165, 167, 170, 173, 184, 189-190, 192,  
     198, 202, 208-209, 240, 251, 261, 271, 277-278, 281, 293  
     Domination, 153  
     Uranian function, 68  
     Facing, 163  
     Devil as God's Shadow, 163  
     Humanizing, 67  
     Mask of, 66  
     Psychological function, 65  
*Solipsum in Lira*, 320, 372  
 Shakespeare, plays of 55, 72, 86, 103, 259, 283, 303, 356  
 Shamanic territory, 149  
 Shaman, 20, 46, 112, 117, 119, 126, 148-149, 163, 197, 198, 268-269, 273,  
     280, 292-293, 342  
     Anti-writers, 294-295  
*Shen, Sh.*, 137, 159, 192, 372  
*Shopenhöfer in hexym.* vi, 4, 21, 23-26, 34, 48, 58-63, 66-67, 173, 177, 209,  
     261, 270, 274, 293  
     Dramatic function, 61  
     Mask of, 65  
     Psychological function, 60  
     Anti-projective, 60  
*Sh.*, by Robert A. Johnson, 126, 373  
*Shiny, Th.*, 168, 372  
*Shy of Book, Th.*, by Sebastian Bunt, 247  
 Shylock, 139, 164, 190, 191, 205-206, 212, 265, 287  
 Shyok, 255  
 Sidekick, 73, 77-78, 137, 165, 251, 280  
*Silence of the Lamb, Th.*, 67, 125, 173, 192, 212, 372  
*Silly Act, EJ*, 503, 341, 184, 372  
*Slingshot Blues, Th.*, 67, 211, 298, 307, 372  
 Small-a-victim, 355  
*Son Who, GJ*, 67, 118, 251, 299, 372  
 "Somehow Over the Rainbow," 304

## Onstage Style

- Social Wield, *act*, 10, 12-20, 17-20, 32, 36, 46, 49, 52, 72, 85-88, 96,  
 127-132, 134-141, 143-144, 146, 153, 167, 178, 187, 189, 191,  
 193-194, 198-199, 201, 207-208, 210, 212, 220, 226, 233, 239,  
 243-245, 255, 260, 273, 276, 283, *see also* Crossing the First Threshold  
 (stage 5); Tests; Allies; Enemies; Threshold; Outfit; The Soul Seek
- Furnishings of 37
- Horses remaining in, 36, 167
- Threshold Guardians, 129
- Speedy Gnomes, 78
- Spoons, 44, 138, 333, 334, 347, 351
- Springmeets, *Fella*, vi, vii
- Stakes:
  - Establishing what's at stake, 94
  - Highest, 128, 149, 199-200
- See also* 320
- See Also*, 33, 39, 47, 68, 75, 86, 118, 134-139, 139, 191-192, 178, 207, 209,  
 231, 237, 285, 290, 311, 373
- Storytelling, *act*, 4
- Stories, *see also* individual games:
  - Circular versus open-ended, *act*, 716-718, 229
  - Continuing, 37, 45
  - Cutting out, 43, 56, 99-107, 120, 123
  - Handling large numbers of, *act*
  - Linear versus web-like and non-linear, *act*, 168, 279, 281
  - Origin of, 341-342
  - Structural language for, *act*, xia
- Storytellers:
  - Australian, *act-act*, 216
  - European, *act-act*, *act*, 216, 299, 368
  - Of the Game, 243, 352
  - Oval, 226, 303
  - Roman, 368
- Storytelling:
  - In the computer age, *act*, 288, 293, 317, 336, 351
  - Design principles of, *act*, *act*, *act*, 250
  - Healing power of, 213-215, 243, 293, 299
- Strong, The*, 62, 372
- Strangers as a Team, 100, 372
- Strophe, 321
- Structures, *act*, 19, 159, 161, 213-214, 236-237, 245-259, 267-268
  - Central cross, 157-158
  - Circular, 217

- Comedy, 204  
 Delayed crisis, 157-158  
 Four-movement, 348  
 Design template (Hero's journey as), 233  
 Demanded by needs of story, 87, 231-233  
 Mistic, 285  
 Open-ended, 228  
 Of personality, 112, 131, 171, 183  
 Three-act, 128-129  
   In *Form*, 236-237, 243, 249-250  
*Scylonia*, 202, 216, 233  
   unresolved, 224  
 Suggestibility  
   *Cross-identification*, 86, 270, 297  
 Tallinn, 1st, 201  
*Seven Clues*, 250, 272  
 Superman, 27, 92  
 Suspense, 19, 121, 200, 214, 235, 257  
   In the Return stage, 214  
   In Return with the Hero stage, 237  
*Suzanne*, 15, 61, 78, 112, 207, 238, 243, 257, 257, 262  
   Created by primary, 218, 223  
 Sweden, 200, 242  
*Sword*, 242. *See also* Seizing the Sword (page 10)  
   Bridge, 207  
   Broken, 123, 176, 246  
   Magic, 16, 19, 41, 123, 178, 273  
   Setting, 175, 178, 180, 278  
   Symbol of the will, 178  
*Sword*. *See* Seizing the Sword  
*Symbionism*, 250, 254-255, 271, 273, 285, 294, 304, 325, 330, 332, 345-346,  
   349-350, 355-356, 360, 362  
*Symphony for the Dead*, 299  
 Synchronicity, 100, 299  
 Springs in *Form*, 257

**T**
 Tale of Two Cities, 4, 209  
 Main symbol, 325  
 Taut ends, 26, 122, 130, 178, 206  
 Tea, 31

- Teaching, *see*, *see*, 41
- Function of Mentor, 40, 46, 117-119, 122-123, 163, 239, 242-244, 261, 264-265
- Let's, *see*, 305
- Terms, 65, 72, 138, 140-141, 145, 151, 192, 223, 305, 313-314, 330
- Television, *see*, *see*, *see*, 10, 37, 73, 125, 192, 210, 232-233, 280, 252-267, 275, 280, 285, 307, 331-333, 350-351
- Temple, *see*, 23
- Temptation, 17, 100, 109, 133, 210, 261, 269-274, 276, 386-387, 289, 293, 332
- Tenets, points of, *see*, 156, 192, 202, 204, 216, 249, 258, 312-313, 319-321, 348, 351, 356-358, 360
- Unlabeled, 78
- Triumph & Judgment Day, 68, 194, 209, 372
- Trinitarian The, 68, 209
- Trinitarian, *see*, 68, 330, 372
- Trials of Endurance, 223, 372
- Trials, 148. *See also* Trials, Allied, Triumvir (stage 6)
- Impossibles, 148
- Trials, Allied, *see* Enemies (stage 6), *see*, 5, 8, 9, 13-14, 17, 19, 52, 66, 94, 131, 134-141, 143, 148, 160, 189, 205, 208, 210, 217, 243-244, 257, 263, 265, 273, 274, 276, 293, 332, 349. *See also* Allied, Enemies, Tests
- Trials (Temporary Status), 350, 372
- Trials & Losses, 138, 153, 164, 372
- Trials, *see*, 4, 63, 94-97, 217, 228-229, 232, 239, 313
- Defiant, 95
- Of *See* in Translation, 304
- Of *Pub* *See*, 268, 272, 281
- Of the *See* *See* *See*, 286
- Of *See*, 243, 250, 253
- The *See* The, *see*, 372
- Threshold Guardians *see* *see*, *see*, *see*, 24, 25-26, 44, 49-52, 57, 61, 66, 111, 129, 138, 141, 143-145, 147-148, 151, 171, 182, 216, 243, 274, 282
- Dynamic function, 50
- Incorporating rather than defeating, 51
- Miscon as, 112
- Psychological function, 50
- Spalling new power, 51
- Ways of dealing with, 50-52, 79, 129, 132

- Timonides, 44, 50, 107, 112-113, 119, 124-130, 135-137, 148, 150, 163, 199,  
 205, 207, 211, 253, 241-23. *See also* Crossing the Five Threshold (page 5)
- Approaching, 128
- Creating, 130, 270-271, 273, 276, 283
- Dramatic change and contrast, 87
- Eerie, 134, 127-128, 131, 132, 135, 153, 157-158, 189
- Rough language, 130
- Second, 19
- Third, 19
- Timonides, 44, 57, 61-62, 87, 108-109, 107, 277, 322
- The Endowment*, *see* 74, 372
- Timonides, 97
- Triple Tre*, 357, 372
- Titania, 303
- Titanic*, *see* *see*, 231, 234, 269, 282, 320, 330-372
- extended analysis of, 235-237
- Tides, 16, 84-85, 190, 335
- Tide comb, 270, 272, 273
- Titchbourne, 330
- Tom Dawson, 93, 103, 109, 170, 199, 207, 209
- Tom Sawyer, 85
- Tonia, 322, 372
- Topsy*, 325-326, 372
- Toss*, 100, 372
- Tossing* *into* *The*, 357, 372
- Trading Place*, 10, 223, 323, 326, 372
- Tragedy*, 92, 109, 118, 183, 210, 212, 219, 222, 238, 238, 240, 253, 257, 258,  
 296-247, 249, 266
- Dramatic refusal leads to, 109
- Potential vs. Memoirs-Hess conflicts, 121, 124
- Tragic Green*, *see* 44, 92, 222, 308
- Traverse*, 92
- Travis*, 42
- Tragic Heroes*, 14-15, 92-93, 222, 377
- Death and Rebirth *of*, 200-201
- Warnings for, 103, 109
- Tragic truth*, 219, 222, 236, 246, 251, 252, 282, 283, 289, 308, 322-323, 330
- Traps*, 346
- Travels of the Irons Master*, *The*, 221, 372
- Travels and types*, *see* 23, 26, 30, 33, 50, 57, 63, 67, 72-79, 100, 150, 173, 179,  
 216, 223, 261, 293
- Dramatic function, 78

Harvey, as, 34, 78

Psychological functions, 77

Tells, 122

Trust the Path, vii, 364-369

Truth, psychological, 4

Twice Bird, 78

20th Century Fox, in, vol. 162, 235-236, 258, 282, 323, *See also* Fox 2000

two-hander, 323

## U

UCLA (Extension Writers' Program), *see*:

Underworld, 10, 119, 139, 180, 241-242, 251, 255, 269, 273, 277, 331, 348

Utopian, 85, 139, 144, 153, 156, 164, 194, 226, 372

Unity, 315, 344

Universal qualities, 30

USC film school, *see*:

## V

Values, *see*, 19, 136, 146, 238, 239, 369

Of *see*, 201

Of *illum*, 164

Prothymic values, 235, 258

Vampire tales, 16, 34, 48, 273

Vaudville, 349

Vegas, 80, 207, 355, 372

Village, *see*, 342

Villains, *see*, 12-18, 17, 20, 30-31, 33, 35, 37, 46, 49, 50, 57, 63, 65, 66, 69,

101, 121, 128, 137-138, 151, 106, 162-164, 169, 173, 189-190, 192,

199-201, 210, 220, 240, 245-246, 254, 279, 286, 288, 305, 308, 318

*See also* Shadow archetype

Escaping, 104, 102

Death of, 164, 209, 209, 220

Hears in their own minds, 33, 67-68, 165

Hero's Shadow, 104

Hesitations of, 151, 153, 200

Reconciliation, 101

Sub-illum, 140

Village antagonists, 65

Village, *see*, 372

Volkswagen, 357

Wagner, Richard, 249, 285-286

- W**  
 Wages, 332, 371  
 Wants vs. Needs, 305  
 War movies, 26, 223, 231  
 War, 33, 37, 78, 100, 104, 163, 166, 181-182, 206, 232, 267, 331-332, 333  
     Civil, 104  
     Gulf, 269  
     Trojan, 62, 118, 249  
     Viet Nam, 198  
     World War II, 86, 138, 177  
 Warnings, 40-43, 48, 92, 103, 110-112, 129, 147, 180, 222, 241, 258, 301, 308  
     For Tragic Events, 103  
 Watch your step (in Resurrection stage), 207  
 Wealth rules, 16, 66  
*Who Dug, Do*, 333  
 Western culture, see, 36, 116, 233, 248, 269  
 Westerns, 13, 26, 36, 47, 73-74, 93, 122, 130, 157, 139, 171, 192, 196, 200, 288, 328, 330, 337  
 "When You Wish Upon a Star," 307  
*Who Lured Roger Rabbit?*, 140, 372  
*Who Said, Do*, 201, 372  
*Who Dug, Do*, 33, 372  
 Will, 31, 35, 127, 170, 178-179, 241, 271, 283, 287, 309-310, 312  
 Willing and unwilling characters, 29, 34, 43-44, 49, 62, 104, 198, 110, 112, 114, 130, 132, 148-149, 152, 156, 177, 207, 283, 309-312  
 Willow, see, 372  
 Wisdom of the body, see also, 354-361  
 Wisdom, see, also, 7, 18, 31, 39-40, 45, 47, 117, 123, 189, 197, 254, 277, 292, 300-301. See also Wisdom of the Body  
     Athena goddess of, 120  
     Bringing home (char of), 198, 221, 227  
     Sources of, 79, 119  
 Wise Old Man or Woman, see, 1, 12, 15, 20, 23, 26, 39, 45-47, 112, 119, 120-121, 123, 181. See also Mentor Archetype  
 Wish, 97, 114, 128, 147-148, 128, 297, 280, 381, 300, 301, 303-310, 312, 326, 328, 333, 370  
     Autism, 307  
     Death wish, 88  
     Power of wishing, 304, 308-309  
     Progression from wishing to willing, 309, 312  
     Wants vs. Needs, 305  
*Who's, Do*, 201, 372





## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

---



Christopher Vagler is one of Hollywood's premier story consultants and a popular speaker on screenwriting, movies, and media.

He is president of Storytrch, a literary consulting firm that helps writers, producers, and studio executives shape their projects.

Storytrch provides a complete range of services including evaluation of screenplays, novels, and concepts; detailed

development notes; and expert story analysis for copyright litigation.

You can visit Storytrch's website at [www.cbscreenwriting.com](http://www.cbscreenwriting.com)

Storytrch rates and other services are available upon request from [vagler@christophervagler.com](mailto:vagler@christophervagler.com)

## CINEMATIC STORYTELLING

## CINEMATIC STORYTELLING

THE 100 MOST POWERFUL  
FILM CONVENTIONS EVERY  
FILMMAKER MUST KNOW

JENNIFER VAN SILL



How do directors use camera distance to suggest conflict? How do screenwriters

exploit film space to show change? How does editing style determine emotional response?

Many first-time writers and directors do not see these questions. They keep the huge creative distance of the film medium, defaulting to dialog to tell their screen story. Yet, most movies are carried by sound and picture. The industry's most successful writers and directors have mastered the cinematic conventions specific to the medium. They have furnished non-dialog techniques to create some of the most evocative moments in movie history.

This book is intended to help writers and directors more fully realize the medium's inherent compelling powers. It contains 100 non-dialog techniques that have been used by the industry's top writers and directors. From *Metropolis* and *Chinatown* to *Dear John* and *RV*, the book illustrates — through 500 frame grabs and 75 script excerpts — how the strongest storytelling devices specific to film were isolated.

You will learn:

- How non-dialog film techniques can advance story
- How master screenwriters exploit cinematic conventions to create powerful scenes.

"Cinematic Storytelling seems a great fit in terms of concise information and perfect chosen scenes, and it also catches our... and hits... an emotion core that every book of this nature either miss or are afraid of."

— Kevin Sheridan, Director, *Star Trek: Co-writer, In America*

"Here is a uniquely fresh, accessible, and truly original contribution to the field. Jennifer van Sill takes her readers to a wholly new domain, integrating aspects of screenwriting with all the film world in a way I've never before seen. It is essential reading not only for screenwriters but also for filmmakers of every stripe."

— Prof. Richard Walter, UCLA Screenwriting Professor

JENNIFER VAN SILL has taught film production, film history, and screenwriting. She is currently on the faculty at San Francisco State's Department of Cinema.

\$22.95 • 258 PAGES • ORDER # 358LS • ISBN: 193296785X

## MYTH AND THE MOVIES

DISCOVERING THE MYTHIC STRUCTURE OF  
50 UNFORGETTABLE FILMS

STUART VOYTILLA

FOREWORD BY CHRISTOPHER VOGLER  
AUTHOR OF THE WRITER'S JOURNEY

**BEST SELLER**  
**OVER 20,000 COPIES SOLD!**

An illuminating companion piece to *The Writer's Journey*, which laid the *Myths* map, explains the mythic structure Voight developed in 50 well-loved U.S. and foreign films. This comprehensive book offers a ground understanding of why some films continue to touch and connect with audiences generation after generation.

Works included include *The Godfather*, *Some Like It Hot*, *Grease*, *Rain*, *Halloween*, *Jaws*, *Acme Hat*, *Chinatown*, *The Fugitive*, *Serpents in Paradise*, *The Godfather: Part II*, *Dances with Wolves*, *Erin*, and *The Road*, *Platoon*, and *The Hunt*.

"Stuart Voight's *Myth and the Movies* is a remarkable achievement: an ambitious, thought-provoking, and expert analysis of the mythic underpinnings of fifty great movies. It should prove a valuable resource for film teachers, students, critics, and especially screenwriters themselves, whose challenge, as Voight so clearly understands, is to consciously reinvent a mythology for our times."

— *Los Angeles Academy Award* Screenwriter, *Glance of the Land*

"*Myth and the Movies* is a must for every writer who wants to tell better stories. Voight guided his readers to a richer and deeper understanding not only of mythic structure, but also of the movies we love."

— Christopher Weber, *Web writer*

*The Screenwriter's Steps and Creative Screenwriting*

"The book resulted in my first and the highest rated game thoroughly. I thought I knew all their secrets - until I read Voight's book. The next game on my recommended reading list is *Imaginary Analysis of the Franchise Myth for all games.*"

— Liu Guoqi, *Hollywood Reporter Magazine*

STUART VOYTILLA is a screenwriter, story consultant, teacher, and author of *Writing the Comedy Film*.

\$29.95 • 300 PAGES • ORDER NUMBER 39KLS • ISBN: 994338062



## SAVE THE CAT!



BLAKE EYDOR

## SAVE THE CAT!

THE LAST BOOK ON SCREENWRITING  
YOU'LL EVER NEED

BLAKE EYDOR

**BEST SELLER**

Helps make millions of readers waking up tomorrow to Hollywood and how screenwriter Blake Eydor tells it: "Save the Cat" is just one of Eydor's many crucial ideas for making your ideas more marketable and your script more satisfying — and saleable, including:

- The five elements of every writing regime.
- The seven irrefutable laws of screenplay physics.
- The 10 genres and why they're important to your movie.
- Why your ideas must save your ideas.
- Mastering the Hero.
- Mastering the Hero to create the Perfect Hero.
- How to get back on track with practical and proven rules for script repair.

This ultimate reader's guide reveals the secrets that save story ideas, led by a show for writers who know that you can sell your script if you can save the cat.

"Imagine what would happen if a robot every time anyone approached screenwriting the way Blake suggests? My wishful *world* would dramatically improve, both in actual production output and in discovering new writers who understand the craft of storytelling and can be hired on assignment for about an already high 10 hour."

- Tom the Director by Sheila Parshat Tolan Vice President, Development at 20th Century Entertainment, whose films include *American Pie*, *Cats and Dogs* and *Four Brothers*

"Start to think how to be a successful writer in Hollywood? The answer are here: Blake Eydor has written an insider's best man's information — and being in."

- David Hagerman, Producer, *Raising Helen*, *Writing Girl*, *Bringing Down the House*

"Blake Eydor's *Save the Cat!* could also be called *Save the Screenwriter!*, because that's exactly what it will do: Save the Screenwriter from *Save the Screenwriter*! Theatrical, and *Save the Screenwriter's* vanity... by demystifying the Hollywood process."

- Amy Calms, Literary Manager/Producer, President, Grade A Entertainment

BLAKE EYDOR has sold dozens of scripts, including co-writing the *Danny Mc*, *Blame Chick*, and *Nuclear Family* for Steven Spielberg — each million-dollar sales.

\$19.95 • 216 PAGES • ORDER NUMBER 34815 • ISBN: 1532907809

## SAVE THE CAT!™ GOES TO THE MOVIES

THE SCREENWRITER'S GUIDE TO  
EVERY STORY EVER TOLD

BLAKE SNYDER

It's the long-awaited sequel to the popular book, *Save the Cat!*. Author and screenwriter Blake Snyder returns to form in a best-selling follow-up that shows why this is the most talked-about approach to screenwriting in years. It's the perfect companion piece to his first book. Snyder delivers even more insider information gleaned from a 20-year track record as "one of Hollywood's most successful spec screenwriters," giving you the clues to write your movie.

Designed for screenwriters, novellists, and movie fans, this book goes further than any other in the 10 most influential movies from the past 30 years, from *W\*4\*2\*4* to *Crash*. From *Alien* to *Star Wars*, from *20 to 2000*, Snyder shows how screenwriters who came before you tackled the same challenges you are facing with the film you want to write — or the one you are currently working on.

Writing a romance? Check out the "Society Law" chapter for a "how-to" (inspired by *When Harry Met Sally...*) plus references to 10 other great romantic comedies that will make your story sing.

Want to create a great mystery? Go to the "Mystery" section and learn about the "black cat" that's essential to the success of *All the President's Men*, *Death Wish*, *Jaws*, and *My Best Friend* — and see why ALL great stories, whether a Hollywood blockbuster or a Sundance award winner, follow the same rules of structure outlined in Snyder's breakthrough method.

If you want to sell your script and create a movie that pleases most audiences most of the time, the odds increase if you embrace Snyder's structure and see what makes 10 films tick. After all, both executives and audiences respond to the same elements good writers seek to master. They want to know the type of story they agreed on for, and whether it's structured in a way that sells the system. It's what they're looking for. And now, it's what you can deliver.

BLAKE SNYDER, best-selling author of the screenwriting bible for both Disney and Spielberg, is one of Hollywood's most successful spec screenwriters, having made another spec sale in 2000. As a devoted scripter and screenwriter and working leader, Snyder provides information for writers through his website, [www.blakesnyder.com](http://www.blakesnyder.com).

\$24.95 • 270 PAGES • ORDER NUMBER 78RLS • ISBN: 0822997304

SAVE THE CAT!  
GOES TO THE  
MOVIES



BLAKE SNYDER



## THE WAY OF STORY THE CRAFT & SOUL OF WRITING

CATHERINE ANN JONES

The Way of Story is an integrative approach to writing all forms of narrative. Enriched with evocative insights from the author's own professional journey, Craft alone is not enough. It is the integration of both solid craft and occasional inner discovery that makes the writing both simple.

No other writing book offers the solid craft to guarantee a good story along with the thoughtful inner dimensions of writing. The book is a rare gift to writers - it feeds the soul of a writer and provides practical tips on making a successful commercial craft.

*"Catherine Ann Jones is a possessor of a powerful talent... writing is made easy in my opinion."*

- Norman Mailer

*"The author has great insight into the human condition and the ability to create characters about whom we care."*

- Stephen Green, Oscar® Writing Producer

*"I couldn't get to sleep and found myself reading it without stopping - not only because of the authentic immersion in craft, but because it really is 'your journey' and using your own experiences! The Way of Story is quite amazing and you have much to be proud of, while we, the readers and students, have much to be thankful for!"*

- Kattie Ferguson, Freelance Director, Actor,  
The Script Selling Game

*"On every page, we find something that teaches, delights, or opens the soul to creative growth. Catherine Ann Jones offers a masterpiece based on her long, astounding career that we are the beneficiaries."*

- Darren Gaskin, Ph.D., Professor, Chairman of the Studio,  
and Academic Dean, Pacific Graduate Institute

CATHERINE ANN JONES is an award-winning playwright and screenwriter whose films include the Christmas With Jason Richards which garnered Emmy® nominations for Best Picture, Best Writer, Best Actor, Best Actress, and the popular television series, *Teach Us An Angel*. She has worked on the writing faculties of The New School University (New York City), University of Southern California (Los Angeles), and the Golden Institute. Apart from teaching, internationally she also works as a copy and script consultant.

\$32.95 - 200 PAGES - ORDER NUMBER 23416 - ISBN: 1932907327

## SELLING YOUR STORY IN 60 SECONDS

THE GUARANTEED WAY TO GET YOUR  
SCREENPLAY OR NOVEL READ

MICHAEL HARGE

Best-selling author Michael Harge reveals:

- How to Design, Practice and Present the 60-Second Pitch
- The Cardinal Rule of Pitching
- The 12 Key Components of a Commercial Story
- The 3 Steps to a Powerful Pitch
- Targeting Your Buyers
- Securing Opportunities to Pitch
- Pitching Techniques
- And much more, including "The Best Pitch I Ever Heard," an exclusive collection from major film executives

"Michael Harge's practices and methods are so well argued that the importance of effective screenwriting can be understood — even be absorbed."

— Philip Boyce, Director, *Forrest Gump*, *Clear and Present Danger*, *The Gelfin*,  
*American Ninja*, *Proof* (novel)

"... one of the few authoritatively good teachers out there. Every time I read my notes, I learn something new or practice something that I need to remember."

— Mitchell Sosenstein, *Stephens in Seattle*, *Iron Will*

"Michael Harge's method is magic — but unlike most magicians, he shows you how the trick is done."

— William Jack, Screenwriter & Co-Editor, *Colombic Murder*, *Die With Me*

"By following the formula we learned in Michael Harge's seminar, we got an agent, secured our book, and now have a three picture deal at Disney!"

— Tom Moore and David Hays, Screenwriters

MICHAEL HARGE is the author of *Writing Screenplays That Sell*, now in its 30th printing, and has presented 16 seminars and lectures to more than 20,000 writers and filmmakers. He has coached hundreds of screenwriters and producers on their screenplay and pitches, and has consulted on projects for Warner Bros., Disney, New Line, CBS, Lifetime, Julia Roberts, Jennifer Lopez, Robert DeNiro, and Morgan Freeman.

\$42.95 • 150 PAGES • ORDER NUMBER 648LX • ISBN: 1932907202





# THE POWER OF FILM

HOWARD SIBER

## THE POWER OF FILM

HOWARD SIBER

America's most distinguished film professor provides the definitive 6 to 7 course-of-the-structure-of-film. Each entry in this remarkable text, which represents a lifetime of teaching film, has already inspired and educated several generations of Hollywood's greatest filmmakers and writers.

This book captures the patterns and progress that reveal film's popular and intellectual, and will be useful both for those who want to create films and for those who just want to understand them better.

"Howard Siber's understanding of film weaving like the pages of this well-illustrated book. Most of it is surprisingly contrary to what 'everyone knows.' A remarkable work."

- Francis Ford Coppola

"These books enough to cover Howard Siber's legendary classes at UCLA's Film School more than others want to read. No school program. Now that he has delivered it, filmmakers, scholars, and anyone else with a serious interest in film can rejoice. A fascinating and thought-provoking work."

- Amanda Peets, Director/Screenwriter, *Schwarz, About Schwarz, District*

"Howard Siber is serious and smart, not only in the academic world, but by some of the most important creative people in the film industry. Siber genuinely helps us understand 'the power of film' - why it has been the predominant art form for more than a century, and why it continues to have such power over the lives we all lead."

- Geoff Gurnea, Director of the Sundance Film Festival

"How? Absolutely not! He starts, Howard Siber. His new class for WSU. This is a profound and succinct book that is immediately fun to read."

- David Hoopes, Screenwriter, *War of the Worlds* (2005), *Spider-Man*,  
*Minor Injustices*, *Warrior Poet*

HOWARD SIBER has taught more than 65 different courses in 40 years at UCLA's esteemed film school. He was the founder and director of the university's program in the history, theory, and criticism; the UCLA Film Archive; and the UCLA Film and Television Producers Program. The recipient of both a Distinguished Teaching Award and a Life Achievement Award, Siber has been a consultant to every major film studio, and his former students are currently active throughout the world.

\$27.95 - 466 PAGES - ORDER NUMBER 61815 - ISBN: 1852907173



MICHAEL WIESE PRODUCTIONS

Since 1991, Michael Wiese Productions has been dedicated to providing indie writers and aspiring filmmakers with vital information on all aspects of filmmaking. We have published nearly 100 books, used in over 600 film schools and countless universities, and by hundreds of thousands of filmmakers worldwide.

Our authors are successful industry professionals who spend considerable hours writing about the hard stuff: budgeting, financing, directing, marketing, and distribution. They believe that if they share their knowledge and experiences with others, more high quality films will be produced.

And that has been our mission, now complemented through our new web-based resources. We invite all readers to visit [www.mwp.com](http://www.mwp.com) to receive free eBooks and sample chapters, participate in forum discussions, attend private seminars — and even get the opportunity to receive free travel, project consulting, and other services offered by our company.

Our goal is quite simple, to help you reach your goals. That's why we give our readers the most complete portal for filmmaking knowledge available — in the most convenient manner.

We truly hope that our books and web-based resources will empower you to create enduring films that will last for generations to come.

Let us hear from you at anytime.



Sincerely,  
**Michael Wiese**  
Publisher, Filmmaker

[www.mwp.com](http://www.mwp.com)

## FILM & VIDEO BOOKS

**Archives for Writers: Using the Power of Our Subconscious**  
 by Robert Long / \$22.95

**Art of Film Writing: The Screenwriting Process**  
 by Jack Gelb / \$22.95

**Blow-by-Blow: The 100 Most Powerful Ten Screenplays Ever**  
 by Nicholas...

**Classics Expanded: Movie-Watching Lessons, The Academy Awards**  
 & the Best of the Year / Mark...

**Creating Characters for Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**From Writer to Director: The 100 Most Inspiring Screenplays**  
 by...

**Get to the Point: Writing the Story of Your Film**  
 by...

**Script Development 101: The Screenwriter's Guide to Selling**  
 by...

**Screening Screen: Creating Memorable Characters for Film and Television**  
 by...

**Screening Screen: The Art of Screenwriting for Film and Television**  
 by...

**Screening Screen: The Art of Screenwriting for Film and Television**  
 by...

**The 100 Greatest Screenplays of All Time**  
 by...

**Top 100 Screenplays of All Time**  
 by...

**Top 100 Screenplays of All Time**  
 by...

**Top 100 Screenplays of All Time**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Screenwriting Process**  
 by...

**The Story of the Screen: From Script to Screenplay**  
 by...

**Perfect Pitch: The Art of Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Power of Film: The**  
 by...

**Producing for Screenwriters: Selling Your Script**  
 by...

**The Art of the Screenplay**  
 by...

**The Art of the Screenplay**  
 by...

**Screenwriting 101: The Screenwriter's Guide to Selling**  
 by...

**Screenwriting 101: The Screenwriter's Guide to Selling**  
 by...

**Script Selling 101: The Screenwriter's Guide to Selling**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

**Selling Your Screenplay**  
 by...

### DVD & VIDEO

**Best of the Best**  
 by...

**Best of the Best**  
 by...

**Best of the Best**  
 by...